California Proposition 65 Warning

**WARNING**: This product contains or emits chemicals known to the state of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm.

**Event Data Recorders**

This vehicle is equipped with an event data recorder (EDR). The main purpose of an EDR is to record, in certain crash or near crash-like situations, such as an air bag deployment or hitting a road obstacle, data that will assist in understanding how a vehicle’s systems performed. The **EDR is designed to record data related to vehicle dynamics and safety systems for a short period of time, typically 30 seconds or less.** The EDR in this vehicle is designed to record such data as:

- How various systems in your vehicle were operating;
- Whether or not the driver and passenger safety belts were buckled/fastened;
- How far (if at all) the driver was depressing the accelerator and/or brake pedal; and,
- How fast the vehicle was traveling.

These data can help provide a better understanding of the circumstances in which crashes and injuries occur. NOTE: EDR data are recorded by your vehicle only if a non-trivial crash situation occurs; no data are recorded by the EDR under normal driving conditions and no personal data (e.g., name, gender, age, and crash location) are recorded. However, other parties, such as law enforcement, could combine the EDR data with the type of personally identifying data routinely acquired during a crash investigation.

To read data recorded by an EDR, special equipment is required, and access to the vehicle or the EDR is needed. In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, other parties, such as law enforcement, that have the special equipment, can read the information if they have access to the vehicle or the EDR.

The data belongs to the vehicle owner and may not be accessed by anyone else except as legally required or with the permission of the vehicle owner.

**Service Diagnostic Recorders**

This vehicle is equipped with service-related devices that record information about powertrain performance. The data can be used to verify emissions law requirements and/or help technicians diagnose and solve service problems. It may also be combined with data from other sources for research purposes, but it remains confidential. Some diagnostic and maintenance information is uploaded to Honda upon vehicle start up.

**California Perchlorate Contamination Prevention Act**

The airbags, seat belt tensioners, and CR type batteries in this vehicle may contain perchlorate materials - special handling may apply. See [www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate/](http://www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate/)

As you read this manual, you will find information that is preceded by a **NOTICE** symbol. This information is intended to help you avoid damage to your vehicle, other property, or the environment.
Software End User License Agreement

Your vehicle comes equipped with software, which is governed by the End User License Agreement in Owner’s Manual, and which contains a binding arbitration clause. Please refer to the End User License Agreement for the terms and conditions governing your use of the installed software, as well as the applications, services, functions, and content provided through the software. Your use of the installed software will serve as your consent to the terms and conditions of the End User License Agreement.

You may opt out within 30 days of your initial use of the Software by sending a signed, written notice to HONDA at American Honda Motor Co., Inc. Honda Automobile Customer Services Mail Stop 100-5E-8A, 1919 Torrance Blvd. Torrance, CA 90501-2746.

Privacy Notice

This vehicle may share location and usage information. To manage this setting, visit www.hondalink.com/vehicle-data-choices.

A Few Words About Safety

Your safety, and the safety of others, is very important. And operating this vehicle safely is an important responsibility.

To help you make informed decisions about safety, we have provided operating procedures and other information on labels and in this manual. This information alerts you to potential hazards that could hurt you or others.

Of course, it is not practical or possible to warn you about all the hazards associated with operating or maintaining your vehicle. You must use your own good judgment.

You will find this important safety information in a variety of forms, including:

- **Safety Labels** - on the vehicle.
- **Safety Messages** - preceded by a safety alert symbol and one of three signal words: DANGER, WARNING, or CAUTION. These signal words mean:
  - DANGER: You WILL be KILLED or SERIOUSLY HURT if you don’t follow instructions.
  - WARNING: You CAN be KILLED or SERIOUSLY HURT if you don’t follow instructions.
  - CAUTION: You CAN be HURT if you don’t follow instructions.
- **Safety Headings** - such as Important Safety Precautions.
- **Safety Section** - such as Safe Driving.
- **Instructions** - how to use this vehicle correctly and safely.

This entire book is filled with important safety information - please read it carefully.
This owner’s manual should be considered a permanent part of the vehicle and should remain with the vehicle when it is sold.

This owner’s manual covers all models of your vehicle. You may find descriptions of equipment and features that are not on your particular model.

Images throughout this owner’s manual (including the front cover) represent features and equipment that are available on some, but not all, models. Your particular model may not have some of these features.

This owner’s manual is for vehicles sold in the United States and Canada.

The information and specifications included in this publication were in effect at the time of approval for printing. Honda Motor Co., Ltd. reserves the right, however, to discontinue or change specifications or design at any time without notice and without incurring any obligation.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Safe Driving</td>
<td>33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>For Safe Driving</td>
<td>34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Seat Belts</td>
<td>38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Airbags</td>
<td>47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Instrument Panel</td>
<td>83</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Indicators</td>
<td>84</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gauges and Displays</td>
<td>119</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Controls</td>
<td>141</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clock</td>
<td>142</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Security System</td>
<td>179</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Opening and Closing the Windows</td>
<td>182</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adjusting the Mirrors</td>
<td>206</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adjusting the Seats</td>
<td>209</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Features</td>
<td>259</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Audio System</td>
<td>260</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Audio System Basic Operation</td>
<td>267, 285</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Blu-ray/DVD Rear Entertainment System</td>
<td>396</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CabinWatch™</td>
<td>521</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CabinTalk™</td>
<td>522</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Driving</td>
<td>523</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Before Driving</td>
<td>524</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Towing a Trailer</td>
<td>530</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Multi-View Rear Camera</td>
<td>628</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Refueling</td>
<td>630</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maintenance</td>
<td>635</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Before Performing Maintenance</td>
<td>636</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maintenance Minder™</td>
<td>639</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Checking and Maintaining Wiper Blades</td>
<td>669</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Remote Control and Wireless Headphone Care</td>
<td>685</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Handling the Unexpected</td>
<td>697</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tools</td>
<td>698</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>If a Tire Goes Flat</td>
<td>699</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Indicators, Coming On/Blinking</td>
<td>716</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fuses</td>
<td>722</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>When You Cannot Open the Tailgate</td>
<td>731</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Information</td>
<td>737</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Specifications</td>
<td>738</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Identification Numbers</td>
<td>740</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Warranty Coverages</td>
<td>746</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Authorized Manuals</td>
<td>748</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Visual Index

- (Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA®) System OFF) Button  P.590
- (Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA®) System OFF) Button  P.599
- Collision Mitigation Braking System™ (CMBS™) OFF Button*  P.611
- Road Departure Mitigation (RDM) Button*  P.578
- Power Sliding Door Switch*  P.173, 174
- Power Tailgate Button*  P.163
- Parking Sensor System Switch*  P.620
- Heated Windshield Button*  P.202
- System Indicators  P.84
- Gauges  P.119
- Driver Information Interface  P.120
- Accessory Power Socket  P.233
- Audio System  P.260
- Climate Control System  P.248
- Rear Window Defogger  P.201
- Heated Mirror Button*  P.201
- Seat Heater Switches*  P.242
- Seat Heater and Seat Ventilation Switches*  P.243
- Hazard Warning Button
- Shift Button
- Automatic Transmission  P.544
- AC Power Outlet*  P.235
- Center Pocket*  P.230
- Blu-ray/DVD Rear Entertainment System*  P.396
- ECON Button  P.557
- SNOW Button  P.558
- Auto Idle Stop OFF Button*  P.552
- Driving Position Memory System Buttons*  P.203
- Electric Parking Brake Switch  P.600
- Automatic Brake Hold Button  P.604
**Quick Reference Guide**

- **Navigation System Voice Control Buttons**
  - See Navigation System Manual
- **Audio Remote Control Buttons** (P264)
- **Steering Wheel Adjustments** (P205)
- **Brightness Control** (P200)
- **ENTER Button** (P122)
- **Button** (P122)
- **Headlights/Turn Signals** (P.189)
- **Fog Lights** (P.192)
- **LaneWatch™** (P.598)
- **Paddle Shifter (Shift down)** (P.551)
- **A/ V Button** (P.122)
- **Steering Wheel Adjustments** (P.205)
- **Brightness Control** (P.200)
- **Heated Steering Wheel Button** (P.241)
- **Paddle Shifter (Shift up)** (P.551)
- **Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) Buttons** (P.565)
- **Interval Button** (P.571)
- **Cruise Control Buttons** (P.559)
- **Wipers/Washers** (P.197)
- **Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) Button** (P.583)
- **CRUISE Button** (P.559)
- **ENGINE START/STOP Button** (P.186)
- **MAIN Button** (P.565, 583)
- **Horn (Press an area around .)**
- **(home) Button** (P.122, 265)
- **Navigation System Voice Control Buttons**
  - See Navigation System Manual
- **Bluetooth® HandsFreeLink® System Buttons** (P.470, 495)
- **ENTER Button** (P.122)
- **Audio Remote Control Buttons** (P.264)

* Not available on all models
Visual Index

- Power Window Switches P.182
- Master Door Lock Switch P.156
- Door Mirror Controls P.207
- Rearview Mirror P.206
- HomeLink® Buttons* P.468
- Driver Side Fuse Box P.724
- Driver’s Front Airbag P.50
- Passenger’s Front Airbag P.50
- Glove Box P.227
- Passenger’s Knee Airbag P.54
- Driver’s Knee Airbag P.54
- Auxiliary Input Jack P.262
- USB Port P.261
- Hood Release Handle P.646
Visual Index

- HondaVAC™* P.245
- Seat Belt with Detachable Anchor P.43
- Integrated Sunshades* P.244
- Map Lights P.226
- Accessory Power Socket* P.233
- Third Row Seat P.221
- LATCH to Secure a Child Seat P.67
- Folding the One-Motion Third Row Stowing Magic Seat® P.222
- Accessory Power Socket P.233
- Seat Belt (Installing a Child Seat) P.72
- Seat Belt to Secure a Child Seat P.74
Quick Reference Guide

- Maintenance Under the Hood P.645
- Windshield Wipers P.197, 669
- Power Door Mirrors P.207
- Side Turn Signal Lights* P.189, 664
- Door Lock/Unlock Control P.147
- Headlights P.189, 658
- Daytime Running Lights/Parking Lights* P.193, 662
- Front Side Marker Lights P.189, 664
- Front Turn Signal/Parking Lights* P.189, 663
- Front Turn Signal Lights* P.189, 663
- Fog Lights* P.192, 661
- Opening/Closing the Sliding Doors P.170
- How to Refuel P.631
- High-Mount Brake Light P.668
- Opening/Closing the Tailgate P.159
- Tailgate Outer Handle P.164
- Rear License Plate Light P.668
- Multi-View Rear Camera P.628
- Back-Up Lights P.667
- Taillights P.667
- Brake Lights P.665
- Rear Side Marker/Taillights P.665
- Rear Turn Signal Lights P.665

* Not available on all models
# Auto Idle Stop Function*

To improve fuel economy, the engine stops and then restarts as detailed below. When Auto Idle Stop is on, the Auto Idle Stop indicator (green) comes on. [P. 552]

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>At</th>
<th>Automatic transmission</th>
<th>Engine status</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Deceleration</td>
<td>Stop the vehicle and depress the brake pedal.</td>
<td>On</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stop</td>
<td>Keep the brake pedal depressed.</td>
<td>Off</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Start-up</td>
<td>Release the brake pedal.</td>
<td>Restarting</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

With the automatic brake hold system activated, you can release the brake pedal when the (A) indicator comes on.

With the automatic brake hold system activated, depress the accelerator pedal.
Eco Assist® System (P 557)

Ambient Meter
- Changes color to reflect your driving style.
  Green: Fuel efficient driving
  White green: Moderate acceleration/deceleration
  White: Aggressive acceleration/deceleration
- The ambient meter color changes in accordance with your brake or accelerator pedal operation.

ECON Button (P 557)
Helps maximize fuel economy.

ECON Mode Indicator (P 94)
Comes on when the ECON button is pressed.

The message is displayed for a few seconds when the ECON button is pressed.

* Not available on all models
Safe Driving  P.33

Airbags  P.47
- Your vehicle is fitted with airbags to help protect you and your passengers during a moderate-to-severe collision.

Child Safety  P.62
- All children 12 and younger should be seated in the rear seat.
- Smaller children should be properly restrained in a forward-facing child seat.
- Infants must be properly restrained in a rear-facing child seat.

Exhaust Gas Hazard  P.80
- Your vehicle emits dangerous exhaust gases that contain carbon monoxide. Do not run the engine in confined spaces where carbon monoxide gas can accumulate.

Seat Belts  P.38
- Fasten your seat belt and sit upright well back in the seat.
- Check that your passengers are wearing their seat belts correctly.

Before Driving Checklist  P.37
- Before driving, check that the front seats, head restraints, steering wheel, and mirrors have been properly adjusted.

Fasten your lap belt as low as possible.
Instrument Panel

Gauges /Driver Information Interface /System Indicators

System Indicators

- Malfunction Indicator Lamp
- Charging System Indicator
- Electric Power Steering (EPS) System Indicator
- Low Fuel Indicator
- Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA®) System Indicator
- VSA® OFF Indicator
- Automatic Brake Hold System Indicator
- U.S. Automatic Brake Hold Indicator
- Canada Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (Amber)
- Canada Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) Indicator
- Blind spot information (BSI) Indicator

Gears

- M (Sequential mode) Indicator/Sequential Mode Gear Selection Indicator
- Tachometer
- Speedometer

System Indicators

- Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) Indicator (Green/Amber)*
- Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) Indicator (Green/Amber)*
- Gear Position Indicator/Transmission System Indicator
- Driver Information Interface
- Immobilizer System Indicator/Security System Alarm Indicator
- Lights Indicators
  - Lights On Indicator
  - High Beam Indicator
  - Fog Light Indicator*
  - Auto High-Beam Indicator*

System Indicators

- Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) Indicator (Green/Amber)*
- Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) Indicator (Green/Amber)*
- U.S. CRUISE MAIN Indicator*
- U.S. CRUISE CONTROL Indicator*
- Canada Turn Signal and Hazard Warning Indicators
- Low Tire Pressure/TPMS Indicator
- U.S. Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (Red)
- Canada Seat Belt Reminder Indicator
- Canada Supplemental Restraint System Indicator
- Canada Econ Mode Indicator
- Canada Auto Idle Stop Indicator (Green)*
- Canada Auto Idle Stop System Indicator (Amber)*
- Canada Snow Mode Indicator
- Canada Normal Mode Indicator
- Canada System Message Indicator
- Canada Road Departure Mitigation (RDM) Indicator*
- Canada Collision Mitigation Braking System™ (CMBS™) Indicator*

* Not available on all models
Controls

Clock

Models with color audio system

1. Press and hold the MENU/CLOCK button for two seconds.
2. Select Adjust Clock, then press .
3. Rotate to adjust the hours.
4. Press to switch to minute adjustment.
5. Rotate to adjust the minutes.
6. Press to switch to Set.
7. Press to complete clock adjustment.

Models with Display Audio

To adjust time

1. Select then select Settings.
2. Select System, then Date & Time.
3. Select Set Date & Time.
4. Select Automatic Date & Time, then select OFF.

To adjust date

1. Select Set Date or Set Time.
2. Adjust the dates, hours and minutes by selecting ▲/▼.
3. Select Save to set the time.

Models with navigation system

The navigation system receives signals from GPS satellites, updating the clock automatically.

ENGINE START/STOP Button

Press the button to change the vehicle’s power mode.
**Turn Signals**  
Turn Signal Control Lever  
Right  
Left

**Lights**  
Light Control Switches  
High Beam  
Low Beam  
Flashing

**Wipers and Washers**  
Wiper/Washer Control Lever  
Adjustment Ring  
- : Low sensitivity*1  
- : Lower speed, fewer sweeps*2  
+ : High sensitivity*1  
+ : Higher speed, more sweeps*2  
MIST  
OFF  
AUTO*1: Wiper speed varies automatically  
INT*2: Low speed with intermittent  
LO: Low speed wipe  
HI: High speed wipe  
*1: Models with automatic intermittent wipers  
*2: Models without automatic intermittent wipers  
Models with automatic intermittent wipers  
AUTO should always be turned OFF before the following situation in order to prevent severe damage to the wiper system:  
- Cleaning the windshield  
- Driving through a car wash  
- No rain present

**Steering Wheel**  
To adjust, push the adjustment lever down, adjust to the desired position, then pull up the lever back in place.
Unlocking the Front Doors from the Inside

Pull either front door inner handle to unlock and open it at the same time.

Power Sliding Door*

When the main switch is ON, the power sliding door opens and closes automatically when you press OPEN or CLOSE side of the / switch.

Tailgate

Models with Hands Free Access
Raise and lower your foot (in a kicking motion) under the center of the rear bumper to open or close the tailgate with the remote on you.

Models without smart entry system
With all the doors unlocked, press the tailgate outer handle and lift open the tailgate.

Models with smart entry system
Press the tailgate outer handle to unlock and open the tailgate when you carry the remote.

Models with the power tailgate
Press the power tailgate button on the instrument panel or the remote to open and close the power tailgate.

Press the tailgate inner button to close the power tailgate.
**Power Door Mirrors**

- With the power mode in ON, move the selector switch to L or R.
- Push the appropriate edge of the adjustment switch to adjust the mirror.
- Press the folding button* to fold the door mirrors in and out.

**Power Windows** [P. 182]

- With the power mode in ON, open and close the power windows.
- If the power window lock button is in the off position, each passenger’s window can be opened and closed with its own switch.
- If the power window lock button is in the on position (indicator is on), each passenger’s window switch is disabled.

* Not available on all models
Climate Control System  ➡️ P.248

- Press the AUTO button to activate the climate control system.
- Press the ON/OFF button to turn the system on or off.
- Press the button to defrost the windshield.

Dual-zone climate control system

- A/C (Air Conditioning) Button
- SYNC (Synchronized) Button
- AUTO Button
- ON/OFF (On/Off) Button
- (Windshield Defroster) Button
- (Recirculation) Button
- REAR SETTINGS Button
- REAR ON/OFF Button
- Temperature Control Switch
- Fan Control Switch
- MODE Control Button
Tri-zone climate control system

- **Fan Control Icon**
- **A/C (Air Conditioning) Icon**
- **Mode Control Icon (Air flows from floor vents)**
- **Mode Control Icon (Air flows from floor and windshield defroster vents)**
- **Mode Control Icon (Air flows from floor and dashboard vents)**
- **Mode Control Icon (Air flows from floor and rear ceiling vents)**
- **(Recirculation) Button**
- **AUTO Button**
- **FRONT CLIMATE Button**
- **SYNC (Synchronized) Button**
- **(On/Off) Button**
- **(Fan Control) Button**
- **REAR CLIMATE Button**
- **Passenger’s Side Temperature Control Switch**
- **(Windshield Defroster) Button**
- **Fan Control Button**

**Rear Climate Control Panel***
- **Press the AUTO button to activate the rear climate control system.**
- **Press the (On/Off) button to turn the system on or off.**

**Rear Passenger Compartment Temperature Control Buttons**

- **Air flows from the rear floor vents.**
- **Airflow is divided between the rear floor vents and rear ceiling vents.**
- **Air flows from the rear ceiling vents.**

* Not available on all models
Features [P.259]

Audio System [P.260]

Models with color audio system [P.267]

- **(Day/Night) Button**
- **Audio/Information Screen**
- **(Phone) Button**
- **(Sound) Button**
- **Selector Knob**
- **MENU/CLOCK Button**
- **(Back) Button**
- **Preset Buttons (1-6)**
- **RADIO Button**
- **MEDIA Button**
- **VOL / (Volume/Power) Knob**
- **(Seek/Skip) Buttons**
Models with Display Audio ➡ P. 285
For navigation system operation ➡ See the Navigation System Manual

(Home) Icon
(Back) Icon
(Day/Night) Icon

VOL/AUDIO (Volume/Power) Knob

Audio/Information Screen

Models with Blu-ray™ or CD player

Disc Slot

(Eject) Button
Audio Remote Controls

**Models with color audio system**

- **SOURCE** Button
  - Press to change the audio mode:
  - FM1/FM2/AM/USB/iPod/Bluetooth® Audio/AUX

- **+ / - Bar**
  - Press to adjust the volume up/down.

**Models with Display Audio**

- **+/ - Bar**
  - Press to adjust the volume up/down.

- **SOURCE** Button
  - Press to change the audio mode:
  - Android Auto/Apple CarPlay/SiriusXM®/Rear Entertainment*/AUX Input/AM/Bluetooth® Audio/Social Playlist/FM/My Honda Music/USB/iPod/CD*

- **+/ - Bar**
  - Press to adjust the volume up/down.

- **/ / / ENTER** Buttons
  - Press or to select Now Playing on the home screen of the driver information interface, and then press the ENTER button.

  Press or to cycle through the audio mode as follows:
  - Android Auto/Apple CarPlay/SiriusXM®
  - Rear Entertainment*/AUX Input/AM/Bluetooth® Audio/Social Playlist/FM/My Honda Music/USB/iPod/CD*

Radio: Press **+/ -** to change the preset station.
CD*/USB device/My Honda Music/Bluetooth® Audio:
  - Press **+/ -** to skip to the beginning of the next song or return to the beginning of the current song.

CD*/USB device/My Honda Music/Bluetooth® Audio:
  - Press **+/ -** to change the preset station.
Driving \( \text{R. 523} \)

**Automatic Transmission \( \text{R. 544} \)**

- Always depress the brake pedal before selecting \( P \) or changing the gear position from \( P \).
- Select \( P \) and depress the brake pedal when starting the engine.
- **Gear selection**

*Not available on all models*
Quick Reference Guide

P  Park
Press the P button.
Used when parking or before turn off or start the engine.
Transmission is locked.

R  Reverse
Pull back the R button.
Used when reversing.

N  Neutral
Press the N button.
Transmission is not locked.

D/S  Drive/S Position
Each time you press the D/S button, the mode switches between Drive and S Position mode.

Drive
Except ELITE and TOURING grade models
• Normal driving (gears change between 1st and 9th automatically)

ELITE and TOURING grade models
• Normal driving (gears change between 1st and 10th automatically)

All models
• Temporarily driving in the sequential mode

S Position
Except ELITE and TOURING grade models
• Automatically changing gears between 1st and 7th (7th gear is used only at high speed)

ELITE and TOURING grade models
• Automatically changing gears between 1st and 8th (8th gear is used only at high speed)

All models
• Driving in the sequential mode
Paddle Shifters (P 551)

- Paddle shifters allow you to shift gears much like a manual transmission (1st through 9th* or 10th*). This is useful for engine braking.

- Gear Position Indicator

- Sequential Mode Gear Selection Indicator

- D-paddle shift mode: The transmission will shift back to automatic mode once the system detects that the vehicle is cruising.

- Sequential mode gear selection: Holds the selected gear, and the M (sequential mode) indicator comes on.

- The sequential mode gear selection is shown in the instrument panel.

* Not available on all models
**VSA® On and Off** [P. 590]
- The vehicle stability assist (VSA®) system helps stabilize the vehicle during cornering, and helps maintain traction while accelerating on loose or slippery road surfaces.
- VSA® comes on automatically every time you start the engine.
- To partially disable or fully restore VSA® function, press and hold the button until you hear a beep.

**Cruise Control* [P. 559]
- Cruise control allows you to maintain a set speed without keeping your foot on the accelerator pedal.
- To use cruise control, press the CRUISE button, then press the –/SET button once you have achieved the desired speed (above 25 mph or 40 km/h).

**CMBS™ On and Off** [P. 611]
- When a possible collision is likely unavoidable, the CMBS™ can help you to reduce the vehicle speed and the severity of the collision.
- To turn the CMBS™ on or off, press and hold the button until you hear a beep.

**Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) with Tire Fill Assist** [P. 592, 720]
- The TPMS monitors tire pressure.
- TPMS is turned on automatically every time you start the engine.
- TPMS fill assist provides audible and visual guidance during tire pressure adjustment.

**Refueling** [P. 630]

- **Fuel recommendation:** Unleaded gasoline, pump octane number 87 or higher
- **Fuel tank capacity:** 19.5 US gal (73.8 L)

1. Unlock the driver's door.
2. Press firmly and then release the area indicated by the arrow to release the fuel filler door.
3. After refueling, wait for about five seconds before removing the filler nozzle.
Honda Sensing™

Honda Sensing™ is a driver support system which employs the use of two distinctly different kinds of sensors, a radar sensor located in the front grille and a front sensor camera mounted to the interior side of the windshield, behind the rear view mirror.

- **Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)**  \( \rightarrow \) P. 564
  - Helps maintain a constant vehicle speed and a set following interval behind a vehicle detected ahead of yours, without you having to keep your foot on the brake or the accelerator.

- **Road Departure Mitigation (RDM) System**  \( \rightarrow \) P. 576
  - Alerts and helps to assist you when the system detects a possibility of your vehicle unintentionally crossing over detected lane markings.

- **Collision Mitigation Braking System™ (CMBS™)**  \( \rightarrow \) P. 608
  - Can assist you when there is a possibility of your vehicle colliding with a vehicle or a pedestrian detected in front of yours. The CMBS™ is designed to alert you when a potential collision is determined, as well as to reduce your vehicle speed to help minimize collision severity when a collision is deemed unavoidable.

- **Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)**  \( \rightarrow \) P. 581
  - Provides steering input to help keep the vehicle in the middle of a detected lane and provides tactile and visual alerts if the vehicle is detected drifting out of its lane.

* Not available on all models
Maintenance \(\text{P.635}\)

Under the Hood \(\text{P.645}\)

- Check engine oil, engine coolant, and window washer fluid. Add when necessary.
- Check brake fluid.
- Check the battery condition monthly.

1. Pull the hood release handle under the corner of the dashboard.

2. Locate the hood latch lever, pull it up, and then raise the hood. Once you have raised the hood slightly, you can release the lever.

3. When finished, close the hood and make sure it is firmly locked in place.

Wiper Blades \(\text{P.669}\)

- Replace blades if they leave streaks across the windshield.

Tires \(\text{P.673}\)

- Inspect tires and wheels regularly.
- Check tire pressures regularly.
- Install snow tires for winter driving.

Lights \(\text{P.658}\)

- Inspect all lights regularly.
Handling the Unexpected ➝ P.697

Flat Tire ➝ P.699
● Park in a safe location and replace the flat tire with the compact spare tire under the floor between the front seats and the second row seats.

Engine Won’t Start ➝ P.708
● If the battery is dead, jump start using a booster battery.

Overheating ➝ P.713
● Park in a safe location. If you do not see steam under the hood, open the hood, and let the engine cool down.

Indicators Come On ➝ P.716
● Identify the indicator and consult the owner’s manual.

Blown Fuse ➝ P.722
● Check for a blown fuse if an electrical device does not operate.

Emergency Towing ➝ P.729
● Call a professional towing service if you need to tow your vehicle.
What to Do If

Q  The power mode does not change from VEHICLE OFF (LOCK) to ACCESSORY. Why?

A  • The steering wheel may be locked.
   • Move the steering wheel left and right after pressing the ENGINE START/STOP button.

Q  Why does the brake pedal pulsate slightly when applying the brakes?

A  This can occur when the ABS activates and does not indicate a problem. Apply firm, steady pressure on the brake pedal. Never pump the brake pedal.

   Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) P.606

Q  The rear door cannot be opened from inside the vehicle. Why?

A  Check if the childproof lock is in the lock position. If so, open the rear door with the outside door handle. To cancel this function, slide the lever up to the unlock position.
Why do the doors lock after I unlocked the doors?

**Q** Why do the doors lock after I unlocked the doors?  
**A** If you do not open the doors within 30 seconds, the doors are relocked automatically for security.

Why does the beeper sound when I open the driver's door?

**Q** Why does the beeper sound when I open the driver's door?  
**A** The beeper sounds when:
- The power mode is in ACCESSORY.
- The exterior lights are left on.
- The Auto Idle Stop is in operation.

Why does the beeper sound when I start driving?

**Q** Why does the beeper sound when I start driving?  
**A** The beeper sounds when the driver and/or front passenger are not wearing their seat belts.

Why do I hear a screeching sound when I apply the brake pedal?

**Q** Why do I hear a screeching sound when I apply the brake pedal?  
**A** The brake pads may need to be replaced. Have your vehicle inspected by a dealer.
Pulling the electric parking brake switch does not release the parking brake. Why?

Pull the electric parking brake switch with the brake pedal depressed.

Depressing the accelerator pedal does not release the parking brake automatically. Why?

- Fasten the driver’s seat belt.
- Check if the transmission is in P or N. If so, select any other position.

Why does the gear position automatically change to P when I open the driver’s door to check for parking space lines when reversing?

- Fasten the driver’s seat belt.
- Close the driver’s door and manually change the gear position.
  ➤ When opening the driver’s door ➜ P.547

I’m seeing an amber indicator of a tire with an exclamation point. What is that?

The Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) needs attention. Check tire pressure.
  ➤ Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) with Tire Fill Assist ➜ P.592, 720
Safe Driving

You can find many safety recommendations throughout this chapter, and throughout this manual.

For Safe Driving
- Important Safety Precautions ..................... 34
- Your Vehicle’s Safety Features ..................... 36
- Safety Checklist ...................................... 37

Seat Belts
- About Your Seat Belts .............................. 38
- Fastening a Seat Belt ................................. 41
- Seat Belt Inspection ................................. 46

Airbags
- Airbag System Components ....................... 47
- Types of Airbags ..................................... 50
- Front Airbags (SRS) ................................. 50
- Front Knee Airbags ................................ 54
- Side Airbags ......................................... 56
- Side Curtain Airbags ............................... 58
- Airbag System Indicators ......................... 59
- Airbag Care .......................................... 61

Child Safety
- Protecting Child Passengers ...................... 62
- Safety of Infants and Small Children .......... 64
- Safety of Larger Children ......................... 78

Exhaust Gas Hazard
- Carbon Monoxide Gas ............................. 80

Safety Labels
- Label Locations ..................................... 81
For Safe Driving

The following pages explain your vehicle’s safety features and how to use them properly. The safety precautions below are ones that we consider to be among the most important.

**Important Safety Precautions**

■ Always wear your seat belt
A seat belt is your best protection in all types of collisions. Airbags are designed to supplement seat belts, not replace them. So even though your vehicle is equipped with airbags, make sure you and your passengers always wear your seat belts, and wear them properly.

■ Restrain all children
Children ages 12 and under should ride properly restrained in a back seat, not the front seat. Infants and small children should be restrained in a child seat. Larger children should use a booster seat and a lap/shoulder seat belt until they can use the belt properly without a booster seat.

■ Be aware of airbag hazards
While airbags can save lives, they can cause serious or fatal injuries to occupants who sit too close to them, or are not properly restrained. Infants, young children, and short adults are at the greatest risk. Be sure to follow all instructions and warnings in this manual.

■ Don’t drink and drive
Alcohol and driving don’t mix. Even one drink can reduce your ability to respond to changing conditions, and your reaction time gets worse with every additional drink. So don’t drink and drive, and don’t let your friends drink and drive, either.
For Safe Driving

Important Safety Precautions

Pay appropriate attention to the task of driving safely
Engaging in cell phone conversation or other activities that keep you from paying close attention to the road, other vehicles, and pedestrians could lead to a crash. Remember, situations can change quickly, and only you can decide when it is safe to divert some attention away from driving.

Control your speed
Excessive speed is a major factor in crash injuries and deaths. Generally, the higher the speed, the greater the risk, but serious injuries can also occur at lower speeds. Never drive faster than is safe for current conditions, regardless of the maximum speed posted.

Keep your vehicle in safe condition
Having a tire blowout or a mechanical failure can be extremely hazardous. To reduce the possibility of such problems, check your tire pressures and condition frequently, and perform all regularly scheduled maintenance.
For Safe Driving

Your Vehicle’s Safety Features

The following checklist will help you take an active role in protecting yourself and your passengers.

Your vehicle is equipped with many features that work together to help protect you and your passengers during a crash.

Some features do not require any action on your part. These include a strong steel framework that forms a safety cage around the passenger compartment, front and rear crush zones, a collapsible steering column, and tensioners that tighten the front seat belts in a sufficient crash.

However, you and your passengers cannot take full advantage of these features unless you remain seated in the correct position and always wear your seat belts. In fact, some safety features can contribute to injuries if they are not used properly.
Safety CheckList

For the safety of you and your passengers, make a habit of checking these items each time before you drive.

• After everyone has entered the vehicle, be sure all doors and the tailgate are closed and locked. Locking the doors and the tailgate helps prevent an occupant from being ejected and an outsider from unexpectedly opening a door or the tailgate.
  - Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Inside P. 154

• Adjust your seat to a position suitable for driving. Be sure the front seats are adjusted as far to the rear as possible while allowing the driver to control the vehicle. Sitting too close to a front airbag can result in serious or fatal injury in a crash.
  - Adjusting the Seats P. 209

• Adjust head restraints to the proper position. Head restraints are most effective when the center of the head restraint aligns with the center of your head. Taller persons should adjust their head restraint to the highest position.
  - Adjusting the Front and Second Row Outer and Third Row Outer Head Restraints Positions P. 212

• Always wear your seat belt, and make sure you wear it properly. Confirm that any passengers are properly belted as well.
  - Fastening a Seat Belt P. 41

• Protect children by using seat belts or child seats according to a child’s age, height and weight.
  - Child Safety P. 62

If the door and/or tailgate open message appears on the driver information interface, a door and/or the tailgate is not completely closed. Close all doors and the tailgate tightly until the message disappears.

- Driver Information Interface Warning and Information Messages P. 102
Seat Belts

About Your Seat Belts

Seat belts are the single most effective safety device because they keep you connected to the vehicle so that you can take advantage of many built-in safety features. They also help keep you from being thrown against the inside of the vehicle, against any passengers, or out of the vehicle. When worn properly, seat belts also keep your body properly positioned in a crash so that you can take full advantage of the additional protection provided by the airbags.

In addition, seat belts help protect you in almost every type of crash, including:
- frontal impacts
- side impacts
- rear impacts
- rollovers

Lap/shoulder seat belts
All seven or eight seating positions are equipped with lap/shoulder seat belts with emergency locking retractors. In normal driving the retractor lets you move freely while keeping some tension on the belt. During a collision or sudden stop the retractor locks to restrain your body. The front, second, and third row passenger’s seat belts also have a lockable retractor for use with child seats.

Installing a Child Seat with a Lap/Shoulder Seat Belt P. 72

WARNING

Not wearing a seat belt properly increases the chance of serious injury or death in a crash, even though your vehicle has airbags.

Be sure you and your passengers always wear seat belts and wear them properly.

Seat belts cannot completely protect you in every crash. But in most cases, seat belts can reduce your risk of serious injury.

Most states and all Canadian provinces and territories require you to wear seat belts.

If you extend the seat belt too quickly, it will lock in place. If this happens, slightly retract the seat belt, then extend it slowly.
Proper use of seat belts

Follow these guidelines for proper use:

- All occupants should sit upright, well back in the seat, and remain in that position for the duration of the trip. Slouching and leaning reduce the effectiveness of the belt and can increase the chance of serious injury in a crash.
- Never place the shoulder part of a lap/shoulder seat belt under your arm or behind your back. This could cause very serious injuries in a crash.
- Two people should never use the same seat belt. If they do, they could be very seriously injured in a crash.
- Do not put any accessories on the seat belts. Devices intended to improve comfort or reposition the shoulder part of a seat belt can reduce the protective capability and increase the chance of serious injury in a crash.

Seat Belt Reminder

The seat belt system includes an indicator on the instrument panel to remind the driver or a front passenger or both to fasten their seat belts.

If you set the power mode to ON and a seat belt is not fastened, a beeper will sound and the indicator will blink. After a few seconds, the beeper will stop and the indicator will come on and remain illuminated until the seat belt is fastened.

The beeper will periodically sound and the indicator will blink while the vehicle is moving until the seat belt is fastened.

About Your Seat Belts

If a rear seat passenger moves around and extends the seat belt, the lockable retractor may activate. If this happens, release the retractor by unfastening the seat belt and allow the belt to retract completely. Then refasten the belt.

Seat Belt Reminder

The indicator will also come on if a front passenger does not fasten their seat belt within 6 seconds after the power mode is set to ON. When no one is sitting in the front passenger’s seat, the indicator will not come on and the beeper will not sound. The indicator also may not come on and the beeper may not sound when the occupant is not heavy enough to trigger the weight sensor. Such occupants (e.g., infants and smaller children) should be moved to the rear seat as a deploying front airbag likely will injure or kill them.

Protecting Child Passengers P. 62

Continued
About Your Seat Belts

Automatic Seat Belt Tensioners

The front seats are equipped with automatic seat belt tensioners to enhance safety.

The tensioners automatically tighten the front seat belts during a moderate-to-severe frontal collision, sometimes even if the collision is not severe enough to inflate the front airbags or the knee airbags.

The seat belt tensioners can only operate once. If a tensioner is activated, the SRS indicator will come on. Have a dealer replace the tensioner and thoroughly inspect the seat belt system as it may not offer protection in a subsequent crash.

During a moderate-to-severe side impact, the tensioner on that side of the vehicle also activates.
Fastening a Seat Belt

After adjusting a front seat to the proper position, and while sitting upright and well back in the seat:

1. Pull the seat belt out slowly.

2. Insert the latch plate into the buckle, then tug on the belt to make sure the buckle is secure.

Make sure that the belt is not twisted or caught on anything.

No one should sit in a seat with an inoperative seat belt or one that does not appear to be working correctly. Using a seat belt that is not working properly may not protect the occupant in a crash. Have a dealer check the belt as soon as possible.

Never insert any foreign objects into the buckle or retractor mechanism.
3. Position the lap part of the belt as low as possible across your hips, then pull up on the shoulder part of the belt so the lap part fits snugly. This lets your strong pelvic bones take the force of a crash and reduces the chance of internal injuries.

4. If necessary, pull up on the belt again to remove any slack, then check that the belt rests across the center of your chest and over your shoulder. This spreads the forces of a crash over the strongest bones in your upper body.

### Adjusting the Shoulder Anchor

The front seats have adjustable shoulder anchors to accommodate taller and shorter occupants.

1. Move the anchor up and down while pulling the release outward.
2. Position the anchor so that the belt rests across the center of your chest and over your shoulder.

### Warning

Improperly positioning the seat belts can cause serious injury or death in a crash.

Make sure all seat belts are properly positioned before driving.

To release the belt, push the red PRESS button and then guide the belt by hand until it has retracted completely.

When exiting the vehicle, be sure the belt is properly stowed so that it will not get caught in the closing door.

After an adjustment, make sure that the shoulder anchor position is secure.
1. Pull out the seat belt’s small latch plate and the latch plate from each holding slot in the ceiling.

2. Line up the triangle marks on the small latch plate and anchor buckle. Make sure the seat belt is not twisted. Attach the belt to the anchor buckle.

* Not available on all models
Fastening a Seat Belt

3. Insert the latch plate into the buckle. Properly fasten the seat belt the same way you fasten the lap/shoulder seat belt.

Seat Belt with Detachable Anchor

To unlatch the detachable anchor, insert the latch plate into the slot on the side of the anchor buckle.

3. Seat Belt with Detachable Anchor

To unlatch the detachable anchor, insert the latch plate into the slot on the side of the anchor buckle.

Pivot down the anchor buckle forward. Insert the latch plate into the slot on the back of the anchor buckle.

* Not available on all models
If you are pregnant, the best way to protect yourself and your unborn child when driving or riding in a vehicle is to always wear a seat belt and keep the lap part of the belt as low as possible across the hips.

Wear the shoulder belt across the chest avoiding the abdomen.

Wear the lap part of the belt as low as possible across the hips.

Advice for Pregnant Women

Each time you have a checkup, ask your doctor if it is okay for you to drive.

To reduce the risk of injuries to both you and your unborn child that can be caused by an inflating front airbag:
• When driving, sit upright and adjust the seat as far back as possible while allowing full control of the vehicle.
• When sitting in the front passenger’s seat, adjust the seat as far back as possible.
Seat Belt Inspection

Regularly check the condition of your seat belts as follows:

- Pull each belt out fully, and look for frays, cuts, burns, and wear.
- Check that the latch plates and buckles work smoothly and the belts retract easily.

If a belt does not retract easily, cleaning the belt may correct the problem. Only use a mild soap and warm water. Do not use bleach or cleaning solvents. Make sure the belt is completely dry before allowing it to retract.

Any belt that is not in good condition or working properly will not provide proper protection and should be replaced as soon as possible. A belt that has been worn during a crash may not provide the same level of protection in a subsequent crash. Have your seat belts inspected by a dealer after any collision.

WARNING

Not checking or maintaining seat belts can result in serious injury or death if the seat belts do not work properly when needed.

Check your seat belts regularly and have any problem corrected as soon as possible.
Airbags

Airbag System Components

Continued
Airbag System Components

The front, driver’s and passenger’s knee, front side, and side curtain airbags are deployed according to the direction and severity of impact. Both side curtain airbags are deployed in a rollover. The airbag system includes:

1. Two SRS (Supplemental Restraint System) front airbags. The driver’s airbag is stored in the center of the steering wheel; the front passenger’s airbag is stored in the dashboard. Both are marked SRS AIRBAG.

2. Two front knee airbags. The driver’s knee airbag is stored under the steering column. The front passenger’s knee airbag is stored under the glove box. Both are marked SRS AIRBAG.

3. Two side airbags, one for the driver and one for a front passenger. The airbags are stored in the outer edges of the seatbacks. Both are marked SIDE AIRBAG.

4. Two side curtain airbags, one for each side of the vehicle. The airbags are stored in the ceiling, above the side windows.

The front and rear pillars are marked SIDE CURTAIN AIRBAG.

5. An electronic control unit that, when the vehicle is on, continually monitors information about the various impact sensors, seat and buckle sensors, rollover sensor, airbag activators, seat belt tensioners, and other vehicle information. During a crash event the unit can record such information.

6. Automatic front seat belt tensioners. In addition, the driver’s and front passenger’s seat belt buckles incorporate sensors that detect whether or not they are fastened.

7. A driver’s seat position sensor. If the seat is too far forward, the airbag will inflate with less force.

8. Weight sensors in the front passenger’s seat. The front passenger’s airbag will be turned off if the weight on the seat is approximately 65 lbs (29 kg) or less (the weight of an infant or small child).

9. Impact sensors that can detect a moderate-to-severe front or side impact.

10. An indicator on the dashboard that alerts you that the front passenger’s front airbag has been turned off.

11. An indicator on the instrument panel that alerts you to a possible problem with your airbag system or seat belt tensioners.

12. Safing Sensor

13. A rollover sensor that can detect if your vehicle is about to roll over and signal the control unit to deploy both side curtain airbags.
**Important facts about your airbags**

Airbags can pose serious hazards. To do their job, airbags must inflate with tremendous force. So, while airbags help save lives, they can cause burns, bruises, and other minor injuries, sometimes even fatal ones if occupants are not wearing their seat belts properly and sitting correctly.

**What you should do:** Always wear your seat belt properly, and sit upright and as far back from the steering wheel as possible while allowing full control of the vehicle. A front passenger should move their seat as far back from the dashboard as possible.

Remember, however, that no safety system can prevent all injuries or deaths that can occur in a severe crash, even when seat belts are properly worn and the airbags deploy.

**Do not place hard or sharp objects between yourself and a front airbag.** Carrying hard or sharp objects on your lap, or driving with a pipe or other sharp object in your mouth, can result in injuries if your front airbag inflates.

**Do not attach or place objects on the front airbag and front knee airbag covers.** Objects on the covers marked SRS AIRBAG could interfere with the proper operation of the airbags or be propelled inside the vehicle and hurt someone if the airbags inflate.

**Do not attempt to deactivate your airbags.** Together, airbags and seat belts provide the best protection.

When driving, keep hands and arms out of the deployment path of the front airbag by holding each side of the steering wheel. Do not cross an arm over the airbag cover.
Types of Airbags

Your vehicle is equipped with four types of airbags:

- **Front airbags**: Airbags in front of the driver’s and front passenger’s seats.
- **Front knee airbags**: Airbags under the steering column and glove box.
- **Side airbags**: Airbags in the driver’s and front passenger’s seat-backs.
- **Side curtain airbags**: Airbags above the side windows.

Each is discussed in the following pages.

**Front Airbags (SRS)**

The front SRS airbags inflate in a moderate-to-severe frontal collision to help protect the head and chest of the driver and/or front passenger.

SRS (Supplemental Restraint System) indicates that the airbags are designed to supplement seat belts, not replace them. Seat belts are the occupant’s primary restraint system.

### Housing Locations

The front airbags are housed in the center of the steering wheel for the driver, and in the dashboard for the front passenger. Both airbags are marked **SRS AIRBAG**.
## Operation

Front airbags are designed to inflate during moderate-to-severe frontal collisions. When the vehicle decelerates suddenly, the sensors send information to the control unit which signals one or both front airbags to inflate.

A frontal collision can be either head-on or angled between two vehicles, or when a vehicle crashes into a stationary object, such as a concrete wall.

### How the Front Airbags Work

While your seat belt restrains your torso, the front airbag provides supplemental protection for your head and chest.

The front airbags deflate immediately so that they won’t interfere with the driver’s visibility or the ability to steer or operate other controls.

The total time for inflation and deflation is so fast that most occupants are not aware that the airbags deployed until they see them lying in front of them.

Continued
When front airbags should not deploy

Minor frontal crashes: Front airbags were designed to supplement seat belts and help save lives, not to prevent minor scrapes, or even broken bones that might occur during a less than moderate-to-severe frontal crash.

Side impacts: Front airbags can provide protection when a sudden deceleration causes a driver or front passenger to move towards the front of the vehicle. Side airbags and side curtain airbags have been specifically designed to help reduce the severity of injuries that can occur during a moderate-to-severe side impact which can cause the driver or passenger to move towards the side of the vehicle.

Rear impacts: Head restraints and seat belts are your best protection during a rear impact. Front airbags cannot provide any significant protection and are not designed to deploy in such collisions.

Rollovers: In a rollover, your best form of protection is a seat belt or, if your vehicle is equipped with a rollover sensor, both a seat belt and a side curtain airbag. Front airbags, however, are not designed to deploy in a rollover as they would provide little if any protection.

When front airbags deploy with little or no visible damage

Because the airbag system senses sudden deceleration, a strong impact to the vehicle framework or suspension might cause one or more of the airbags to deploy. Examples include running into a curb, the edge of a hole, or other low fixed object that causes a sudden deceleration in the vehicle chassis. Since the impact is underneath the vehicle, damage may not be readily apparent.

When front airbags may not deploy, even though exterior damage appears severe

Since crushable body parts absorb crash energy during an impact, the amount of visible damage does not always indicate proper airbag operation. In fact, some collisions can result in severe damage but no airbag deployment because the airbags would not have been needed or would not have provided protection even if they had deployed.
The airbags have advanced features to help reduce the likelihood of airbag related injuries to smaller occupants.

The driver’s advanced airbag system includes a seat position sensor. Based on information from this sensor and the severity of the impact, the advanced airbag system determines the optimal deployment of the driver’s airbag.

The front passenger’s advanced airbag system has weight sensors. We advise against allowing a child age 12 or under to ride in the front passenger’s seat. However, if you do allow a child age 12 or under to ride in the front passenger’s seat, note that the system will automatically turn off the front passenger’s airbag if the sensors detect that the child is approximately 65 lbs (29 kg) or less.

If there is a problem with the driver’s seat position sensor, the SRS indicator will come on and the airbag will inflate with full (normal) force, regardless of the driver’s seating position.

For the advanced airbags to work properly:
- Do not spill any liquid on or under the seats.
- Do not put any object under the passenger’s seat.
- Make sure any objects are positioned properly on the floor. Improperly positioned objects can interfere with the advanced airbag sensors.
- All occupants should sit upright and wear their seat belts properly.
- Do not cover the passenger’s side dashboard with a cloth, towel, cover, etc.

Make sure the floor mat behind the front passenger’s seat is hooked to the floor mat anchor. An improperly placed mat can interfere with the advanced airbag sensors.
Front Knee Airbags

Front knee SRS airbags inflate in a moderate to severe frontal collision to help keep the driver and front passenger in the proper position and to help maximize the benefit provided by the vehicle’s other safety features.

SRS (Supplemental Restraint System) indicates that the airbag is designed to supplement seat belts, not replace them. Seat belts are the occupant’s primary restraint system.

Housing Locations

The driver’s knee airbag is housed under the steering column. The front passenger’s knee airbag is stored under the glove box.

Both are marked SRS AIRBAG.

Operation

When the driver’s front airbag inflates, the driver’s knee airbag also inflates. When front passenger’s airbag inflates, the front passenger’s knee airbag also inflates.

Even if the collision is not severe enough to deploy the front airbag, the knee airbag may inflate alone.
When a knee airbag deploys with little or no visible damage
Because the airbag system senses sudden deceleration, a strong impact to the vehicle framework or suspension might cause one or more of the airbags to deploy. Examples include running into a curb, the edge of a hole, or other low fixed object that causes a sudden deceleration in the vehicle chassis. Since the impact is underneath the vehicle, damage may not be readily apparent.

When a knee airbag may not deploy, even though exterior damage appears severe
Since crushable body parts absorb crash energy during an impact, the amount of visible damage does not always indicate proper airbag operation. In fact, some collisions can result in severe damage but no airbag deployment because the airbags would not have been needed or would not have provided protection even if they had deployed.
Side Airbags

The side airbags help protect the torso and pelvis of the driver or a front passenger during a moderate-to-severe side impact.

■ Housing Locations

The side airbags are housed in the outside edge of the driver’s and passenger’s seatbacks.

Both are marked SIDE AIRBAG.

■ Operation

When the sensors detect a moderate-to-severe side impact, the control unit signals the side airbag on the impact side to immediately inflate.

Side Airbags

Make sure you and your front seat passenger always sit upright. Leaning into the path of a side airbag can prevent the airbag from deploying properly and increases your risk of serious injury.

Do not attach accessories on or near the side airbags. They can interfere with the proper operation of the airbags, or hurt someone if an airbag inflates.

Do not cover or replace the front seat-back covers without consulting a dealer. Improperly replacing or covering front seat-back covers can prevent your side airbags from properly deploying during a side impact.
Airbags

Side Airbags

Safe Driving

■ When a side airbag deploys with little or no visible damage
Because the airbag systems senses sudden acceleration, a strong impact to the side of the vehicle’s framework can cause a side airbag to deploy. In such cases, there may be little or no damage, but the side impact sensors detected a severe enough impact to deploy the airbag.

■ When a side airbag may not deploy, even though visible damage appears severe
It is possible for a side airbag to not deploy during an impact that results in apparently severe damage. This can occur when the point of impact was toward the far front or rear of the vehicle, or when the vehicle’s crushable body parts absorbed most of the crash energy. In either case, the side airbag would not have been needed nor provided protection even if it had deployed.
Side Curtain Airbags

The side curtain airbags help protect the heads of the driver and passengers in the outer seating positions during a moderate-to-severe side impact. The side curtain airbags equipped in this vehicle are also designed to help reduce the likelihood of partial and complete ejection of vehicle occupants through side windows in crashes, particularly rollover crashes.

**Housing Locations**

The side curtain airbags are located in the ceiling above the side windows on both sides of the vehicle.

**Operation**

The side curtain airbag is designed to deploy in a rollover or a moderate-to-severe side impact.

If the SRS control unit senses that your vehicle is about to rollover, it immediately deploys both side curtain airbags and activates both front seat belt tensioners.

If the impact is on the passenger’s side, the passenger’s side curtain airbag deploys even if there is no passenger in the passenger seat.

To get the best protection from the side curtain airbags, occupants should wear their seat belts properly and sit upright and well back in their seats.

Do not attach any objects to the side windows or roof pillars as they can interfere with the proper operation of the side curtain airbags.
When side curtain airbags deploy in a frontal collision
One or both side curtain airbags may also inflate in a moderate-to-severe angled frontal collision.

Airbag System Indicators
If a problem occurs in the airbag system, the SRS indicator will come on and a message appears on the driver information interface.

Supplemental Restraint System (SRS) Indicator
When the power mode is set to ON. The indicator comes on for a few seconds, then goes off. This tells you the system is working properly.

If the indicator comes on at any other time, or does not come on at all, have the system checked by a dealer as soon as possible. If you don’t, your airbags and seat belt tensioners may not work properly when they are needed.

WARNING
Ignoring the SRS indicator can result in serious injury or death if the airbag systems or tensioners do not work properly.
Have your vehicle checked by a dealer as soon as possible if the SRS indicator alerts you to a possible problem.
Airbag System Indicators

When the passenger front airbag off indicator comes on
The indicator comes on to alert you that the passenger’s front airbag has been turned off. This occurs when the weight sensors detect about 65 lbs (29 kg) or less, the weight of an infant or small child, on the seat.

Children age 12 or under should always ride properly restrained in a back seat. **Child Safety** P. 62

If the front passenger seat is empty, the passenger’s front airbag will not deploy and the indicator will come on.

Passenger Front Airbag Off Indicator
To ensure the passenger is detected properly, confirm that:
- There is no child seat or other object pressing against the rear of the seat-back.
- There is no rear passenger pushing or pulling on the back of the front passenger’s seat.
- The front seat or seat-back is not forced back against an object on the seat or floor behind it.
- There is no object placed under or beside the front passenger’s seat.
- The occupant is sitting in an upright position and the seat back is not excessively reclined.
- The occupant is not leaning against the door or center console.
- The occupant’s feet are placed on the floor in front of them.
- There are no objects hanging from the front passenger’s seat.
- Only small, lightweight objects are in the seat-back pocket.

The passenger front airbag off indicator may come on and go off periodically if the total weight on the seat is near the airbag cutoff threshold.

Have your vehicle checked by a dealer as soon as possible if:
- All of the above conditions are met, and the indicator comes on with an adult seated in the front passenger seat.
- The seat is empty and the indicator is off.

Do not allow an adult passenger to ride in the front seat when the indicator is on.
Airbag Care

You do not need to, and should not, perform any maintenance on or replace any airbag system components yourself. However, you should have your vehicle inspected by a dealer in the following situations:

■ When the airbags have deployed
If an airbag has inflated, the control unit and other related parts must be replaced. Similarly, once an automatic seat belt tensioner has been activated, it must be replaced.

■ When the vehicle has been in a moderate-to-severe collision
Even if the airbags did not inflate, have your dealer inspect the following: the driver’s seat position sensor, weight sensors in the passenger’s seat, front seat belt tensioners, and each seat belt that was worn during the crash.

■ Do not remove or modify a front seat without consulting a dealer
This would likely disable or affect the proper operation of the driver’s seat position sensor or the weight sensors in the passenger’s seat. If it is necessary to remove or modify a front seat to accommodate a person with disabilities, contact a Honda dealer, or for U.S. vehicles, American Honda Automobile Customer Service at 1-800-999-1009 and for Canadian vehicles, Honda Canada Customer Relations at 1-888-9-HONDA-9.

Airbag Care

We recommend against the use of salvaged airbag system components, including the airbag, tensioners, sensors, and control unit.
Child Safety

Protecting Child Passengers

Each year, many children are injured or killed in vehicle crashes because they are either unrestrained or not properly restrained. In fact, vehicle crashes are the number one cause of death of children ages 12 and under.

To reduce the number of child deaths and injuries, every state, Canadian province and territory requires that infants and children be properly restrained when they ride in a vehicle.

Children should sit properly restrained in a rear seat. This is because:

- An inflating front or side airbag can injure or kill a child sitting in the front seat.
- A child in the front seat is more likely to interfere with the driver’s ability to safely control the vehicle.
- Statistics show that children of all sizes and ages are safer when they are properly restrained in a rear seat.

\[\text{WARNING}\]

Children who are unrestrained or improperly restrained can be seriously injured or killed in a crash.

Any child too small for a seat belt should be properly restrained in a child seat. A larger child should be properly restrained with a seat belt, using a booster seat if necessary.

The National Highway Traffic Safety Administration and Transport Canada recommend that all children ages 12 and under be properly restrained in a rear seat. Some states or provinces/territories have laws restricting where children may ride.
• Any child who is too small to wear a seat belt correctly must be restrained in an approved child seat that is properly secured to the vehicle using either the seat belt or the lower anchors of the LATCH system.

• Never hold a child on your lap because it is impossible to protect them in the event of a collision.

• Never put a seat belt over yourself and a child. During a crash, the belt would likely press deep into the child and cause serious or fatal injuries.

• Never let two children use the same seat belt. Both children could be very seriously injured in a crash.

• Do not allow children to operate the doors, windows or seat adjustments.

• Do not leave children in the vehicle unattended, especially in hot weather when the inside of the vehicle can get hot enough to kill them. They could also activate vehicle controls causing it to move unexpectedly.

**WARNING**

Allowing a child to play with a seat belt or wrap one around their neck can result in serious injury or death.

Instruct children not to play with any seat belt and make sure any unused seat belt a child can reach is buckled, fully retracted, and locked.

To deactivate a lockable retractor, release the buckle and allow the seat belt to wind up all the way.

To remind you of the passenger’s front airbag hazards and child safety, your vehicle has warning labels on the dashboard (U.S. models) and on the front visors. Please read and follow the instructions on these labels.

**Safety Labels** P. 81
Safety of Infants and Small Children

Protecting Infants

An infant must be properly restrained in a rear-facing, reclining child seat until the infant reaches the seat manufacturer’s weight or height limit for the seat, and the infant is at least one year old.

Positioning a rear-facing child seat
Child seats must be placed and secured in a rear seating position.

When properly installed, a rear-facing child seat may prevent the driver or a front passenger from moving their seat all the way back, or from locking their seat-back in the desired position. Make sure that there is no contact between the child seat and the seat in front of it.

It can also interfere with proper operation of the passenger’s advanced front airbag system.

**WARNING**
Placing a rear-facing child seat in the front seat can result in serious injury or death during a crash.

Always place a rear-facing child seat in the rear seat, not the front.

Rear-facing child seats should never be installed in a forward facing position.
Always refer to the child seat manufacturer’s instructions before installation.
Do not allow a front seat to rest against a child seat installed in a rear seating position: The weight sensor in the front seat may not correctly detect the actual weight of the occupant.

If this occurs, we recommend that you install the child seat directly behind the front passenger’s seat, move the seat as far forward as needed, and leave it unoccupied. Or, you may wish to get a smaller rear-facing child seat.
If a child is at least one year old and has exceeded the weight and height limitations of a rearward facing child seat, the child should be properly restrained in a firmly secured forward facing child seat until they exceed the weight and height limitations for the forward facing child seat.

**Forward-facing child seat placement**

We strongly recommend placing a forward-facing child seat in a rear seating position.

Placing a forward-facing child seat in the front seat can be hazardous, even with advanced front airbags that automatically turn the passenger’s front airbag off. A rear seat is the safest place for a child.

---

**WARNING**

Placing a forward-facing child seat in the front seat can result in serious injury or death if the front airbag inflates.

If you must place a forward-facing child seat in front, move the vehicle seat as far back as possible, and properly restrain the child.

Educate yourself about the laws and regulations regarding child seat use where you are driving, and follow the child seat manufacturer’s instructions.

Many experts recommend use of a rear-facing seat for a child up to two years old if the child’s height and weight are appropriate for a rear-facing seat.
Selecting a Child Seat

Most child seats are LATCH-compatible (Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children). Some have a rigid-type connector while others have a flexible-type connector. Both are equally easy to use. Some existing and previously owned child seats can only be installed using the seat belt. Whichever type you choose, follow the child seat manufacturer’s use and care instructions including recommended expiration dates as well as the instructions in this manual. Proper installation is key to maximizing your child’s safety.

In seating positions and vehicles not equipped with LATCH, a LATCH-compatible child seat can be installed using the seat belt and a top tether for added security. This is because all child seats are required to be designed so that they can be secured with a lap belt or the lap part of a lap/shoulder belt. In addition, the child seat manufacturer may advise that a seat belt be used to attach a LATCH-compatible seat once a child reaches a specified weight. Please read the child seat owner’s manual for proper installation instructions.

Important consideration when selecting a child seat

Make sure the child seat meets the following three requirements:
- The child seat is the correct type and size for the child.
- The child seat is the correct type for the seating position.
Installing a LATCH-Compatible Child Seat

A LATCH-compatible child seat can be installed in each of the second and third row seats except for the third row center. A child seat is attached to the lower anchors with either the rigid or flexible type of connectors.

1. Locate the lower anchors under the marks.
2. Place the child seat on the vehicle seat, then attach the child seat to the lower anchors according to the instructions that came with the child seat.

- When installing the child seat, make sure that the lower anchors are not obstructed by the seat belt or any other object.

Installing a LATCH-Compatible Child Seat

For your child’s safety, when using a child seat installed using the LATCH system, make sure that the child seat is properly secured to the vehicle. A child seat that is not properly secured will not adequately protect a child in a crash and may cause injury to the child or other vehicle occupants.

To install a LATCH-compatible child seat in the second row center seat, remove the covers on each lower end of the seat-back by pulling on the handles.

* Not available on all models
3. Put the head restraint to its upper-most position, then route the tether strap outside/between the head restraint legs, and secure the tether strap hook onto the anchor.

4. Tighten the tether strap as instructed by the child seat manufacturer.
5. Make sure the child seat is firmly secured by rocking it forward and back and side to side; little movement should be felt.
6. Make sure any unused seat belt that a child can reach is buckled, the lockable retractor is activated, and the belt is fully retracted and locked.

Protecting Child Passengers P. 62
Child Safety

Safety of Infants and Small Children

Installing a Child Seat with a Lap/Shoulder Seat Belt

A child seat can be installed with a lap/shoulder belt in any rear seat or, if absolutely necessary, the front passenger seat.

1. Place the child seat on the vehicle seat.
2. Route the seat belt through the child seat according to the seat manufacturer’s instructions, and insert the latch plate into the buckle.
   ▶ Insert the latch plate fully until it clicks.
3. Slowly pull the shoulder part of the belt all the way out until it stops. This activates the lockable retractor.
4. Let the seat belt retract a few inches and check that the retractor has switched modes by pulling on the webbing. It should not pull out again until it is reset by removing the latch plate from the buckle.
   ▶ If you are able to pull the shoulder belt out, the lockable retractor is not activated. Slowly pull the seat belt all the way out, and repeat steps 3 – 4.
5. Grab the shoulder part of the seat belt near the buckle, and pull up to remove any slack from the lap part of the belt. When doing this, place your weight on the child seat and push it into the vehicle seat.

6. Make sure the child seat is firmly secured by rocking it forward and back and side to side; less than one inch of movement should occur near the seat belt.

7. Make sure any unused seat belt that a child can reach is buckled, the lockable retractor is activated, and the belt is fully retracted and locked.

To deactivate a lockable retractor, release the buckle and allow the seat belt to wind up all the way.
Adding Security with a Tether

A tether anchorage point is provided behind each second and third row seating position. If you have a child restraint system that comes with a tether but can be installed with a seat belt, the tether may be used for additional security.

1. Locate the appropriate tether anchorage point.
2. Put the head restraint to its upper-most position, then route the tether strap outside/through the head restraint legs. Make sure the strap is not twisted.
3. Secure the tether strap hook to the anchor.
4. Tighten the tether strap as instructed by the child seat manufacturer.
Safety of Larger Children

Protecting Larger Children

The following pages give instructions on how to check proper seat belt fit, what kind of booster seat to use if one is needed, and important precautions for a child who must sit in front.

Checking Seat Belt Fit

When a child is too big for a child seat, secure the child in a rear seat using the lap/shoulder seat belt. Have the child sit upright and all the way back, then answer the following questions.

- **Checklist**
  - Do the child’s knees bend comfortably over the edge of the seat?
  - Does the shoulder belt cross between the child’s neck and arm?
  - Is the lap part of the seat belt as low as possible, touching the child’s thighs?
  - Will the child be able to stay seated like this for the whole trip?

If you answer yes to all these questions, the child is ready to wear the lap/shoulder seat belt correctly. If you answer no to any question, the child needs to ride on a booster seat until the seat belt fits properly without a booster seat.

**WARNING**

Allowing a child age 12 or under to sit in front can result in injury or death if the passenger’s front airbag inflates.

If a larger child must ride in front, move the vehicle seat as far to the rear as possible, have the child sit up properly and wear the seat belt properly, using a booster seat if needed.
If a lap/shoulder seat belt cannot be used properly, position the child in a booster seat in the rear seat. For the child’s safety, check that the child meets the booster seat manufacturer’s recommendations.

Your vehicle has a rear seat where children can be properly restrained. If you ever have to carry a group of children, and a child must ride in front:

- Make sure you read and fully understand the instructions and safety information in this manual.
- Move the front passenger seat as far back as possible.
- Have the child sit upright and well back in the seat.
- Check that the seat belt is properly positioned so that the child is secure in the seat.

We strongly recommend that you keep an eye on child passengers. Even older, more mature children sometimes need to be reminded to fasten their seat belts and sit up properly.
Exhaust Gas Hazard

Carbon Monoxide Gas

The engine exhaust from this vehicle contains carbon monoxide, a colorless, odorless, and highly toxic gas. As long as you properly maintain your vehicle, carbon monoxide gas will not get into the interior.

- **Have the exhaust system inspected for leaks whenever**
  - The exhaust system is making an unusual noise.
  - The exhaust system may have been damaged.
  - The vehicle is raised for an oil change.

When you operate a vehicle with the tailgate open, airflow can pull exhaust gas into the interior and create a hazardous condition. If you must drive with the tailgate open, open all the windows and set the climate control system as shown below.

1. Select the fresh air mode.
2. Select the "A/C" mode.
3. Set the fan speed to high.
4. Set the temperature control to a comfortable setting.

Adjust the climate control system in the same manner if you sit in your parked vehicle with the engine running.

**WARNING**

Carbon monoxide gas is toxic.
Breathing it can cause unconsciousness and even kill you.
Avoid any enclosed areas or activities that expose you to carbon monoxide.

An enclosed area such as a garage can quickly fill up with carbon monoxide gas. Do not run the engine with the garage door closed. Even when the garage door is open, drive out of the garage immediately after starting the engine.
Safety Labels

Label Locations

These labels are in the locations shown. They warn you of potential hazards that can cause serious injury or death. Read these labels carefully.

If a label comes off or becomes hard to read (except for the U.S. dashboard label which may be removed by the owner), contact a dealer for a replacement.
Instrument Panel

This chapter describes the buttons, indicators, and gauges that are used while driving.

**Indicators** ............................................ 84
Driver Information Interface Warning and Information Messages.......................... 102

**Gauges and Displays**
Gauges............................................ 119
Driver Information Interface........... 120
## Indicators

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Indicator</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>On/Blinking</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
<th>Message</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (Red) |  | • Comes on for a few seconds when you set the power mode to ON, then goes off if the parking brake has been released.  
• Comes on when the parking brake is applied, and goes off when it is released.  
• Comes on when the brake fluid level is low.  
• Comes on if there is a problem with the brake system.  
• The beeper sounds and the indicator comes on if you drive with the parking brake not fully released.  
• Comes on for about 15 seconds when you push the electric parking brake switch with the power mode in OFF.  
• Stays on for about 15 seconds when you set the power mode to OFF while the electric parking brake is set. | • Comes on while driving - Make sure the parking brake is released. Check the brake fluid level.  
• What to do when the indicator comes on while driving P. 718  
• Comes on along with the ABS indicator - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.  
• If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On or Blinks P. 718  
• Blanks and the brake system indicator (amber) comes on at the same time - There is a problem with the electric parking brake system. The parking brake may not be set. Avoid using the parking brake and have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately. |  |
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Indicator</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>On/Blinking</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
<th>Message</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Comes on for a few seconds when you set the power mode to ON, then goes off.</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Comes on if there is a problem with a system related to braking other than the conventional brake system.</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Comes on if there is a problem with the electric parking brake system.</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Stays on constantly</strong> - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Comes on while driving</strong> - Avoid using the parking brake and have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Comes on if there is a problem with the automatic brake hold system.</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Automatic Brake Hold P. 604" /></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Indicators

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Indicator</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>On/Blinking</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
<th>Message</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Automatic Brake Hold System Indicator</strong></td>
<td>• Comes on when the automatic brake hold system is on.</td>
<td><a href="#">Automatic Brake Hold</a> P. 604</td>
<td><img src="#" alt="Automatic Brake Hold System Indicator" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>U.S. Hold</td>
<td><strong>Automatic Brake Hold Indicator</strong></td>
<td>• Comes on when the automatic brake hold is activated.</td>
<td><img src="#" alt="Automatic Brake Hold Indicator" /></td>
<td><img src="#" alt="Automatic Brake Hold Indicator" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Canada</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Malfunction Indicator Lamp</strong></td>
<td>• Comes on when you set the power mode to ON, and goes off when the engine starts, or after several seconds if the engine did not start. If “readiness codes” have not been set, it blinks five times before it goes off. • Comes on if there is a problem with the emissions control system. • Blinks when a misfire in the engine's cylinders is detected.</td>
<td><a href="#">Testing of Readiness Codes</a> P. 744</td>
<td><img src="#" alt="Malfunction Indicator Lamp" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Readiness codes are part of the on board diagnostics for the emissions control systems.</td>
<td><img src="#" alt="Malfunction Indicator Lamp Comes On or Blinks" /> P. 717</td>
<td><img src="#" alt="Malfunction Indicator Lamp" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Comes on while driving</strong> - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.</td>
<td><img src="#" alt="Malfunction Indicator Lamp Comes On or Blinks" /> P. 717</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Blinks while driving</strong> - Stop in a safe place where there are no flammable objects. Stop the engine for 10 minutes or more, and wait for it to cool down. Then, take your vehicle to a dealer.</td>
<td><img src="#" alt="Malfunction Indicator Lamp Comes On or Blinks" /> P. 717</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Indicators

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Indicator</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>On/Blinking</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
<th>Message</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| ![Battery Symbol] | Charging System Indicator | • Comes on when you set the power mode to ON, and goes off when the engine starts.  
• Comes on when the battery is not charging. | **Comes on while driving** - Turn off the climate control system and rear defogger in order to reduce electricity consumption.  

*If the Charging System Indicator Comes On* P. 716 | ![Battery Charging System Failure] |
| ![D] | Gear Position Indicator | • Indicates the current gear selection. | **Shifting** P. 544 | — |
| ![M] | M (sequential mode) Indicator/Sequential Mode Gear Selection Indicator | • Comes on when the manual sequential shift mode is applied. | **Sequential Mode** P. 550 | — |
## Indicators

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Indicator</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>On/Blinking</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
<th>Message</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Transmission System Indicator</td>
<td>• All the gear positions may light for several seconds, and go off.</td>
<td>• When all the gear positions light, immediately stop your vehicle in a safe place. &lt;br&gt; • Indicators go off if there is no problem. However, even if they go off, take your vehicle to a dealer for inspection.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• The indicated current gear selection blinks if there is a problem with the transmission system.</td>
<td>• Avoid sudden start and acceleration, and stop in a safe place immediately. &lt;br&gt; Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• The current gear position or all the gear positions blink if there is a problem with the transmission system and the vehicle will no longer move.</td>
<td>• Immediately stop in a safe place. &lt;br&gt; ![Emergency Towing](P. 729) &lt;br&gt; • Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• The current gear position or all the gear positions blink if you cannot select [P] due to a transmission system failure.</td>
<td>• The engine can be activated as a temporary measure. &lt;br&gt; ![If the Transmission System Indicator Blinks along with the Warning Message](P. 721) &lt;br&gt; • Set the parking brake when parking. &lt;br&gt; • Have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Indicator</td>
<td>Name</td>
<td>On/Blinking</td>
<td>Explanation</td>
<td>Message</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------</td>
<td>------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="Seat Belt Reminder Indicator" /></td>
<td>Seat Belt Reminder Indicator</td>
<td>• Comes on and the beeper sounds if you are not wearing a seat belt when you set the power mode to ON. &lt;br&gt;• If the front passenger is not wearing a seat belt, the indicator comes on a few seconds later. &lt;br&gt;• Blinks while driving if either you and/or the front passenger has not fastened a seat belt. The beeper sounds and the indicator blinks at regular intervals.</td>
<td>• The beeper stops and the indicator goes off when you and the front passenger fasten their seat belts. &lt;br&gt;• <strong>Stays on after you and/or the front passenger has fastened the seat belt(s)</strong> - A detection error may have occurred in the sensor. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. &lt;br&gt;<strong>Seat Belt Reminder</strong> P. 39</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Seat Belt Reminder Indicator" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="Low Fuel Indicator" /></td>
<td>Low Fuel Indicator</td>
<td>• Comes on when the fuel reserve is running low (approximately 3.6 U.S. gal./13.7 Liter left). &lt;br&gt;• Blinks if there is a problem with the fuel gauge.</td>
<td>• <strong>Comes on</strong> - Refuel your vehicle as soon as possible. &lt;br&gt;• <strong>Blinks</strong> - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Low Fuel Indicator" /></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Indicators

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Indicator</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>On/Blinking</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
<th>Message</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| ![ABS](image) | Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) Indicator | • Comes on for a few seconds when you set the power mode to ON, then goes off.  
• If it comes on at any other time, there is a problem with the ABS. | **Stays on constantly** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. With this indicator on, your vehicle still has normal braking ability but no anti-lock function. | ![ABS](image) Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) P. 606 |
| ![Supplemental](image) | Supplemental Restraint System Indicator | • Comes on for a few seconds when you set the power mode to ON, then goes off.  
• Comes on if a problem with any of the following is detected:  
  - Supplemental restraint system  
  - Knee airbag system  
  - Side airbag system  
  - Side curtain airbag system  
  - Seat belt tensioner | **Stays on constantly or does not come on at all** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. | ![Supplemental](image) |
| ![Auto High-Beam](image) | Auto High-Beam Indicator* | • Comes on for a few seconds when you set the power mode to ON, then goes off.  
• Comes on when all the operating conditions of the Auto high-beam are met. | ![Auto High-Beam](image) Auto High-Beam* P. 194 | — |

* Not available on all models
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Indicator</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>On/Blinking</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
<th>Message</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
|           | Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA®) System Indicator | • Comes on for a few seconds when you set the power mode to ON, then goes off.  
• Blinks when VSA® is active.  
• Comes on if there is a problem with the VSA® system, hill start assist, or brake lighting system. | • **Stays on constantly** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.  
  2 Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA®), aka Electronic Stability Control (ESC), System P. 589  
  2 Hill start assist system P. 541 | |
|           | Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA®) OFF Indicator | • Comes on for a few seconds when you set the power mode to ON, then goes off.  
• Comes on when you partially disable VSA®. | • **VSA® On and Off** P. 590 | |
|           | Electric Power Steering (EPS) System Indicator | • Comes on when you set the power mode to ON, and goes off when the engine starts.  
• Comes on if there is a problem with the EPS system. | • **Stays on constantly or does not come on at all** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.  
  2 If the Electric Power Steering (EPS) System Indicator Comes On P. 720 | |

**Continued**
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Indicator</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>On/Blinking</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
<th>Message</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| ![Low Tire Pressure/TPMS Indicator](image) | Low Tire Pressure/TPMS Indicator | • Comes on for a few seconds when you set the power mode to ON, then goes off.  
• Comes on if the tire pressure of any of the tires becomes significantly low.  
• Blinks for about one minute, and then stays on if there is a problem with the TPMS with Tire Fill Assist, or when a compact spare tire is temporarily installed. | **Comes on while driving** - Stop in a safe place, check tire pressures, and inflate the tire(s) if necessary.  
**Blinks and remains on** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. If the vehicle is fitted with a compact spare, get your regular tire repaired or replaced and put back on your vehicle as soon as you can. | ![Low Tire Pressure/TPMS Indicator](image) |
| ![Turn Signal and Hazard Warning Indicators](image) | Turn Signal and Hazard Warning Indicators | • Blinks when you operate the turn signal lever.  
• Blinks along with all turn signals if you press the hazard warning button. | **Does not blink or blinks rapidly** - A turn signal light bulb has blown. Change the bulb immediately.  
>: Replacing Light Bulbs P. 663, 665 | ![Turn Signal and Hazard Warning Indicators](image) |
| ![High Beam Indicator](image) | High Beam Indicator | • Comes on when the high beam headlights are on. | — | ![High Beam Indicator](image) |
### Indicators

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Indicator</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>On/Blinking</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
<th>Message</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="Lights On Indicator" /></td>
<td>Lights On Indicator</td>
<td>• Comes on whenever the light switch is on, or in <strong>AUTO</strong> when the exterior lights are on.</td>
<td>• If you set the power mode to ACCESSORY or VEHICLE OFF while the lights are on, a chime sounds when the driver’s door is opened.</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="Fog Light Indicator" /></td>
<td>Fog Light Indicator*</td>
<td>• Comes on when the fog lights are on.</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| ![Immobilizer System Indicator](image) | Immobilizer System Indicator | • Comes on briefly when you set the power mode to ON, then goes off.       | • **Blinks** - You cannot start the engine. Set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF*1, then select the ON mode again.  
• **Repeatedly blinks** - The system may be malfunctioning. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.  
• Do not attempt to alter this system or add other devices to it. Electrical problems can occur. | —       |
| ![Security System Alarm Indicator](image) | Security System Alarm Indicator | • Comes on briefly when you set the power mode to ON, then goes off.       | • **Blinks** - You cannot start the engine. Set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF*1, then select the ON mode again.  
• **Repeatedly blinks** - The system may be malfunctioning. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.  
• Do not attempt to alter this system or add other devices to it. Electrical problems can occur. | —       |

*1. Canadian models only: Apply and hold the brake pedal before selecting the ON mode.

* Not available on all models
## Indicators

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Indicator</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>On/Blinking</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
<th>Message</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| System Message Indicator |  | • Comes on along with a beep when a problem is detected. A system message on the driver information interface appears at the same time. | • While the indicator is on, press the (home) button to see the message again.  
• Refer to the Indicators information in this chapter when a system message appears on the driver information interface. Take the appropriate action for the message.  
• The driver information interface does not return to the normal screen unless the warning is canceled, or the ENTER button is pressed repeatedly. | — |
<p>| Econ Mode Indicator |  | • Comes on when you press the ECON button. | ECON Button P. 557 | — |
| Snow Mode Indicator |  | • Comes on when you press the SNOW button and snow mode is selected. | Intelligent Traction Management P. 558 | — |
| Normal Mode Indicator |  | • Comes on for a few seconds when Snow mode is selected, and the vehicle is powered off, then restarted. | Intelligent Traction Management P. 558 | — |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Indicator</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>On/Blinking</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
<th>Message</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="Auto Idle Stop Indicator (Green)*" /></td>
<td>Auto Idle Stop Indicator (Green)*</td>
<td>• Comes on when Auto Idle Stop is in operation. The engine automatically shuts off.</td>
<td>Auto Idle Stop* P. 552</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| ![Auto Idle Stop System Indicator (Amber)*](image) | Auto Idle Stop System Indicator (Amber)* | • Comes on for a few seconds when you set the power mode to ON, then goes off. 
• Blinks if there is a problem with the Auto Idle Stop system. 
• Comes on when Auto Idle Stop system has been turned off by the Auto Idle Stop OFF Button. | Blinks - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. | — |
| ![CRUISE MAIN Indicator*](image) | CRUISE MAIN Indicator* | • Comes on when you press the CRUISE button. | Cruise Control* P. 559 | — |
| ![CRUISE CONTROL Indicator*](image) | CRUISE CONTROL Indicator* | • Comes on if you have set a speed for cruise control. | Cruise Control* P. 559 | — |

* Not available on all models
## Indicators

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Indicator</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>On/Blinking</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
<th>Message</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) Indicator (Amber)*</td>
<td>• Comes on for a few seconds when you set the power mode to ON, then goes off. • Comes on if there is a problem with the LKAS.</td>
<td><strong>Stays on constantly</strong> - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) Indicator (Amber)*" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) Indicator (Green)*</td>
<td>• Comes on when you press the MAIN button. • Comes on when the LKAS is in operation, or the LKAS button is pressed, but the temperature inside the front sensor camera is too high. The LKAS cancels automatically. The beeper sounds simultaneously. • Comes on when the area around the camera is blocked by dirt, mud, etc. Stop your vehicle in a safe place, and wipe it off with a soft cloth. • May come on when driving in bad weather (rain, snow, fog, etc.)</td>
<td><em><em>Lan keeps system (LKAS)</em> P. 581</em>* • <strong>Use the climate control system to cool down the camera.</strong> • <strong>Goes off</strong> - The camera has cooled down and the system is working normally. <strong>Front Sensor Camera</strong> P. 562</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) Indicator (Green)*" /></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Not available on all models
Indicators

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Indicator</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>On/Blinking</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
<th>Message</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Comes on for a few seconds when you change the power mode to ON, then goes off. • Comes on if there is a problem with the RDM system.</td>
<td><strong>Stays on constantly</strong> - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Road Departure Mitigation (RDM) Indicator*</td>
<td></td>
<td>• Comes on when the RDM system shuts itself off.</td>
<td><strong>Stays on</strong> - The temperature inside the camera is too high. Use the climate control system to cool down the camera. The system activates when the temperature inside the camera cools down. <strong>Front Sensor Camera</strong> * P. 562</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Stays on constantly - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.</td>
<td><strong>Front Sensor Camera</strong> * P. 562</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Not available on all models
### Indicators

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Indicator</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>On/Blinking</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
<th>Message</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) Indicator (Amber)*</td>
<td>• Comes on for a few seconds when you set the power mode to ON, then goes off. • Comes on if there is a problem with ACC. • Comes on while driving - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.</td>
<td></td>
<td>When the radar sensor gets dirty, stop your vehicle in a safe place, and wipe off dirt using a soft cloth. • Have your vehicle checked by a dealer if the indicator does not go off even after you clean the sensor cover.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) Indicator (Green)*</td>
<td>• Comes on when you press the MAIN button.</td>
<td></td>
<td>Use the climate control system to cool down the camera. • Goes off - The camera has been cooled down. Pressing the MAIN button can resume the system.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Not available on all models.*
| Indicator                        | Name                                                                 | On/Blinking                                                                 | Explanation                                                                 | Message                                                                 |
|---------------------------------|                                                                     |                                                                            |                                                                            |                                                                        |
| ![ACC](image)                   | Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) Indicator (Green)*                     | • Comes on when the area around the camera is blocked by dirt, mud, etc. Stop your vehicle in a safe place, and wipe it off with a soft cloth. <br> • May come on when driving in bad weather (rain, snow, fog, etc.) | • Have your vehicle checked by a dealer if the indicator and message come back on after you cleaned the area around the camera. |                                                                        |
| ![Collision Mitigation Braking System™ (CMBS™)](image) | Collision Mitigation Braking System™ (CMBS™) Indicator* | • Comes on for a few seconds when you change the power mode to ON, then goes off.  <br> • Comes on when you deactivates the CMBS™. A driver information interface message appears for five seconds.  <br> • Comes on if there is a problem with the CMBS™. | • **Stays on constantly without the CMBS™ off** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.  <br> **Collision Mitigation Braking System™ (CMBS™)** * P. 608 |                                                                        |
### Indicators

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Indicator</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>On/Blinking</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
<th>Message</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Collision Mitigation Braking System™ (CMBS™) Indicator* | | • Comes on when the CMBS™ system shuts itself off. | • **Stays on** - The area around the camera is blocked by dirt, mud, etc. Stop your vehicle in a safe place, and wipe it off with a soft cloth.  
[Front Sensor Camera*](#) P. 562 | |
| | | | • When the radar sensor gets dirty, stop your vehicle in a safe place, and wipe off dirt using a soft cloth.  
| | | | • Have your vehicle checked by a dealer if the indicator does not go off even after you clean the sensor cover.  
[Collision Mitigation Braking System™ (CMBS™)](#) P. 608 | |
| | | • **Stays on** - The temperature inside the camera is too high. Use the climate control system to cool down the camera. The system activates when the temperature inside the camera cools down.  
[Front Sensor Camera*](#) P. 562 | |

* Not available on all models
## Models with BSI

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Indicator</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>On/Blinking</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
<th>Message</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="BSI Indicator" /></td>
<td>Blind spot information (BSI) Indicator</td>
<td>• Stays on while BSI is turned off.</td>
<td>—</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="BSI Indicator Off" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Comes on when mud, snow, or ice accumulates in the vicinity of sensor.</td>
<td><strong>Comes on while driving</strong> - Remove the obstacle in the vicinity of the sensor. <strong>Blind spot information (BSI) System</strong> * P. 596</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="BSI Indicator Accumulated" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Comes on if there is a problem with the system.</td>
<td><strong>Comes on while driving</strong> - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="BSI Indicator Problem" /></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Not available on all models*
## Driver Information Interface Warning and Information Messages

The following messages appear only on the driver information interface. Press the ŭ (home) button, select **Warnings**, then press the **ENTER** button to see the message again with the system message indicator on.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Message</th>
<th>Condition</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• Appears if any door or the tailgate is not completely closed.</td>
<td>• Goes off when all doors and the tailgate are closed.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Appears when the hood is opened.</td>
<td>• Close the hood.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| • Appears when the engine oil pressure is low. | • **Appears while driving** - Immediately stop in a safe place.  
**If the Low Oil Pressure Symbol Appears** P. 716 |
| • Appears if there is a problem with the shutter grille, and the radiator coolant temperature is too high. | • Power output will be reduced, so you may not be able to accelerate or maintain your current speed. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. |
### Indicators

#### Driver Information Interface

**Warning and Information Messages**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Message</th>
<th>Condition</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| **Canadian models** | • Appears when the washer fluid is low. | • Refill the washer fluid.  
[Refilling Window Washer Fluid](#) P. 657 |
| **Models with color audio system** | • Appears while you are customizing the settings and the transmission is in other than (P). | • Until the message disappears, reduce your speed and allow the system to cool down.  
[Vehicle Customization](#) P. 133 |
| **Transmission Temperature** | • Appears when the temperature of the transmission is starting to get too hot.  
• The performance of the vehicle may be reduced. |  |
| | • Appears if the battery charge becomes low. | • Charge the battery. |
| | • Appears when the fuel fill door is opened. | • Close the fuel fill door. |
### Indicators

#### Driver Information Interface Warning and Information Messages

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Message</th>
<th>Condition</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="Battery Sensor Problem" /></td>
<td>Appears when there is a problem with the sensor on the battery.</td>
<td>Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.  <a href="#">Checking the Battery</a> P. 682</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="Charging System Indicator" /></td>
<td>Appears along with the charging system indicator when the battery is not charging.</td>
<td>Turn off the climate control system and rear defogger to reduce electricity consumption.  <a href="#">If the Charging System Indicator Comes On</a> P. 716</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="Scheduled Maintenance" /></td>
<td>Appears when the scheduled maintenance is due soon. Consequently, <strong>Maintenance Due Now</strong> and <strong>Maintenance Past Due</strong> follow.</td>
<td><a href="#">Maintenance Minder Messages on the Driver Information Interface</a> P. 641</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="Power Sliding Door Problem" /> <strong>(U.S.)</strong></td>
<td>Appears if there is a problem with the power sliding door system.</td>
<td>Turn off the main switch and manually operate the power sliding doors. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.  <a href="#">Opening/Closing the Power Sliding Doors*</a> P. 172</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Not available on all models
### Indicators

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Message</th>
<th>Condition</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="Coolant Temp Warning" /></td>
<td>• Appears when the engine coolant temperature gets abnormally high.</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Overheating" /> P. 713</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Models with power tailgate</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Power Tailgate Issue" /> • Appears when there is a problem with the power tailgate system.</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Manually open or close the power tailgate." /> <img src="image" alt="Have your vehicle checked by a dealer." /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="Starter System Issue" /></td>
<td>• Appears when the starter system has a problem.</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="As a temporary measure, press and hold the ENGINE START/STOP button for up to 15 seconds while pressing the brake pedal and manually start the engine." /> <img src="image" alt="Have your vehicle checked by a dealer." /></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Continued**
### Indicators

#### Driver Information Interface Warning and Information Messages

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Message</th>
<th>Condition</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• Appears when you set the power mode to ACCESSORY or ON.</td>
<td></td>
<td><a href="#">Starting the Engine</a> P. 536</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Models with Auto Idle Stop</strong></td>
<td>• Appears when the engine does not restart automatically due to the following reason: • The hood is open. • There is a problem in the system that disables Auto Idle Stop.</td>
<td>• Follow the normal procedure to start the engine. <a href="#">Starting the Engine</a> P. 536 • Close the hood.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Canadian models</strong></td>
<td>• Appears when the steering wheel is locked.</td>
<td>• Move the steering wheel left and right while pressing the <strong>ENGINE START/STOP</strong> button.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Appears when the power mode is in ACCESSORY.</td>
<td></td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Appears after the driver’s door is opened when the power mode is in ACCESSORY.</td>
<td>• Press the <strong>ENGINE START/STOP</strong> button twice with your foot off the brake pedal to change the power mode to VEHICLE OFF.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Message</td>
<td>Condition</td>
<td>Explanation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------</td>
<td>-----------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Appears when you close the door with the power mode in ON without the remote inside the vehicle.</td>
<td>• Disappears when you bring the remote back inside the vehicle and close the door.</td>
<td>Remote Reminder P. 188</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Appears when the remote battery becomes weak.</td>
<td>• Replace the battery as soon as possible.</td>
<td>Replacing the Button Battery P. 684</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Appears if the remote battery is too weak to start the engine or the key is not within operating range to start the engine. A beeper sounds six times.</td>
<td>• Bring the remote in front of the ENGINE START/STOP button to be touched with.</td>
<td>If the Remote Battery is Weak P. 709</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Appears if you press the ENGINE START/STOP button while the vehicle is moving.</td>
<td>• The message will disappear after six seconds or when the power mode is set to VEHICLE OFF.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Appears after the driver’s door is opened when the power mode is in ACCESSORY.</td>
<td>• Press and hold the ENGINE START/STOP button with your foot off the brake pedal to change the power mode to VEHICLE OFF.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Appears when you attempt to change to another gear position with the transmission in [P] and the engine OFF.</td>
<td>• To select another gear position while in [P], the engine must be ON.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ELITE and TOURING grade models • Appears when you set the power mode to OFF while driving.</td>
<td>• Immediately stop in a safe place, set the parking brake, then restart the engine. If the message disappears, continue driving.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Indicators

### Driver Information Interface Warning and Information Messages

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Message</th>
<th>Condition</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="Dash to Park" /></td>
<td>Appears when the vehicle is stopped with the driver’s seat belt unfastened and there is a chance that the vehicle may roll unintentionally.</td>
<td>Press the P button before release the brake pedal when idling, parking or exiting the vehicle. <a href="#">Shift Operation</a> P. 546</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Models with Auto Idle Stop</strong></td>
<td>Appears when the engine stops without the transmission in P, and does not restart automatically. Appears if you open the hood while Auto Idle Stop activates.</td>
<td>If you want to set the power mode to ON, change the gear position to P. If you want to start the engine, follow the normal procedure. <a href="#">Starting the Engine</a> P. 536</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="To the Vehicle to Park Button, Press Button to Park the Vehicle" /></td>
<td>Appears when you change to N, then release the N button.</td>
<td>If you want to keep the transmission in N position [car wash mode] P. 548</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>ELITE and TOURING grade models</strong></td>
<td>Appears when car wash mode is not available due to hot transmission.</td>
<td>When transmission is too hot, car wash mode may not be available. Let the engine idle and cool down transmission. If you want to keep the transmission in N position [car wash mode] P. 548</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="To the Vehicle to Park Button, Press Button to Park the Vehicle" /></td>
<td>Appears when you try to change the gear position without depressing the brake pedal.</td>
<td>Depress the brake pedal, then select a shift button.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

*Note: Images and buttons are used for illustrative purposes.*
### Indicators

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Message</th>
<th>Condition</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Appears when you try to change the gear position without releasing your foot off the accelerator pedal.</td>
<td>• Release your foot off the accelerator pedal, then select a shift button.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Appears when the [P] button is pressed while the vehicle is moving.</td>
<td>• Make sure that the vehicle comes to a stop before operating the select button.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Appears if you change the gear position to [R] while the vehicle is moving forward, or to [D] while the vehicle is reversing.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
|         | • Appears when you set the power mode to ON without fastening the driver’s seat belt. | • Fasten the seat belt properly before you start to drive.  
  [Shift Operation] P. 546                                                                 |
|         | • Appears when you change the gear position after [P] has been automatically selected with the driver’s door open, the driver’s seat belt unfastened, then the brake pedal is released. |                                                           |
| Except ELITE and TOURING grade models | • Appears when you press the [P] button but it is not engaged due to low ATF temperature. | • Depress the brake pedal until this message disappear. |
|         | • Appears when depressing the accelerator pedal while the gear position is in [N]. | • Remove your foot from the accelerator pedal. When driving, depress the brake pedal and change the gear position. |
## Indicators

### Driver Information Interface Warning and Information Messages

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Message</th>
<th>Condition</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• Appears when you press and hold N button for more than two seconds.</td>
<td>• Disappears when you set the gear position to other than N.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Appears if there is a problem with the cooling system.</td>
<td>• Drive slowly to prevent overheating and have your vehicle checked by a dealer as soon as possible.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Models with LED headlights</strong> • Appears if there is a problem with the automatic lighting control system.</td>
<td><strong>Appears while driving</strong> - Manually turn the lights on, and have your vehicle checked by a dealer.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Models with LED headlights</strong> • Appears if there is a problem with the headlights.</td>
<td><strong>Appears while driving</strong> - The headlights may not be on. When conditions allow you to drive safely, have your vehicle checked by a dealer as soon as possible.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Models with parking sensor system</strong> • Appears if there is a problem with the parking sensor system.</td>
<td>• Check if the area around the sensor(s) is covered with mud, ice, snow, etc. If the indicator(s) stays on or the beeper does not stop even after you clean the area, have the system checked by a dealer.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Models with parking sensor system</strong> • Appears if there are obstacles around the sensors.</td>
<td>• Check for obstacles near your vehicle to make sure it is safe to park.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Indicators  Driver Information Interface Warning and Information Messages

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Message</th>
<th>Condition</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• Appears if the automatic brake hold is automatically canceled while it is in operation.</td>
<td>• Immediately depress the brake pedal.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Appears when the automatic brake hold system is turned off.</td>
<td><a href="#">Automatic Brake Hold</a> P. 604</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Appears when the automatic brake hold button is pressed without wearing the driver’s seat belt.</td>
<td>• Fasten the driver’s seat belt. <a href="#">Automatic Brake Hold</a> P. 604</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Appears when the automatic brake hold button is pressed without depressing the brake pedal while the automatic brake hold is in operation.</td>
<td>• Press the automatic brake hold button with the brake pedal depressed. <a href="#">Automatic Brake Hold</a> P. 604</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Appears when the parking brake is applied automatically while it is in operation.</td>
<td><a href="#">Automatic Brake Hold</a> P. 604 <a href="#">Parking Brake</a> P. 600</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Indicators

### Driver Information Interface Warning and Information Messages

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Message</th>
<th>Condition</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| • Appears when you pull the electric parking brake switch without depressing the brake pedal. | • Depress the brake pedal to release the parking brake.  
  
  [Parking Brake](#) P. 600 | |
| **Models with smart entry system** | • Appears as soon as a problem is detected in the smart entry system. | • Appears constantly - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. |
| **Models with Auto high-beam** | • Appears if there is a problem with the Auto high-beam. | • Manually operate the headlight switch.  
  • If you are driving with the high-beam headlights when this happens, the headlights are changed to low beams. |
| **Models with Auto high-beam** | • Appears when the Auto high-beam is in operation, or the headlight switch is turned in AUTO, but the temperature inside the camera is too high. The Auto high-beam cancels automatically. | • Use the climate control system to cool down the camera.  
  • **Goes off** - The camera has been cooled down. Turning the headlight switch to AUTO can resume the system.  
  [Front Sensor Camera](#) P. 562 |
| **Models with Auto high-beam** | • Appears when the area around the camera is blocked by dirt, mud, etc. Stop your vehicle in a safe place, and wipe it off with a soft cloth.  
  • May appear when driving in bad weather (rain, snow, fog, etc.) | • Have your vehicle checked by a dealer if the message comes back on after you cleaned the area around the camera. |

---

* Not available on all models
### Indicators

#### Driver Information Interface Warning and Information Messages

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Message</th>
<th>Condition</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• Appears if there is a problem with the fuel pump system.</td>
<td>• Set the power mode to OFF for a while, then set the power mode to ON. The message disappears if there is no problem. If the message appears again, take your vehicle to a dealer.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Appears if there is a problem with the engine management system.</td>
<td>• Set the power mode to OFF for a while, then set the power mode to ON. The message disappears if there is no problem. If the message appears again, take your vehicle to a dealer.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Appears if there is a problem with the ignition system.</td>
<td>• Set the power mode to OFF for a while, then set the power mode to ON. The message disappears if there is no problem. If the message appears again, take your vehicle to a dealer.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Appears if there is a problem with the seat heaters*.</td>
<td>• Turn off the seat heaters* until the message disappears. If the message appears again, take your vehicle to a dealer.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Appears if there is a problem with the climate control system.</td>
<td>• Turn off the climate control system until the message disappears. If the message appears again, take your vehicle to a dealer.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Not available on all models
## Driver Information Interface Warning and Information Messages

### Models with remote engine starter

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Message</th>
<th>Condition</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• Appears when you unlock and open the driver’s door while the engine is running by remote engine start.</td>
<td>[Remote Engine Start with Vehicle Feedback] * P. 538</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Models with ACC

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Message</th>
<th>Condition</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| • Flashes when the system senses a likely collision with a vehicle in front of you. | • Take the appropriate means to prevent a collision (apply the brakes, change lanes, etc.)  
  Collison Mitigation Braking System™ (CMBS™)* P. 608  
  Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)* P. 564 |
| • Appears when ACC has been automatically canceled. | • You can resume the set speed after the condition that caused ACC to cancel improves. Press the RES/+ button.  
  Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)* P. 564 |
| • Appears when pressing the −/SET button while the vehicle is moving and the brake pedal is depressed. | • ACC cannot be set.  
  Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)* P. 564 |
| • Appears if the VSA® or traction control function operates while ACC is in operation. | • ACC has been automatically canceled.  
  Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)* P. 564 |

*Not available on all models*
## Models with LKAS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Message</th>
<th>Condition</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)</strong></td>
<td>• Appears when the vehicle is driving out of a detected lane. The steering wheel vibrates rapidly.</td>
<td>• Keep the vehicle within the lane you are driving. <a href="#">Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)</a> P. 581</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Road Departure Mitigation (RDM) System</strong></td>
<td>• Appears when the vehicle is driving out of a detected lane.</td>
<td>• Keep the vehicle within the lane you are driving. <a href="#">Road Departure Mitigation (RDM) System</a> * P. 576</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>When you selected Warning Only</td>
<td>• The steering wheel vibrates rapidly when the vehicle is drifting out of a detected lane.</td>
<td>• You can change the setting for the road departure mitigation system. <strong>Normal, Wide, and Warning Only</strong> can be selected. <a href="#">Customized Features</a> P. 442</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>When you selected Normal or Wide</td>
<td>• The steering wheel vibrates rapidly when the vehicle is drifting out of a detected line. The system also steers the vehicle to help you remain within your driving lane.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Steering Torque</strong></td>
<td>• Blinks when you fail to steer the vehicle. The beeper sounds simultaneously.</td>
<td>• Operate the steering wheel to resume the LKAS.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* *Not available on all models*
### Indicators

#### Driver Information Interface Warning and Information Messages

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Message</th>
<th>Condition</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><img src="image.png" alt="LKAS Indicator" /></td>
<td>Appears when the LKAS is in operation, or the LKAS button is pressed, but there is a problem with a system related to the LKAS. The LKAS cancels automatically. The beeper sounds simultaneously if selected by customization.</td>
<td>If any other system indicators come on, such as the VSA®, ABS and brake system, take appropriate action. <a href="#">Indicators</a> P. 84</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image.png" alt="Front Sensor Camera*" /></td>
<td>Appears when the LKAS is in operation, or the LKAS button is pressed, but the temperature inside the LKAS camera is too high. The LKAS cancels automatically. The beeper sounds simultaneously if selected by customization.</td>
<td>Use the climate control system to cool down the camera. <strong>Goes off</strong> - The camera has been cooled down. Pressing the LKAS button can resume the system. <a href="#">Front Sensor Camera*</a> P. 562</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image.png" alt="Front Sensor Camera*" /></td>
<td>Appears when the area around the camera is blocked by dirt, mud, etc. Stop your vehicle in a safe place, and wipe it off with a soft cloth. May appear when driving in bad weather (rain, snow, fog, etc.)</td>
<td>Have your vehicle checked by a dealer if the indicator and message come back on after you cleaned the area around the camera.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Not available on all models*
## Models with Auto Idle Stop

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Message</th>
<th>Condition</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• Appears when <strong>Auto Idle Stop Display ON</strong> has been selected from the customization menu.</td>
<td></td>
<td><a href="#">Auto Idle Stop</a> P. 552</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Appears when Auto Idle Stop does not activate for some reason.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Appears when the engine restarts automatically.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Appears when the battery temperature is around 14°F (−10°C) or lower.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Appears when Auto Idle Stop does not activate because the climate control system is in use, and the difference between the set temperature and actual interior temperature becomes significant.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Appears when Auto Idle Stop does not activate because the engine coolant temperature is too low or high.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Appears when Auto Idle Stop does not activate because the battery charge level is low.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Appears even though the battery is fully charged - The system may not read the battery amount correctly. Drive for a few minutes.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• <strong>Appears after charging the battery or jump starting</strong> - Disconnect the negative cable once and reconnect it again to the battery. Drive a few minutes.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Not available on all models
# Indicators

## Driver Information Interface Warning and Information Messages

### Models with Auto Idle Stop

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Message</th>
<th>Condition</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>- Appears when Auto Idle Stop does not activate because the pressure to the brake pedal is not enough.</td>
<td></td>
<td>• Depress the brake pedal firmly.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| - Appears when Auto Idle Stop Display ON has been selected from the customization menu.  
- Appears when the system is under the following conditions while Auto Idle Stop activates:  
  - The battery charge level is low.  
  - The battery temperature is around 14°F (−10°C) or lower.  
  - The climate control system is in use, and the difference between the set temperature and actual interior temperature becomes significant.  
  - The humidity in the interior is high. |  | • The engine restarts automatically in a few seconds.  
  - Starting the Engine P. 536 |
Gauges and Displays

Gauges

Gauges include the fuel gauge, temperature gauge, and related indicators. They are displayed when the power mode is set to ON.

■ Fuel Gauge
Displays the amount of fuel left in the fuel tank.

■ Temperature Gauge
Displays the temperature of the engine coolant.

NOTICE
You should refuel when the reading approaches \( E \). Running out of fuel can cause the engine to misfire, damaging the catalytic converter.

The actual amount of remaining fuel may differ from the fuel gauge reading.

NOTICE
Driving with the temperature gauge pointer in the upper zone can cause serious engine damage. Pull safely to the side of the road and allow engine temperature to return to normal.

\( \text{Overheating} \ P. \ 713 \)
Driver Information Interface

The driver information interface displays the speedometer, tachometer, odometer, trip computer, outside temperature, and other gauges. It also displays important messages such as warnings and other helpful information.

### Speedometer
Displays your driving speed in mph or km/h.

### Tachometer
Shows the number of engine revolutions per minute.

- **Speedometer**
  You can set the speedometer and the displayed measurements to read in either mph and km/h.
  - Units P. 128

- **Tachometer**
  You can turn on or off the tachometer display.
  - Show Tachometer P. 132
Gauges and Displays

Driver Information Interface

Instrument Panel

Odometer

Shows the total number of miles or kilometers that your vehicle has accumulated.

Outside Temperature*

Shows the outside temperature in Fahrenheit (U.S.) or Celsius (Canada).

Adjusting the outside temperature display
Adjust the temperature reading by up to ±5°F or ±3°C if the temperature reading seems incorrect.
Use the audio/information screen to correct the temperature.

Customized Features P. 442

Outside Temperature*

The temperature sensor is in the front bumper. Road heat and exhaust from another vehicle can affect the temperature reading when your vehicle speed is less than 19 mph (30 km/h).

It may take several minutes for the display to be updated after the temperature reading has stabilized.

* Not available on all models

Continued
Accessing Content

Press the \( \text{Home} \) button, then press the \( \uparrow/\downarrow \) button to scroll to the content you want to see. Press \textit{ENTER} to see detailed information.

*1: Models with color audio system
*2: Models with Display Audio
Gauges and Displays

Driver Information Interface

Instrument Panel

- Press ▲ or ▼.

- Models with color audio system:
  - ▲ Button
  - (Home) Button

- Models with Display Audio:
  - ▲ Button
  - (Home) Button

- Press ▲ or ▼.

- Warnings
  - P. 126
  - ▲ Button
  - P. 129
  - Blank

- Show/Hide Apps
  - P. 130
  - ▲ Button
  - P. 128
  - Units

- Trip Computer
  - P. 124
  - ▲ Button
  - P. 131
  - Settings

- Phone
  - P. 128
  - ▲ Button
  - P. 127
  - Maintenance

- Navigation
  - P. 126
  - ▲ Button
  - P. 129
  - Now Playing

* Not available on all models

Continued 123
Trip Computer

Press the **ENTER** button to switch between trip computer A and trip computer B.
■ Distance
Shows the total number of miles or kilometers driven since the last reset. Meters A and B can be used to measure two separate trips.

Resetting distance
To reset the Distance, display it and then press and hold the ENTER button until the Distance is reset to 0.0.

■ Average fuel economy (Avg. Fuel)
Shows the estimated average fuel economy of each Distance in mpg or l/100 km. The display is updated at set intervals. When a Distance is reset, the average fuel economy is also reset.

■ Instant fuel economy
Shows the instant fuel economy as a bar graph in mpg or l/100 km.

■ Range
Shows the estimated distance you can travel on the remaining fuel. This estimated distance is based on the vehicle’s current fuel economy.
Gauges and Displays

Driver Information Interface

**Navigation**

- **Models with Display Audio**
  Display Audio shows you turn-by-turn directions to your destination.

- **Models with navigation system**
  When the navigation system is not providing driving guidance, an image of a compass appears in the driver information interface.

  Refer to the navigation system

**Warnings**

- **Driver Information Interface Warning and Information Messages**
  P. 102

- **Navigation**
  Models with Display Audio
  Turn-by-turn directions will be shown on the driver information interface only when your Android phone is connected to Android Auto™.

  You can select whether to have the turn-by-turn display come on or not during the route guidance.

  Refer to the navigation system

  Customized Features P. 442

- **Warnings**
  The Warnings app is dynamic and will only appear when there are active warnings. If there are no Warnings, this app will not be shown.
■ Maintenance

Shows the current condition of the tire pressure and the remaining oil life.

■ Tire Pressure
Shows the tire pressure of each tire.

**Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) with Tire Fill Assist**
P. 592

■ Oil Life
Shows the remaining oil life and Maintenance Minder™.

**Maintenance Minder™** P. 639

*Continued*
Gauges and Displays

Driver Information Interface

**Phone**

- Shows the current phone information.

\[ \text{* Bluetooth® HandsFreeLink® P. 495} \]

**Units**

- Enables you to set the speedometer and the displayed measurements to read in either mph or km/h.

Press and hold the **ENTER** button. Each time you do this, the unit will change from mph to km/h or vice versa. After this, a confirmation screen will appear for a few seconds.

* Not available on all models
■ Blank
Shows blank screen.

■ Now Playing*
Shows the current audio information.
Audio System Basic Operation P. 285

* Not available on all models

Continued
Gauges and Displays

Driver Information Interface

Show/Hide Apps
You can show or hide the meter contents.

Select the content you wish to show or hide, then press ENTER.
- Repeat it if you want to show or hide more than one app.

Show/Hide Apps
You cannot hide apps with the icon on the right side.

Selecting Default All in Vehicle Customization does not restore these settings to their original state.

Models with Display Audio
You can also add the Android Auto, Apple CarPlay, Sirius XM®, My Honda Music, USB, AM, FM, Bluetooth Audio, Social Playlist, AUX Input, CD® and Rear Entertainment® apps.

* Not available on all models
Settings

Change the settings to your liking.

Arrange Apps

You can change the order of the apps on the home screen.

1. Press the [▲▼] button to select **Arrange Apps**, then press **ENTER**.
2. Press the [▲▼] button to select the icon you want to move, then press **ENTER**.
3. Press the [▲▼] button repeatedly to move the icon to your desired position, then press **ENTER**.

Gauges and Displays

Driver Information Interface

Instrument Panel

Continued
You can show or hide the tachometer.

Press the ▲/▼ button to select Show Tachometer, then press ENTER.

The tachometer appears when the check box is checked.
Use the driver information interface to customize certain vehicle features.

**How to customize**

First, make sure the vehicle is at a complete stop and that the power mode is set to ON. Next, press the (home) button, then press the button to select **Settings**. Finally, press the button.

**Models with color audio system**

**Vehicle Customization**

To customize other features, press the button.

- **List of customizable options** P. 136
- **Example of how to customize a setting** P. 138

Change to [P] before you attempt to change a customized setting.
Customization flow
Press the  (home) button.

Settings → ENTER → Arrive Apps → P. 131

Settings → ENTER → Showing Tachometer → P. 132

Settings → ENTER → Vehicle Customization

Vehicle Customization → ENTER → Language Selection

Language Selection → "Trip A" Reset Timing

Language Selection → "Trip B" Reset Timing

Language Selection → Adjust Alarm Volume

Language Selection → Reverse Alert Tone

Language Selection → Fuel Efficiency Backlight

Language Selection → Interior Light Dimming Time

Language Selection → Headlight Auto OFF Timer
Gauges and Displays

Driver Information Interface

Instrument Panel

**Default All**

**Door Setup**

**Auto Door Lock**

**Auto Door Unlock**

**Key And Remote Unlock Mode**

**Keyless Lock Answer Back**

**Security Relock Timer**

**Exit**

**Enter**
### List of customizable options

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setup Group</th>
<th>Customizable Features</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Selectable settings</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Meter Setup</strong></td>
<td><strong>Language Selection</strong></td>
<td>Changes the displayed language.</td>
<td>English(^*1)/Français/Español</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>“Trip A” Reset Timing</strong></td>
<td>Changes the setting of how the distance and average fuel economy of trip computer A is reset.</td>
<td>When Fully Refueled/IGN OFF/Manually Reset(^*1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>“Trip B” Reset Timing</strong></td>
<td>Changes the setting of how the distance and average fuel economy of trip computer B is reset.</td>
<td>When Fully Refueled/IGN OFF/Manually Reset(^*1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Adjust Alarm Volume</strong></td>
<td>Changes the volume setting for buzzers, warnings, turn signals, and other alerting systems.</td>
<td>High/Mid(^*1)/Low</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Reverse Alert Tone</strong></td>
<td>Causes the beeper to sound once when the gear position is changed to R.</td>
<td>ON(^*1)/OFF</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Fuel Efficiency Backlight</strong></td>
<td>Turns the ambient meter feature on and off.</td>
<td>ON(^*1)/OFF</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Lighting Setup</strong></td>
<td><strong>Interior Light Dimming Time</strong></td>
<td>Changes the length of time the interior lights stay on after you close the doors.</td>
<td>60sec/30sec(^*1)/15sec</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Headlight Auto OFF Timer</strong></td>
<td>Changes the length of time the exterior lights stay on after you close the driver’s door.</td>
<td>60sec/30sec/15sec(^*1)/0sec</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*\(^1\): Default Setting
### Door Setup

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setup Group</th>
<th>Customizable Features</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Selectable settings</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Auto Door Lock</strong></td>
<td>Changes the setting for when the doors automatically lock.</td>
<td></td>
<td>With Vehicle Speed/Shift From P/OFF</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Auto Door Unlock</strong></td>
<td>Changes the setting for when the doors automatically unlock.</td>
<td></td>
<td>All Doors When Driver's Door Opens/All Doors When Shifted To Park/All Doors When Ignition Switched OFF/OFF</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Key And Remote Unlock Mode</strong></td>
<td>Sets up either the driver's door or all doors to unlock on the first operation of the remote or built-in key.</td>
<td></td>
<td>Driver Door/All Doors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Keyless Lock Answer Back</strong></td>
<td>LOCK/UNLOCK - The exterior lights flash. LOCK (2nd push)- The beeper sounds.</td>
<td></td>
<td>ON/OFF</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Security Relock Timer</strong></td>
<td>Changes the time it takes for the doors to relock and the security system to set after you unlock the vehicle without opening a door.</td>
<td></td>
<td>90sec/60sec/30sec</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Default All**

- Cancels customized changes you have made or restores them to their default setting.

---

*1:Default Setting
Example of how to customize a setting

Below are steps that explain how to change the reset timing for trip A from the default setting (manual) so that it resets automatically when the vehicle is fully refueled.

1. Press the (home) button and then the button to select Settings, then press the ENTER button.

2. Press the button to select Vehicle Customization, then press the ENTER button.
3. Press the ▲/▼ button to select Meter Setup, then press the ENTER button.
   • Language Selection appears first in the display.

4. Press the ▲/▼ button to select "Trip A" Reset Timing, then press the ENTER button.
   • The display switches to the customization setup screen, where you can select When Fully Refueled, IGN OFF, Manually Reset, or Exit.

5. Press the ▲/▼ button to select When Fully Refueled, then press the ENTER button.
   • The SETUP "When Fully Refueled" screen appears, then the display returns to the customization menu screen.
6. Press the ▲/▼ button until Exit appears on the display, then press the ENTER button.

7. Repeat Step 6 until you return to the Vehicle Customization screen, then press the (home) or (back) button to return to the home screen.
Controls

This chapter explains how to operate the various controls necessary for driving.

Clock .................................................. 142
Locking and Unlocking the Doors
   Key Types and Functions .................. 144
   Low Remote Signal Strength .......... 146
   Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Outside... 147
   Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Inside... 154
   Childproof Door Locks ..................... 157
   Auto Door Locking/Unlocking .......... 158
Opening and Closing the Tailgate ... 159
Opening and Closing the Sliding Doors .... 170
Security System
   Immobilizer System ......................... 179
   Security System Alarm ...................... 179
   Opening and Closing the Windows ...... 182
   Opening and Closing the Moonroof* .... 185
Operating the Switches Around the Steering Wheel
   ENGINE START/STOP Button .......... 186
   Turn Signals .................................. 189
   Light Switches ............................... 189
   Fog Lights* ................................ 192
   Daytime Running Lights ................ 193
   Auto High-Beam* ............................ 194
   Wipers and Washers ...................... 197
   Brightness Control ......................... 200
   Rear Defogger/Heated Door Mirror* Button... 201
   Heated Windshield Button .......... 202
   Driving Position Memory System* .... 203
   Adjusting the Steering Wheel ......... 205

Adjusting the Mirrors ......................... 206
   Interior Rearview Mirror .............. 206
   Power Door Mirrors ....................... 207
Adjusting the Seats
   Front Seats .................................. 209
   Head Restraints ............................. 212
   Maintain a Proper Sitting Position...... 215
Interior Lights/Interior Convenience Items .... 225
   Interior Lights ................................ 225
   Interior Convenience Items .............. 227
Climate Control System
   Dual-zone climate control system ........ 248
   Tri-zone climate control system ......... 252
   Using Automatic Climate Control ........ 252
   Automatic Climate Control Sensors ..... 257

* Not available on all models
Clock

Adjusting the Clock

You can adjust the time manually in the audio/information screen, with the power mode in ON.

Adjusting the Time

Models with color audio system

1. Press and hold the MENU/CLOCK button.
2. Select Adjust Clock, then press .
3. Rotate to adjust the hours.
4. Press to switch to minute adjustment.
5. Rotate to adjust the minutes.
6. Press to switch to Set.
7. Press to complete clock adjustment.

Models with navigation system

The clock is automatically updated through the navigation system, so the time does not need to be adjusted.

Models with color audio system

These indications are used to show how to operate the selector knob.

Rotate to select.
Press to enter.

To change the setting between 12h and 24h:

1. Press the MENU/CLOCK button.
2. Rotate to select Settings, then press .
3. Rotate to select Clock Format, then press .
4. Rotate to select 12h or 24h, then press .
Adjusting the Clock

Controls

1. Select , then select Settings.
2. Select System.
3. Select Date & Time.
4. Select Set Date & Time.
5. Select Automatic Date & Time, then select OFF.

To adjust time:
7. Selecting .
   - AM/PM icon can be switched to each other either by selecting or by directly touching the icon.
   - When you customize the clock display to 24 hour clock, AM/PM icon is not displayed.
   - Customized Features P. 442
8. Select Save to set the time.

To adjust date:
6. Select Set Date.
7. Selecting .
8. Select Save to set the date.

Clock

Models with Display Audio

You can also adjust the clock by touching the clock displayed on the upper right corner of the display or the Clock icon on the home screen.
1. Touch the clock on the display.
   - The clock screen of the select face-type appears.
2. Select Settings.
3. Select Date & Time Settings.
4. Select Set Date & Time.
5. Select Automatic Date & Time, then select OFF.
6. Select Set Date or Set Time.
7. Adjusting the dates, hours and minutes by selecting .
8. Select Save to set the time.

You can customize the clock display to show the 12 hour clock or 24 hour clock.

Customized Features P. 442
Locking and Unlocking the Doors

Key Types and Functions

This vehicle comes with the following keys:

Use the keys to start and stop the engine, and to lock and unlock all the doors, tailgate, and fuel fill door. You can also use the remote transmitter or smart entry system* to lock and unlock all the doors, tailgate, and fuel fill door.

Key Types and Functions

All of the keys have an immobilizer system. The immobilizer system helps to protect against vehicle theft.

Immobilizer System P. 179

Follow the advice below to prevent damage to the keys:

• Do not leave the keys in direct sunlight, or in locations with high temperature or high humidity.
• Do not drop the keys or set heavy objects on them.
• Keep the keys away from liquids, dust or sand.
• Do not take the keys apart except for replacing the battery.

If the circuits in the keys are damaged, the engine may not start, and the remote transmitter may not work.

If the keys do not work properly, have them inspected by a dealer.

Remote Engine Start with Vehicle Feedback* P. 538

* Not available on all models
The built-in key can be used to lock/unlock the doors and tailgate when the remote battery becomes weak and the power door lock/unlock operation is disabled.

To remove the built-in key, slide the release knob and then pull out the key. To reinstall the built-in key, push the built-in key into the remote until it clicks.

Key Number Tag
Contains a number that you will need if you purchase a replacement key.

Key Number Tag
Keep the key number tag separate from the key in a safe place outside of your vehicle.
If you wish to purchase an additional key, contact a dealer.
If you lose your key and you cannot start the engine, contact a dealer.
Low Remote Signal Strength

The vehicle transmits radio waves to locate the remote when locking/unlocking the doors*, tailgate*, and fuel fill door*, opening the power sliding door* and the power tailgate*, or to start the engine.

In the following cases, locking/unlocking the doors*, opening the power sliding door* and the power tailgate*, or starting the engine may be inhibited or operation may be unstable:

- Strong radio waves are being transmitted by nearby equipment.
- You are carrying the remote together with telecommunications equipment, laptop computers, cell phones, or wireless devices.
- A metallic object is touching or covering the remote.

Communication between the remote and the vehicle consumes the remote’s battery. Battery life is about two years, but this varies depending on regularity of use. The battery is consumed whenever the remote is receiving strong radio waves. Avoid placing it near electrical appliances such as televisions and personal computers.

* Not available on all models
Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Outside

Using the Smart Entry with Push Button Start System*

When you carry the remote, you can lock/unlock the doors, fuel fill door, and open the tailgate.
You can lock/unlock the doors, fuel fill door, and tailgate within a radius of about 32 inches (80 cm) of the outside door handle or tailgate outer handle.

Locking the doors and tailgate
Press the door lock button on the front door or the tailgate.
▶ Some exterior lights flash; the beeper sounds; all the doors and tailgate lock; and the security system sets.

* Not available on all models

Continued
Locking and Unlocking the Doors

Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Outside

- **Locking the doors and tailgate (Walk away auto lock)**
  
  When you walk away from the vehicle while carrying the remote, the doors will automatically lock. The auto lock function activates when all doors and tailgate are closed, and the remote is within about 5 feet (1.5 m) radius of the outside door handle.

  1. Exit vehicle while carrying the remote and close door(s).
     1. While within about 5 feet (1.5 m) radius of the vehicle.
        - The beeper sounds; the auto lock function will be activated.
     2. Carry the remote beyond about 5 feet (1.5 m) from the vehicle and remain outside this range for 2 or more seconds.
        - Some exterior lights flash; the beeper sounds; all doors and tailgate will then lock.

  After the auto lock function has been activated, when you stay within the locking/unlocking operation range, the indicator on the remote will continue to flash until the doors are locked.

  When you open a door after the auto lock function activating beeper sounds, the auto lock function will be canceled.

  When all doors and tailgate have been closed and the remote is inside the vehicle, or if the remote is not detected within about 5 feet (1.5 m) of the vehicle, auto lock function will not be activated.

- Locking the doors and tailgate (Walk away auto lock)
  
  The auto lock function is set to OFF as the factory default setting. The auto lock function can be set to ON using the audio/information screen. If you set the auto lock function to ON using the audio/information screen, only the remote transmitter that was used to unlock the driver's door prior to the setting change can activate auto lock.

  **Customized Features** P. 442

  After the auto lock function has been activated, when you stay within the locking/unlocking operation range, the indicator on the remote will continue to flash until the doors are locked.

  When you stay beside the vehicle within the operation range, the doors will automatically lock approximately 30 seconds after the auto lock function activating beeper sounds.

  When you open a door after the auto lock function activating beeper sounds, the auto lock function will be canceled.
To temporarily deactivate the function:
1. Set the power mode to OFF.
2. Open the driver’s door.
3. Using the master door lock switch, operate the lock as follows:
   Lock → Unlock → Lock → Unlock.
   ► The beeper sounds and the function is deactivated.

To restore the function:
• Set the power mode to ON.
• Lock the vehicle without using the auto lock function.
• Walk away at least more than about 5 feet (1.5 m) away from the vehicle while carrying the remote.
• Open any door.

Locking the doors and tailgate (Walk away auto lock)
The auto lock function does not operate when any of the following conditions are met.
• The remote is inside the vehicle.
• A door or the hood is not closed.
• The power mode is set to any mode other than OFF.
• The remote is not located within a radius of about 5 feet (1.5 m) from the vehicle when you get out of the vehicle and close the doors.

Auto lock function operation stop beeper
After the auto lock function has been activated, the auto lock operation stop beeper sounds for approximately two seconds in the following cases.
• The remote is put inside the vehicle through a window.
• You are located too close to the vehicle.
• The remote is put inside the tailgate.
If the warning beeper sounds, check that you are carrying the remote. Then, open/close a door and confirm the auto lock activation beeper sounds once.
Locking and Unlocking the Doors

Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Outside

Unlocking the doors and tailgate

Grab the driver’s door handle:

- The driver’s door and fuel fill door unlocks.
- Some exterior lights flash twice and the beeper sounds twice.

Grab the front passenger’s door or rear door handle:

- All doors and the tailgate unlock.
- Some exterior lights flash twice and the beeper sounds twice.

Press the tailgate outer handle:

- The tailgate unlocks.
- Some exterior lights flash twice and the beeper sounds twice.

Using the Smart Entry with Push Button Start System *

If you do not open a door or the tailgate within 30 seconds of unlocking the vehicle with the smart entry system, the doors and tailgate will automatically relock.

The light flash, beep and unlock settings can be customized.

Customized Features P. 442

Models with power tailgate

You can also unlock and open with the power tailgate.

Using the Tailgate Outer Handle P. 168

* Not available on all models
Locking and Unlocking the Doors

Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Outside

Controls

■ Locking the doors and tailgate
Press the lock button.

Once:

• Some exterior lights flash, all the doors, tailgate, and fuel fill door lock, and the security system sets.

Twice (within five seconds after the first push):

• A beeper sounds and verifies the security system is set.

Using the Remote Transmitter

If you do not open a door or the tailgate within 30 seconds of unlocking the vehicle with the remote transmitter, the doors and tailgate will automatically relock.

You can change the relock timer setting.

Models with color audio system

Vehicle Customization P. 133

Models with Display Audio

Customized Features P. 442

The remote transmitter uses low-power signals, so the operating range may vary depending on the surroundings.

You can lock or unlock doors using the remote transmitter only when the power mode is in VEHICLE OFF.

The remote will not lock the vehicle when a door is open.
Locking and Unlocking the Doors

Unlocking the doors and tailgate
Press the unlock button.
Once:
  - Some exterior lights flash twice, and the driver’s door and fuel fill door unlocks.
Twice:
  - The remaining doors and the tailgate unlock.

Locking/Unlocking the Doors Using a Key
If the remote battery or the vehicle battery is dead, use the key instead of the remote.

Fully insert the key and turn it.

Using the Remote Transmitter
If the distance at which the remote transmitter works varies, the battery is probably low.
If the LED does not come on when you press a button, the battery is dead.
  - Replacing the Button Battery P. 684

You can customize the door unlock mode setting.

Models with color audio system
  - Vehicle Customization P. 133
Models with Display Audio
  - Customized Features P. 442

Locking/Unlocking the Doors Using a Key
When you lock the driver’s door with a key, all of the other doors and the tailgate lock at the same time.
When unlocking, the driver’s door unlocks first. Turn the key a second time within a few seconds to unlock the remaining doors and the tailgate.

You can customize the door unlock mode setting.

Models with color audio system
  - Vehicle Customization P. 133
Models with Display Audio
  - Customized Features P. 442
Locking and Unlocking the Doors

Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Outside

Controls

■ Locking the front doors
Push the lock tab forward ① or push the master door lock switch in the lock direction ②, and close the door.

■ Locking the rear doors
Slide the lock tab downward and close the door.

■ Lockout prevention system
The doors and tailgate cannot be locked when the remote is inside the vehicle.

Locking a Door Without Using a Key

When you lock the driver’s door, all the other doors and the tailgate lock at the same time.
When you lock the front passenger’s door with the master door lock switch, all the other doors and the tailgate lock at the same time.
Make sure you have the key in your hand when you lock the driver’s door or any of the other doors, otherwise you may end up locking the key inside the vehicle.
Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Inside

■ Using the Lock Tab

**Front**
- **To Lock**
  - Lock Tab
- **To Unlock**
  - Lock Tab

**Rear**
- **To Lock**
  - Slide the lock tab downward.
- **To Unlock**
  - Slide the lock tab upward.

**Using the Lock Tab**

- **Locking a door** Push the lock tab forward.
- **Unlocking a door** Pull the lock tab rearward.
- **Locking a door** Slide the lock tab downward.
- **Unlocking a door** Slide the lock tab upward.

When you lock the door using the lock tab on the driver’s door, all of the other doors and the tailgate lock at the same time. When you unlock the door using the lock tab on the driver’s door, only the driver’s door will unlock.
Unlocking Using the Front Door Inner Handle

Pull the front door inner handle. The door unlocks and opens in one motion.

Unlocking and opening the driver’s door from the inner handle unlocks all the other doors.

To avoid unlocking all the doors at once, use the lock tab on the driver’s door to unlock, then lock again before opening the door.

This setting works for one time only. If you do not want all the doors to be unlocked all the time, customize the Auto Door Unlock setting to OFF using the driver information interface* or audio/information screen*.

* Not available on all models

Un seeding Using the Front Door Inner Handle

The front door inner handles are designed to allow front seat occupants to open the door in one motion. However, this feature requires that front seat occupants never pull a front door inner handle while the vehicle is in motion.

Children should always ride in a rear seat where childproof door locks are provided.

Childproof Door Locks P. 157
Press the master door lock switch in as shown to lock or unlock all doors and the tailgate.

When you lock/unlock either front door using the master door lock switch, all the other doors and the tailgate lock/unlock at the same time.
Childproof Door Locks

The childproof door locks prevent the rear doors from being opened from the inside regardless of the position of the lock tab.

### Setting the Childproof Door Locks

Slide the lever in the rear door to the lock position, and close the door.

#### When opening the sliding door

Open the door using the outside door handle.

To open the door from the inside when the childproof door lock is on, put the lock tab in the unlock position, lower the rear window, put your hand out of the window, and pull the outside door handle.

**Models with power sliding doors**

The door pillar switches become disabled.

- **Power Sliding Door Switches** P. 174

You can open and close the power sliding door, using the power sliding door switches near the steering wheel, or the remote.
Auto Door Locking/Unlocking

Your vehicle locks and unlocks all doors and the tailgate automatically when a certain condition is met.

- **Drive lock mode**
  All doors and the tailgate lock when the vehicle’s speed reaches about 10 mph (15 km/h).

- **Driver’s door open mode**
  All doors and the tailgate unlock when the driver’s door is opened.

You can turn off or change to another auto door locking/unlocking setting using the driver information interface* or audio/information screen*.

* Not available on all models
Opening and Closing the Tailgate

Precautions for Opening/Closing the Tailgate

Always make sure individuals and objects are clear of the tailgate before opening or closing it.

Models without power tailgate
- Open the tailgate all the way.
  - If it is not fully opened, the tailgate may begin to close under its own weight.
- Be careful when it is windy. The wind may cause the tailgate to close.

All models
Keep the tailgate closed while driving to:
- Avoid possible damage.
- Prevent exhaust gas from leaking into the vehicle.

* Not available on all models

WARNING
Anyone caught in the path of a tailgate that is being opened or closed can be seriously injured.

Make sure that all people are clear of the tailgate before opening or closing it.

Be careful not to hit your head on the tailgate or to put your hands between the tailgate and the cargo area when closing the tailgate.

When you are storing or picking up luggage from the cargo area, or by raising and lowering your foot under the center of the rear bumper for hands free access*, while the engine is idling, do not stand in front of the exhaust pipe. You may get burned.

Do not allow any passenger in the cargo space. They may get hurt during hard braking, a sudden acceleration, or a crash.

Carbon Monoxide Gas P. 80
Opening and Closing the Tailgate

Precautions for Opening/Closing the Tailgate

Models with power tailgate

The power tailgate can be operated by pressing the power tailgate button on the remote transmitter, pressing the power tailgate button in the driver side control panel, pressing the button on the tailgate, or by raising and lowering your foot under the center of the rear bumper for hands free access (if equipped).

The power tailgate can be opened/closed when the transmission is in P.

NOTICE

Do not push or pull on the power tailgate when it is being automatically opened or closed. Forcibly opening or closing the power tailgate while in operation can deform the tailgate frame.

When operating the power tailgate, make sure there is enough space around your vehicle. People near the tailgate may be seriously hurt if the tailgate hits or closes on their heads. Be especially cautious if children are around.

The power tailgate may not open or close under the following conditions:

- You start the engine while the tailgate is automatically opening or closing.
- The vehicle is parked on a steep hill.
- The vehicle is swayed in a strong wind.
- The tailgate or the roof is covered with snow or ice.
Opening/Closing the Power Tailgate

Hands Free Access*

With the remote on you, you can open or close the tailgate hands free by raising and lowering your foot (in a kicking motion) under the center of the rear bumper.

Some exterior lights flash twice and a beeper sounds once, then the tailgate begins to move.

During heavy rain or in other instances when the vehicle becomes very wet, the sensor may not properly detect your foot motion.

When performing work on or around the rear section of the vehicle, you may inadvertently open or close the tailgate.

To prevent this from happening, select Power Tailgate Setup on the audio/information screen and then select off for the feature.

* Not available on all models

Continued
## Opening and Closing the Power Tailgate

**Using the Remote Transmitter**

![Power Tailgate Button]

Press the power tailgate button for more than one second to operate the power tailgate when the power mode is in VEHICLE OFF. Some exterior lights flash and the beeper sounds.

If you press the button again while the power tailgate is moving, it will stop. Press the button for more than one second, and the power tailgate will reverse direction.

### Customizing when to open the tailgate

**Anytime:** The power tailgate unlocks and opens at the same time. This is the default setting.

**When Unlocked:** The tailgate opens when all doors are unlocked.

- [Customized Features](#) P. 442

### Opening/Closing the Power Tailgate *

- If you close the power tailgate when all the doors are locked, the power tailgate locks automatically.

- If you replace the battery or the power tailgate fuse while the tailgate is open, the power tailgate may be disabled. The power tailgate resumes once you manually close the tailgate.

- Installing aftermarket components other than Honda genuine accessories on the power tailgate may prevent it from fully opening or closing.

- Make sure the power tailgate is fully open before you get your luggage in and out.

- Make sure the power tailgate is fully closed before you start the vehicle.

- The beeper sounds when you start driving while the power tailgate is still open, or closing.

---

*Not available on all models*
Opening/Closing the Power Tailgate

To open or close the power tailgate, press the power tailgate button for about one second. Some exterior lights flash and the beeper sounds.

If you press the button again while the power tailgate is moving, it will stop. Press the button for about one second, and the power tailgate will reverse direction.

If the power tailgate meets resistance while closing, the auto reverse feature reverses the direction. The beeper sounds three times.

The auto reverse function stops sensing when the tailgate is almost closed to make sure that it fully closes.

Do not touch the sensors located on both sides of the tailgate. The power tailgate does not close if you touch either sensor when you are trying to close the tailgate.

Be careful not to scratch the sensors with a sharp object. If scratched, they can be damaged, and the power tailgate closing feature malfunctions.

* Not available on all models

Continued
Opening and Closing the Tailgate

If you press the outer handle of the tailgate for no longer than one second, the tailgate opens automatically.

- The beeper sounds.
- If you want to open the tailgate manually, press the outer handle for more than one second.

Opening/Closing the Tailgate P. 168

If you are carrying the remote, you do not have to unlock the tailgate before opening it.

To close the tailgate, press the outer handle again while the tailgate opening.
If you press the outer handle again while the power tailgate is moving, it will stop.
Press the outer handle, and the power tailgate will reverse direction.

Using the Tailgate Outer Handle

Do not leave the remote in the cargo area before closing the tailgate.

Even if you are not carrying the remote, you can lock/unlock the tailgate while someone else with the remote is within range.

You can change the setting to open the power tailgate by the tailgate outer handle.

Customized Features P. 442
Opening and Closing the Tailgate

Opening/Closing the Power Tailgate

Continued

Controls

Press the button on the tailgate to close the power tailgate.

The beeper sounds.

If you press the button again while the power tailgate is moving, it will stop.
Press and release the button again, and the power tailgate will reverse direction.

Using the Tailgate Inner Button

Tailgate Inner Button
### Programming Tailgate Position

The extent to which the power tailgate automatically opens can be programmed.

To program:

1. Open the tailgate to the desired position.
   - If you want to reprogram the power tailgate to open all the way, manually raise the tailgate to its upper most position and follow the next step.

2. Press and hold the tailgate inner button until you hear short two beeps following one long beep.

If the tailgate is only slightly opened, the position cannot be programmed, even if you push the inner button.
Opening and Closing the Tailgate

• Auto-Closer
If you manually close the power tailgate, it latches automatically.

• Power Tailgate Fall Detection
Automatically lowers the power tailgate when there is a possibility that the fully opened power tailgate can fall down by its own weight (for example, by snow on the tailgate). The beeper sounds while the power tailgate lowers.

Auto-Closer
The auto-closer feature does not activate if you press the tailgate outer handle while the power tailgate is closing.

Do not put any force on the tailgate while the power tailgate is latching.

Keep your hands away from the tailgate when you manually close the tailgate and let it latch automatically. It is dangerous to put your hands around the tailgate as it starts to latch itself.

Power Tailgate Fall Detection
If you try to manually close the power tailgate immediately after it fully opens, the power tailgate fall detection may activate.

Once the power tailgate fall detection activates, wait until the power tailgate fully closes. Keep away from the power tailgate when it is in motion.

If the power tailgate fall detection constantly activates, consult at a dealer.
Opening/Closing the Tailgate

When all the doors are unlocked or press the tailgate unlock button on the remote transmitter, the tailgate is unlocked.

Press the outer handle of the tailgate and lift open the tailgate.

**Models with smart entry system**

If you are carrying the remote, you do not have to unlock the tailgate before opening it.

To close the tailgate, grab the inner handle, pull the tailgate down, and push it closed from outside.

Using the Tailgate Outer Handle

Do not leave the remote in the cargo area before closing the tailgate.

**Models with smart entry system**

Even if you are not carrying the remote, you can lock/unlock the tailgate while someone else with the remote is within range.
### Using the Remote Transmitter

Press the tailgate unlock button to unlock the tailgate.
Opening and Closing the Sliding Doors

Precautions for Opening/Closing the Sliding Doors

Always make sure individuals and objects are clear of the sliding doors.

Opening the sliding doors

Open the door all the way until it stops.

- If it is not fully opened, the door may close again by its own weight.

Do not leave the sliding door open while parking on a slope. The door may slide close by its weight.

When opening or closing the sliding doors, do not grab the door or place your hand on the vehicle body. Use the handle.

Do not put your foot and hand on the sliding door rail and on the rollers.

If a small child is in the vehicle, use the childproof door locks to prevent the child in the rear seat from accidentally opening the sliding doors.

Childproof Door Locks  P. 157

Do not put any items that stick out from the pocket in the door pockets. It may prevent the doors from properly opening or closing, and damage the vehicle.

WARNING

Closing a sliding door while any part of a passenger is in the door’s path can cause serious injury.

Make sure all passengers are clear of the doorway before closing a sliding door.
Opening/Closing a Sliding Door

■ From outside
To open: Pull the door handle rearward and slide the door.
To close: Pull the door handle forward and slide the door.

■ From inside
To open: Grab the inner handle and pull it rearward. Slide the door.
To close: Grab the inner handle and pull it forward. Slide the door.

Once a door is fully opened, the door position is locked.

Do not step on the lower arm of the sliding door or the cover that stores the wiring for the sliding door. The lower arm or the wiring will likely be damaged, causing the sliding door to malfunction.

If you try to open the sliding door with the window open more than 5 inch (13 cm), the door stops halfway. Close the door, close the window, and then open the door again.

While the fuel fill door is open, the beeper sounds and you cannot operate the driver side sliding door. Operate the driver side sliding door after the fuel fill door is closed.
Opening/Closing the Power Sliding Doors*

The power sliding doors can be operated by pressing the power sliding door button on the remote, pressing the power sliding door switches on the dashboard or door pillars, or using the door handle.

The power sliding doors can be operated when:
- The sliding door main switch is in the ON position.
- The power sliding door is unlocked.
- The fuel fill door is closed (on the driver side sliding door only).
- The power mode is in VEHICLE OFF or the remote engine start mode is active with use of the remote.
- The transmission is in P, the brake pedal is depressed, or the parking brake is applied (with the power mode in ON) when using the power sliding door switches on the dashboard.

* Not available on all models
Switching between manual and automatic operations

**Automatic operation:** Select the ON position of the sliding door main switch.

**Manual operation:** Select the OFF position of the sliding door main switch.

*Opening/Closing a Sliding Door* P. 171

---

Opening/Closing the Power Sliding Doors *

Do not turn the main switch off while the power sliding door is in operation on a slope. The power sliding door’s fail-safe mode activates and the beeper sounds continuously.

When the fail-safe mode is active, turn the main switch on and close the door automatically.

The following can deactivate the fail-safe mode and the sliding door may close by its own weight:

- Using the door handle
- Turning the main switch from ON to OFF

If you replace the battery or the power sliding door fuse while the door is open, the power sliding door may be disabled. The power sliding door resumes once you manually close the door.

* Not available on all models

---

* Continued
Opening and Closing the Sliding Doors

Controls

The power sliding door opens when you press the OPEN side of the \( \text{OPEN} / \text{CLOSE} \) switch, and closes when you press the CLOSE side of the \( \text{OPEN} / \text{CLOSE} \) switch.

While the power sliding door is in operation, if you press the switch that corresponds to that power sliding door, the beeper sounds and the operation stops.

To resume the power sliding door operation, press the same switch again.

Auto Reverse

Do not touch the pinch sensor located at the front edge of the power sliding door. Do not damage the sensor. The power sliding door may not operate properly.

If the power sliding door senses resistance when closing automatically, it will stop closing and reverse direction. The beeper sounds.

Before the power sliding door operation, make sure there are no people or obstacles near the door. The auto reverse function should be activated in case of emergency only. If someone is caught in the opening or closing sliding door, it can cause serious injury. Pay special attention to children.

Closing a power sliding door on someone’s hand or fingers can cause serious injury. Some parts of the door edge do not sense resistance when the door is near closing.

* Not available on all models
Opening and Closing the Sliding Doors

Opening/Closing the Power Sliding Doors

Controls

Press the power sliding door button for more than one second to operate.

While the power sliding door is in operation, if you press the button that corresponds to that power sliding door, the beeper sounds and the operation stops.

If you press the same button again, the sliding door reverses its direction.

Remote Transmitter

Driver’s Side Power Sliding Door Button

Passenger’s Side Power Sliding Door Button

Customizing when to open the sliding doors

Anytime: The power sliding door unlocks and opens at the same time. This is the default setting.

When Unlocked: The door opens when all doors are unlocked.

Customized Features P. 442

Remote Transmitter

When you press the power sliding door button to open the door, the front door on the same side unlocks.

Customizing when to open the sliding doors

In When Unlocked, trying to operate the power sliding door without unlocking the door triggers the beeper to sound.

Continued
Opening and Closing the Sliding Doors

Controls

■ Outer handles
Pull up on the outer handle towards you. The sliding door starts opening or closing.

When the power sliding door is locked, pulling the outer handle unlocks all the doors and tailgate while the remote is in your possession. The power sliding door handle you pull operates the door automatically.

While a power sliding door is in operation, if you pull its handle, the beeper sounds and the operation stops.
Pull the same handle again, the power sliding door reverses direction.

Opening/Closing the Power Sliding Doors *

The beeper will sound and the power sliding door will not open if you pull the inner or outer handle under the following conditions:
• The power mode is in ON.
• The transmission is not in P.
• The brake pedal is released.
• The parking brake is released.

If you leave the power sliding door half open on a steep hill with the engine off, the door starts to slide down toward the hill bottom after 30 minutes. While the door slides down, the beeper sounds.

* Not available on all models
Opening and Closing the Sliding Doors

Opening/Closing the Power Sliding Doors

Controls

■ Inner handles
Pull it rearward to automatically open the sliding door, and pull it forward to automatically close the door.

While a power sliding door is in operation, if you pull its handle, the beeper sounds and the operation stops.

To resume the power sliding door operation, pull the same handle in the same direction again.
Opening and Closing the Sliding Doors

Auto-Closer*

If you manually close the power sliding door, it latches automatically.

The auto-closer feature activates with or without the main switch ON.

* Not available on all models
Immobilizer System

The immobilizer system prevents a key that has not been pre-registered from starting the engine. Each key contains electronic transmitters that use electronic signals to verify the key.

Pay attention to the following when pressing the ENGINE START/STOP button:

- Do not allow objects that emit strong radio waves near the ENGINE START/STOP button.
- Make sure the key is not covered by or touching a metal object.
- Do not bring a key from another vehicle’s immobilizer system near the ENGINE START/STOP button.
- Do not put the key near magnetic items. Electronic devices, such as televisions and audio systems emit strong magnetic fields. Note that even a key chain can become magnetic.

Security System Alarm

The security system alarm activates when the tailgate, hood, or doors are forcibly opened.

The alarm does not activate if the tailgate or doors are opened with the key, remote transmitter or smart entry system*.

However, the alarm activates if a door is opened with the key, then the hood is opened before the power mode is set to ON.

- When the security system alarm activates
  The horn sounds intermittently, and some exterior lights flash.

NOTICE

Leaving the key in the vehicle can result in theft or accidental movement of the vehicle.
Always take the key with you whenever you leave the vehicle unattended.

Do not alter the system or add other devices to it. Doing so may damage the system and make your vehicle inoperable.

Canadian models only: Apply and hold the brake pedal before turning the vehicle on the first time after the battery has been disconnected.

* Not available on all models

Security System Alarm

The security alarm continues for a maximum of two minutes until the security system deactivates.
To deactivate the security system alarm
Unlock the vehicle using remote transmitter or smart entry system*, or set the power mode to ON. The system, along with the horn and flashing lights, is deactivated.

Setting the security system alarm
The security system alarm automatically sets when the following conditions have been met:
• The power mode is set to VEHICLE OFF.
• The hood is closed.
• All doors and the tailgate are locked with the key, the remote transmitter or smart entry system*.

When the security system alarm sets
The security system alarm indicator in the instrument panel blinks. When the blinking interval changes after about 15 seconds, the security system alarm is set.

To cancel the security system alarm
The security system alarm is canceled when the vehicle is unlocked using the remote transmitter, or smart entry system*, or the power mode is set to ON. The security system alarm indicator goes off at the same time.

Do not set the security system alarm when someone is in the vehicle or a window is open. The system can accidentally activate when:
• Unlocking the door with the lock tab.
• Opening the hood with the hood release.
• Opening the tailgate with the power tailgate button on the dashboard.

If the battery goes dead after you have set the security system alarm, the security alarm may activate once the battery is recharged or replaced. If this occurs, deactivate the security system alarm by unlocking a door using the remote transmitter or smart entry system*.

Do not alter the system or add other devices to it. Doing so may damage the system and make your vehicle inoperable.

* Not available on all models
Panic Mode

The panic button on the remote transmitter
If you press the panic button for approximately one second, the following will occur for about 30 seconds:
• The horn sounds.
• Some exterior lights flash.

Canceling panic mode
Press any button on the remote transmitter, or set the power mode to ON.
Opening and Closing the Windows

Opening/Closing the Power Windows

The power windows can be opened and closed when the power mode is in ON, using the switches on the doors. The driver side switches can be used to open and close all of the windows.

The power window lock button on the driver side must be switched off (not pushed in, indicator off) to open and close the windows from anywhere other than the driver’s seat.

When the power window lock button is pushed in, the indicator comes on and you can only operate the driver’s window. Turn the power window lock button on if a child is in the vehicle.

- Automatic operation
  - To open: Push the switch down firmly.
  - To close: Pull the switch up firmly.

  The window opens or closes completely. To stop the window at any time, push or pull the switch briefly.

- Manual operation
  - To open: Push the switch down lightly, and hold it until the desired position is reached.
  - To close: Pull the switch up lightly, and hold it until the desired position is reached.

Opening/Closing Windows with Auto-Open/Close Function

- Opening/Closing the Power Windows

  The power windows can be operated for up to 10 minutes after you set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF. Opening either front door cancels this function.

  Auto Reverse
  - If a power window senses resistance when closing automatically, it will stop closing and reverse direction.
  - The driver’s window auto reverse function is disabled when you continuously pull up the switch.

  The auto reverse function stops sensing when the window is almost closed to ensure that it fully closes.

WARNING

Closing a power window on someone’s hands or fingers can cause serious injury.

Make sure your passengers are away from the windows before closing them.

* Not available on all models
Opening and Closing the Windows

Opening/Closing the Power Windows

To open:
Push the switch down.

To close:
Pull the switch up.

Release the switch when the window reaches the desired position.

Opening/Closing Windows without Auto-Open/Close Function*

To open: Push the switch down.
To close: Pull the switch up.

Release the switch when the window reaches the desired position.

Opening the Windows and Moonroof* with the Remote

To open: Press the unlock button, and then within 10 seconds, press it again and hold it. If the windows and moonroof* stop midway, repeat the procedure.

* Not available on all models

Continued
Opening/Closing the Power Windows

To open:
Unlock the driver’s door with the key. Within 10 seconds of returning the key to the central position, turn the key in the unlock direction and hold it there.

To close:
Lock the driver’s door with the key. Within 10 seconds of returning the key to the central position, turn the key in the lock direction and hold it there.

Release the key to stop the windows and moonroof* at the desired position. If you want further adjustment, repeat the same operation.

* Not available on all models
You can only operate the moonroof when the power mode is in ON. Use the switch in the front of the ceiling to open and close the moonroof.

### Automatic operation
- **To open:** Pull the switch back firmly.
- **To close:** Push the switch forward firmly.

The moonroof will automatically open or close all the way. To stop the moonroof midway, touch the switch briefly.

### Manual operation
- **To open:** Pull the switch back lightly, and hold it until the desired position is reached.
- **To close:** Push the switch forward lightly, and hold it until the desired position is reached.

### Tilting the moonroof up
- **To tilt:** Push on the center of the moonroof switch.
- **To close:** Push the switch forward firmly, then release.

---

*Not available on all models*
Operating the Switches Around the Steering Wheel

ENGINE START/STOP Button

### Changing the Power Mode

**VEHICLE OFF (LOCK)**
The button is off.
The steering wheel is locked*1.
The power to all electrical components is turned off.

**ACCESSORY**
The button blinks (in red).
Operate the audio system and other accessories in this position.

**ON**
The button blinks (in red).
All electrical components can be used.

Without pressing the brake pedal
- Press the button without the gear position in **P**.
- Press the button.
- Change to **P** then press the button.
- U.S. models

*1: Canadian models

---

**ENGINIE START/STOP Button Operating Range**

You can start the engine when the remote is inside the vehicle.
The engine may also run if the remote is close to the door or window, even if it is outside the vehicle.

**ON mode:**
The ENGINE START/STOP button is red when the engine is running.

If the battery of the remote is getting low, the engine may not start when you press the ENGINE START/STOP button. If the engine does not start, refer to the following link.

[If the Remote Battery is Weak](P. 709)
Operating the Switches Around the Steering Wheel

187

ENGINE START/STOP Button

Controls

Continued

Automatic Power Off

If you leave the vehicle for 30 to 60 minutes with the transmission in (P) and the power mode in ACCESSORY, the vehicle automatically goes into the mode similar to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK) to avoid draining the battery.

Canadian models

When in this mode:
The steering wheel does not lock.
You cannot lock or unlock doors with the remote transmitter or the smart entry system.

Press the ENGINE START/STOP button to switch the mode to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK).

ENGINE START/STOP Button

Canadian models

If the power mode does not change from VEHICLE OFF to ACCESSORY, press the ENGINE START/STOP button while moving the steering wheel left and right. The steering wheel will unlock, allowing the mode to change.

Do not leave the power mode in ACCESSORY or ON when you get out.
### Power Mode Reminder

If you open the driver’s door when the power mode is set to ACCESSORY, a warning beep sounds.

### Remote Reminder

Warning buzzers may sound from inside and/or outside the vehicle to remind you that the remote is out of the vehicle. If the buzzer continues even after the remote is put back inside, place it to be within its operational range.

#### When the power mode is in ON

If the remote is taken out of the vehicle, and the driver’s door is closed, warning buzzers sound from both inside and outside the vehicle. A warning message on the driver information interface notifies the driver inside that the remote is outside of the vehicle.

#### When the power mode is in ACCESSORY

If the remote is taken out of the vehicle, and all the doors are closed, a warning buzzer sounds from outside the vehicle.

Remote Reminder

When the remote is within the system’s operational range, and the driver’s door is closed, the warning function cancels.

If the remote is taken out of the vehicle after the engine has been started, you can no longer change the ENGINE START/STOP button mode or restart the engine. Always make sure if the remote is in your vehicle when you operate the ENGINE START/STOP button.

Removing the remote from the vehicle through a window does not activate the warning buzzer.

Do not put the remote on the dashboard or in the glove box. It may cause the warning buzzer to activate. Under some other conditions that can prevent the vehicle from locating the remote, the warning buzzer may also activate even if the remote is within the system’s operational range.
### Turn Signals

The turn signals can be used when the power mode is in ON.

- **One-touch turn signal**
  When you lightly push up or down and release the turn signal lever, the exterior turn signals and turn signal indicator blink three times.

  The feature can be used when signaling for a lane change.

### Light Switches

#### Manual Operation

- **High beams**
  Push the lever forward until you hear a click.
- **Low beams**
  When in high beams, pull the lever back to return to low beams.
- **Flashing the high beams**
  Pull the lever back, and release it.

- **Lights On Indicator** P. 93

  Do not leave the lights on when the engine is off because it will cause the battery to discharge.

  If you sense that the level of the headlights is abnormal, have the vehicle inspected by a dealer.
Operating the Switches Around the Steering Wheel

Light Switches

Automatic Operation (automatic lighting control)*

Automatic lighting control can be used when the power mode is in ON.

When you turn the light switch to AUTO, the headlights and other exterior lights will switch on and off automatically depending on the ambient brightness.

► You can change the auto light sensitivity setting.

Customized Features P. 442

Automatic Operation (automatic lighting control) *

We recommend that you turn on the lights manually when driving at night, in a dense fog, or in dark areas such as long tunnels or parking facilities.

The light sensor is in the location shown below. Do not cover this light sensor with anything; otherwise, the automatic lighting system may not work properly.

* Not available on all models
Headlight Integration with Wiper*

The headlights automatically come on when the wipers are used several times within a certain number of intervals with the headlight switch in AUTO. The headlights automatically go off a few minutes later if the wipers are stopped.

Automatic Lighting Off Feature

The headlights, all other exterior lights, and the instrument panel lights turn off 15 seconds after you set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF, take the remote with you, and close the driver’s door.

You can change the headlight auto off timer setting.

Adjust the auto light sensitivity as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting</th>
<th>The exterior lights come on when the ambient light is at</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>MAX</td>
<td>Bright</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HIGH</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MID</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LOW</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MIN</td>
<td>Dark</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Headlight Integration with Wiper*

This feature activates when AUTO mode is selected and the headlights are off. The instrument panel brightness does not change when the headlights come on.

At dark ambient light levels, the automatic lighting control feature turns on the headlights, regardless of the number of wiper sweeps.

* Not available on all models
Fog Lights*

When the low beam headlights are on, turn the fog light switch on to use the fog lights.

Fog Light Switch

*Fog Lights*

When the fog lights are on, the indicator in the instrument panel will be on. They go off when the headlights turn off, or when the daytime running lights are on.

Fog Light Indicator* P. 93

*Not available on all models
Daytime Running Lights

When the conditions listed below are met, the daytime running lights come on:
- The power mode is in ON.
- The headlight switch is off.
- The parking brake is released.

The lights remain on even if you set the parking brake. Setting the power mode to VEHICLE OFF will turn off the daytime running lights.

The daytime running lights go off once the headlight switch is turned on, or when the headlight switch is in AUTO * and it is getting dark outside.

Models without fog lights
The high beam headlights return to the original brightness once the headlight switch is turned on.

* Not available on all models
**Auto High-Beam**

Using a camera mounted to the inside of the windshield, this system detects light sources ahead of the vehicle. Depending on the light source, the system automatically switches the headlights to high beam for optimal visibility at night.

### The system operates when:
- The headlight switch is in **AUTO**.
- The lever is in the low beam position.
- The low beams are on and the system recognizes that you are driving at night.
- The vehicle speed is above 45 mph (72 km/h).

### How it works

When the camera detects lights coming from a preceding or oncoming vehicle, the headlights remain in low beam.

When the camera detects no lights coming from a preceding or oncoming vehicle, the headlights change to high beam.

The view angle or distance that the camera can detect lights ahead differs depending on conditions, such as the brightness of the lights and the weather.

The auto high-beam determines when to change the headlight beams by responding to the brightness of the lights ahead of your vehicle. In the following cases, the system may not respond to the lights properly:

- The brightness of the lights from the preceding or oncoming vehicle is intense or poor.
- Visibility is poor due to the weather (rain, snow, fog, windshield frost, etc.).
- Other light sources, such as street lights and electric billboards are illuminating the road ahead.
- The brightness level of the road ahead constantly changes.
- The road is bumpy or with many curves.
- A vehicle cuts in front of you, or a vehicle in front of you is not in the preceding or oncoming direction.
- Your vehicle is tilted with a heavy load in the rear.

If you find the timing of beam changes inconvenient for driving, change the headlight beams manually.

If you do not want the system to be activated at any time when the headlight switch is in **AUTO**, consult a dealer or disable the system.

**Disabling or Re-enabling the System** P. 196

*Not available on all models*
Operating the Switches Around the Steering Wheel

Auto High-Beam Controls

To activate the system, turn the headlight switch to AUTO and then set the headlights to low beam. The auto high-beam indicator will come on.

Light Switches P. 189

The high beams remain on unless:
• You have been driving below 45 mph (72 km/h) for an extended amount of time.
• The speed of the vehicle drops below 30 mph (48 km/h).
• The windshield wipers have been running at a high speed for more than a few seconds.
• You enter a well lit location.

The high beams come back on once the condition that caused them to turn off no longer exists.

If needed, you can temporarily turn the high beams off manually. Turn on the high beams by pushing the lever forward until you hear a click, or flash the high beams once by pulling the lever toward you. To turn the high beams back on, repeat one of the procedures.

Operating the System

For the auto high-beam to work properly:
• Do not place an object that reflects light on the dashboard.
• Keep the windshield around the camera clean. When cleaning the windshield, be careful not to apply windshield cleanser to the camera lens.
• Do not attach an object, sticker or film to the area around the camera.
• Do not touch the camera lens.

If the camera receives a strong impact, or repairing of the area near the camera is required, consult a dealer.

If the Some Driver Assist Systems Cannot Operate: Camera Temperature Too High message appears:
• Use the climate control system to cool down the interior and, if necessary, also use defroster mode with the airflow directed toward the camera.
• Start driving the vehicle to lower the windshield temperature, which cools down the area around the camera.

If the Some Driver Assist Systems Cannot Operate: Clean Front Windshield message appears:
• Park your vehicle in a safe place, and clean the windshield. If the message does not disappear after you have cleaned the windshield and driven for a while, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.
Disabling or Re-enabling the System

Disable or re-enable the system when the vehicle is parked and the power mode is in ON and the light switch is in the AUTO position. **Disabling the system:** Pull the light switch lever toward you and hold it for at least 40 seconds. The auto high-beam indicator in the meter will blink twice. **Re-enabling the system:** Pull the light switch lever toward you and hold it for at least 30 seconds. The auto high-beam indicator in the meter will blink once. **Enabling high sensitivity:** Pull the light switch lever toward you and hold it for 2 minutes. The auto high-beam indicator in the meter will blink three times. When the power mode is set to VEHICLE OFF, sensitivity is returned to normal.
Wipers and Washers

**Windshield Wiper/Washer**

The windshield wipers and washers can be used when the power mode is in **ON**.

- **MIST**
  The wipers run at high speed until you release the lever.

- **Wiper switch (OFF, INT\(^1\)/AUTO\(^2\), LO, HI)**
  Move the lever up or down to change the wiper settings.

- **Adjusting wiper operation\(^*\)**
  Turn the adjustment ring to adjust wiper operation.
  - Lower speed, fewer sweeps
  - Higher speed, more sweeps

- **Washer**
  Sprays while you pull the lever toward you. When you release the lever for more than one second, the spray stops, the wipers sweep two or three more times to clear the windshield, then stop.

---

*1: Models with manual intermittent operation
*2: Models with automatic intermittent operation

---

**NOTICE**
- Do not use the wipers when the windshield is dry. The windshield will get scratched, or the rubber blades will get damaged.

- In cold weather, the blades may freeze to the windshield. Operating the wipers in this condition may damage the wipers. Use the defroster or heated windshield\(^*\) to warm the windshield, then turn the wipers on.

- Models with intermittent time adjustment ring
  - If the vehicle speeds up while the wipers are operating intermittently, the length of the wipe interval shortens.
  - When the vehicle speeds up, the wiper operation’s shortest delay setting (\(^3\)) and the LO setting become the same.

  Turn the washers off if no washer fluid comes out. The pump may get damaged.

---

\(^*\): Not available on all models

Continued
When you push the lever down to AUTO, the windshield wipers sweep once, and go into the automatic mode.

The wipers operate intermittently, at low speed, or at high speed and stops in accordance with the amount of rainfall the rainfall sensor detects.

**AUTO sensitivity adjustment**

When the wiper function is set to AUTO, you can adjust the sensitivity of the rainfall sensor (using the adjustment ring) so that wipers will operate in accordance with your preference.

**Sensor sensitivity**

- Low Sensitivity
- High Sensitivity

If the wiper stops operating due to any obstacle such as the build-up of snow, park the vehicle in a safe place. Rotate the wiper switch to OFF, and set the power mode to ACCESSORY or VEHICLE OFF, then remove the obstacle.

The wiper motor may stop motor operation temporarily to prevent an overload. Wiper operation will return to normal within a few minutes, once the circuit has returned to normal.

**Automatic Intermittent Wipers**

The rainfall sensor is in the location shown below.

**AUTO** should always be turned OFF before the following situation in order to prevent severe damage to the wiper system:

- Cleaning the windshield
- Driving through a car wash
- No rain present

*Not available on all models*
Operating the Switches Around the Steering Wheel

Wipers and Washers

■ Rear Wiper/Washer

The rear wiper and washer can be used when the power mode is in ON.

■ Wiper switch (OFF, INT, ON)
Change the wiper switch setting according to the amount of rain.

■ Washer ( )
Sprays while you rotate the switch to this position.
Hold it to activate the wiper and to spray the washer. Once released, it stops operating after a few more sweeps.

■ Operating in reverse
When you shift the transmission to R with the windshield wiper activated, the rear wiper operates automatically as follows even if its switch is off.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Front Wiper Position</th>
<th>Rear Wiper Operation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>INT (Intermittent)</td>
<td>Intermittent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LO (Low speed wipe)</td>
<td>Continuous</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HI (High speed wipe)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Operating the Switches Around the Steering Wheel

Brightness Control

When the power mode is in ON, you can use the brightness control knob to adjust instrument panel brightness.

**Brighten:** Turn the knob to the right.

**Dim:** Turn the knob to the left.

You will hear a beeper when the brightness reaches minimum or maximum. Several seconds after you have adjusted the brightness, you will be returned to the previous screen.

**Brightness level indicator**
The brightness level is shown on the driver information interface while you are adjusting it.

Instrument panel brightness varies, depending on whether the exterior lights are on or off. The instrument panel dims to reduce glare when they are on.

To cancel the reduced instrument panel brightness when the exterior lights are on, turn the knob to the right until the brightness display is up to max, the beeper sounds.

The brightness can be set differently for when the exterior lights are on, and when they are off.
Rear Defogger/Heated Door Mirror* Button

Press the rear defogger and heated door mirror button to defog the rear window and mirrors when the power mode is in ON.

The rear defogger and heated door mirrors automatically switch off after 10-30 minutes depending on the outside temperature.

However, if the outside temperature is 32°F (0°C) or below, they do not automatically switch off.

NOTICE
When cleaning the inside of the rear window, be careful not to damage the heating wires. It is critical to wipe the window from side to side along the defogger heating wires.

This system consumes a lot of power, so turn it off when the window has been defogged. Also, do not use the system for a long time while the engine is idling. This may weaken the battery, making it difficult to start the engine.

When the outside temperature is below 41°F (5°C), the heated door mirror may activate automatically for 10 minutes when you set the power mode to ON.

* Not available on all models
Heated Windshield Button

Press the heated windshield button to deice the windshield when the power mode is in ON.

Canadian models

Heated Windshield Button

This system consumes a lot of power, so turn it off when the window has been deiced. Also, do not use the system for a long period when the engine is idling. This may weaken the battery, making it difficult to start the engine.

When the outside temperate is below 39°F (4°C), the heated windshield may automatically activate. The system deactivates itself once the outside temperate reaches 43°F (6°C).
Driving Position Memory System*

You can store two driver’s seat positions (except for power lumbar) and outside mirror positions with the driving position memory system. When you unlock and open the driver’s door with a remote, the seat and outside mirrors adjust automatically to one of the two preset positions.

When you enter the vehicle, the driver information interface briefly shows you which remote transmitter you used to unlock the vehicle.

- **DRIVER 1** transmitter is linked to memory button 1.
- **DRIVER 2** transmitter is linked to memory button 2.

The driver’s seat moves rearward depending on the set seating position once you
- Stop the vehicle.
- Put the transmission in [P].
- Set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF.
- Then open the driver’s door.

Once the power mode is in the ACCESSORY position, the driver’s seat moves to the **DRIVER 1** or 2 preset position.

---

* Not available on all models

Continued
### Operating the Switches Around the Steering Wheel

#### Driving Position Memory System

1. Set the power mode to ON. Adjust the driver’s seat and the door mirrors to the desired position.
2. Press the **SET** button.
   - You will hear the beeper, and the memory button indicator light will blink.
3. Press and hold memory button 1 or 2 within five seconds of pressing the **SET** button.
   - Once the seat and the outside mirrors position has been memorized, the indicator light on the button you pressed stays on.

### Storing a Position in Memory

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Memory Button 1</th>
<th>Memory Button 2</th>
<th>SET Button</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

1. After you press the **SET** button, the storing operation will be canceled when:
   - You do not press the memory button within five seconds.
   - You readjust the seat and door mirrors position before the double-beep.
   - You set the power mode to any position except ON.

### Recalling the Stored Position

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Memory Button 1</th>
<th>Memory Button 2</th>
<th>SET Button</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

1. Change to **P**.
2. Apply the parking brake.
3. Press a memory button 1 or 2.
   - You will hear the beeper, and the indicator light will blink.

The seat and the door mirrors will automatically move to the memorized position. When it has finished moving, you will hear the beeper, and the indicator light stays on.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Memory Button 1</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

### Storing a Position in Memory

1. Press the **SET** button.
2. You will hear the beeper, and the memory button indicator light will blink.
3. Press and hold memory button 1 or 2 within five seconds of pressing the **SET** button.
   - Once the seat and the outside mirrors position has been memorized, the indicator light on the button you pressed stays on.

### Recalling the Stored Position

1. Press the **SET** button or memory button 1 or 2.
2. Adjust the seat position or door mirrors.
3. Put the transmission into a position other than **P**.
Adjusting the Steering Wheel

The steering wheel height and distance from your body can be adjusted so that you can comfortably grip the steering wheel in an appropriate driving posture.

1. Push the steering wheel adjustment lever down.
   - The steering wheel adjustment lever is under the steering column.
2. Move the steering wheel up or down, and in or out.
   - Make sure you can see the instrument panel gauges and indicators.
3. Pull the steering wheel adjustment lever up to lock the steering wheel in position.
   - After adjusting the position, make sure you have securely locked the steering wheel in place by trying to move it up, down, in, and out.

WARNING

Adjusting the steering wheel position while driving may cause you to lose control of the vehicle and be seriously injured in a crash.

Adjust the steering wheel only when the vehicle is stopped.
Adjusting the Mirrors

Interior Rearview Mirror

Adjust the angle of the rearview mirror when you are sitting in the correct driving position.

■ Rearview Mirror with Day and Night Positions*

Flip the tab to switch the position. The night position will help to reduce the glare from headlights behind you when driving after dark.

■ Automatic Dimming Rearview Mirror*

When you are driving after dark, the automatic dimming rearview mirror reduces the glare from headlights behind you. Press the auto button to turn this function on and off. When activated, the auto indicator comes on.

Automatic Dimming Rearview Mirror*

The auto dimming function cancels when the transmission is in [R].

Adjusting the Mirrors

Keep the inside and outside mirrors clean and adjusted for best visibility.

Adjust the mirrors before you start driving.

Front Seats P. 209

* Not available on all models
Power Door Mirrors

You can adjust the door mirrors when the power mode is in ON.

■ Mirror position adjustment
L/R selector switch: Select the left or right mirror. After adjusting the mirror, return the switch to the center position.

Mirror position adjustment switch: Press the switch left, right, up, or down to move the mirror.

■ Folding door mirrors*
Press the folding button to fold in and out the door mirrors.

* Not available on all models
Adjusting the Mirrors

Power Door Mirrors

Controls

If activated, either side door mirror automatically tilts downward when you put the transmission into (R); this improves close-in visibility on the selected side of the vehicle when backing up. The mirror automatically returns to its original position when you take the transmission out of (R).

To activate this feature, set the power mode to ON and slide the selector switch to the left or right side.

Reverse Tilt Door Mirror*

* Not available on all models
Adjusting the Seats

Front Seats

Adjust the driver’s seat as far back as possible while allowing you to maintain full control of the vehicle. You should be able to sit upright, well back in the seat and be able to adequately press the pedals without leaning forward, and grip the steering wheel comfortably. The passenger’s seat should be adjusted in a similar manner, so that it is as far back from the front airbag in the dashboard as possible.

Adjusting the Seat Positions

- Horizontal Position Adjustment
- Height Adjustment (Driver’s seat only)
- Seat-back Angle Adjustment

WARNING
Sitting too close to a front airbag can result in serious injury or death if the front airbags inflate.
Always sit as far back from the front airbags as possible while maintaining control of the vehicle.

The National Highway Traffic Safety Administration and Transport Canada recommend that drivers allow at least 10 inches (25 cm) between the center of the steering wheel and the chest.
Always make seat adjustments before driving.

Continued
Adjusting the Seats

Front Seats

Controls

■ Lumbar Support Adjustment Switch*

Press the top: To move the lumbar support up.
Press the bottom: To move the lumbar support down.
Press the front: To increase the entire lumbar support.
Press the rear: To decrease the entire lumbar support.

* Not available on all models
Adjusting the Seats

**Front Seats Controls**

Adjust the driver's seat-back to a comfortable, upright position, leaving ample space between your chest and the airbag cover in the center of the steering wheel.

The front seat passenger should also adjust their seat-back to a comfortable, upright position.

Reclining a seat-back so that the shoulder part of the belt no longer rests against the occupant's chest reduces the protective capability of the belt. It also increases the chance of sliding under the belt in a crash and being seriously injured. The farther a seat-back is reclined, the greater the risk of injury.

**WARNING**

Reclining the seat-back too far can result in serious injury or death in a crash.

Adjust the seat-back to an upright position, and sit well back in the seat.

Do not put a cushion, or other object, between the seat-back and your back.

Doing so may interfere with proper seat belt or airbag operation.

If you cannot get far enough away from the steering wheel and still reach the controls, we recommend that you investigate whether some type of adaptive equipment may help.
Head Restraints

Your vehicle is equipped with head restraints in all seating positions.

■ Adjusting the Front and Second Row Outer and Third Row Outer Head Restraints Positions

Head restraints are most effective for protection against whiplash and other rear-impact crash injuries when the center of the back of the occupant’s head rests against the center of the restraint. The tops of the occupant’s ears should be level with the center height of the restraint.

Position head in the center of the head restraint.

WARNING

Improperly positioning head restraints reduces their effectiveness and increases the likelihood of serious injury in a crash.

Make sure head restraints are in place and positioned properly before driving.

In order for the head restraint system to work properly:
- Do not hang any items on the head restraints, or from the restraint legs.
- Do not place any object between an occupant and the seat-back.
- Install each restraint in its proper location.
To raise the head restraint: Pull it upward.
To lower the head restraint: Push it down while pressing the release button.
Adjusting the Seats • Head Restraints

Changing the Second Row*/Third Row Center Seat Head Restraint Positions

A passenger sitting in the second row/third row center seating position should adjust the height of their head restraint to an appropriate position before the vehicle begins moving.

To raise the head restraint:
Pull it upward.

To lower the head restraint:
Push it down while pressing the release button.

Removing and Reinstalling the Head Restraints

Head restraints can be removed for cleaning or repair.

To remove a head restraint:
Pull the restraint up as far as it will go. Then push the release button, and pull the restraint up and out.

To reinstall a head restraint:
Insert the legs back in place, then adjust the head restraint to an appropriate height while pressing the release button. Pull up on the restraint to make sure it is locked in position.

* Not available on all models
Maintain a Proper Sitting Position

After all occupants have adjusted their seats and head restraints, and put on their seat belts, it is very important that they continue to sit upright, well back in their seats, with their feet on the floor, until the vehicle is safely parked and the engine is off.

Sitting improperly can increase the chance of injury during a crash. For example, if an occupant slouches, lies down, turns sideways, sits forward, leans forward or sideways, or puts one or both feet up, the chance of injury during a crash is greatly increased.

In addition, an occupant who is out of position in the front seat can be seriously or fatally injured in a crash by striking interior parts of the vehicle or being struck by an inflating front airbag.

**WARNING**

Sitting improperly or out of position can result in serious injury or death in a crash.

Always sit upright, well back in the seat, with your feet on the floor.
Adjusting the Seats

Second Row Seats

Adjusting the Seat Positions

**WARNING**

An unsecured seat or seat-back can move out of position or collapse without warning if there is sudden acceleration or stop or in a crash.

A seat or seat-back that suddenly moves or collapses can result in severe injury or death.

Always make sure all seats and seat-backs are securely locked into position before driving.

Seat-back Angle Adjustment
Pull up the strap to change the angle.

Horizontal Position Adjustment
Pull up the bar to move the seat, then release the bar.

Seat-back Angle Adjustment
Pull up the lever to change the angle.

* Not available on all models
Third Row Seat Access

1. Pulling forward on the walk-in lever or pulling the release strap tilts the second row outer seat’s seat-back forward.
   - The whole seat slides forward.
2. When re-positioning the seat, push it firmly to the rear to ensure the horizontal adjusters and the seat-back lock completely into place.
Adjusting the Seats

## Removing the Second Row Center Seat*

Your vehicle’s multi-functional second row center seat is removable.

1. Store the center seat belt first. Insert a key into the slot on the side of the anchor buckle.
2. Retract the seat belt into the holder on the ceiling.
3. Fold the seat-back down.
4. Pull the lock release strap under the seat cushion, and lift the rear of the seat. To lift the seat, grab the handle under the rear side of the seat cushion.
5. Pull the seat-back slightly, then pivot it upward. This unhooks the front of the seat from the floor.

---

* Not available on all models

---

* Removing the Second Row Center Seat*

Do not remove the seat while driving.

The multi-functional center seat can be used as the beverage holder when folded down.

Beverage Holders P. 231

To reinstall the seat, hook the front of the seat to the floor first. After confirming both the front hooks are fully inserted into the front strikers, begin to lower the seat, then allow it to drop and lock to the rear floor strikers. Raise the seat-back to an upright position, then rock the seat back and forth to confirm both the rear latches are securely locked into position.
Adjusting the Seats

Second Row Seats

Controls

Your vehicle's second row outer seats are removable.

1. Remove the head restraint.
2. Move the seat to its rearmost position.
3. Pull the seat-back angle adjustment lever, then fold the seat-back down.
4. Pull the lock release lever, tilt the seat-back forward and lift the rear of the seat.
   - To lift the seat, grab the handle under the rear side of the seat.
5. Pivot the rear of the seat upward to unhook the front of the seat from the floor.

Do not remove the seat while driving.

Reinstalling a Second Row Outer Seat

With the seat-back folded forward, insert the front seat hooks into the front floor strikers.

After confirming both front hooks are fully inserted into the front strikers, begin to lower the seat, then allow it to drop and lock to the rear floor strikers.

Install the head restraints, then raise the seat-back to an upright position, then rock the seat back and forth to confirm both the inner and outer latches are securely locked into position.
Adjusting the Seats

Second Row Seats

---

**Sliding the Second Row Magic Slide™ Seats**

Your vehicle’s second row outer seats are slidable.

1. Remove the second row center seat.
2. Pull up the handle at the side of the second row outer seat, then slide the seat.

---

* Sliding the Second Row Magic Slide™ Seats

When the second row outer seats are in slide (center) position, passengers have easier access to the third row seats.

---

* Not available on all models
Third Row Seats

■ Adjusting the Seat Positions

Once a seat is adjusted correctly, rock it back and forth to make sure it is locked in position.

Seat-back Angle Adjustment
Pull up the strap to change the angle.
■ Tucking away the One-Motion Third Row Stowing Magic Seat®

1. Store the center seat belt first. Insert a key into the slot on the side of the anchor buckle.
2. Retract the seat belt into the holder on the ceiling.
   - Seat Belt with Detachable Anchor P. 43
3. Lower the head restraints to their lowest position.
4. The right and left halves can be tucked away separately. Pull either strap to release the front leg lock of the third row seat.
5. Continue pulling the strap to tuck the seat and strap away into the cargo area.

When you tuck away one side of the third row seats and use the non-recessed part of the cargo area, make sure to secure the cargo. Loose items can fly forward and cause injury if you have to brake hard.
When returning the seat to the upright position:

1. Grab the handle from outside. Pull up the folded seat, begin to pivot it forward, then allow it to drop into position.

2. The front leg latches when it contacts the floor striker.

   Pull the strap to put the seat-back(s) upright. Rock the seat back and forth to confirm the seat is securely locked in position. There should be no movement.

When returning the seat to the upright position:

Make sure the seat is securely latched before driving by rocking the seat back and forth.
Adjusting the Seats

Armrest

■ Using the Front and Second Row Outer* Seat Armrest

Pull down the armrest.

* Not available on all models

■ Using the Second Row Seat Armrest*

Pull down the center backrest to use as an armrest.

Front seat with adjustable armrest
Pull the armrest all the way down, then pull it up to the desired angle.
Interior Lights/Interior Convenience Items

Interior Lights

■ Interior Light Switches

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Front</th>
<th>Cargo Area</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>On</td>
<td>Off</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

■ ON
The interior lights come on regardless of whether the doors or the tailgate are open or closed.

■ Door activated
The interior lights come on in the following situations:
- When any of the doors or the tailgate are opened.
- You unlock the driver’s door.
- When the power mode is set to VEHICLE OFF.

Cargo area:
When the tailgate is open.

■ OFF
The interior lights remain off regardless of whether the doors or the tailgate are open or closed.

Interior Light Switches
In the door activated position, the interior lights fade out and go off about 30 seconds after the doors are closed. The lights go off after 30 seconds in the following situations:
- When you unlock the driver’s door but do not open it.
- When you set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF but do not open a door.
You can change the interior light dimming time.

Vehicle Customization P. 133
Customized Features P. 442

The interior lights go off immediately in the following situations:
- When you lock the driver’s door.
- When you set the power mode to ON.
- When you close the driver’s door in ACCESSORY mode.

If you leave any of the doors open in VEHICLE OFF mode, the interior lights go off after about 15 minutes.

If you leave the tailgate open in VEHICLE OFF mode, the cargo area light goes off after about 30 minutes.
**Map Lights**

**Front**
The map lights can be turned on and off by pressing the lenses.

**Second and third row**
The map lights can be turned on and off by pressing the lenses when the front interior light switch is in the door activated position.

When the front interior light switch is in the door activated position and any door is open, the map light will not go off when you press the lens.
Interior Convenience Items

- **Glove Box**

Pull the handle to open the glove box. You can lock the glove box with the built-in key.

**WARNING**

An open glove box can cause serious injury to your passenger in a crash, even if the passenger is wearing the seat belt.

Always keep the glove box closed while driving.
### Console Box*

To open the console box, pull the handle and slide the box forward.

You can create more storage space by removing the divider.

---

* Not available on all models
To open the console compartment, press the knob to unlock the lid, and then slide it rearward.

* Not available on all models
**Center Pocket**

Pull the handle to open the center pocket.

*Not available on all models*
Beverage Holders

- Center console beverage holders
- Front door beverage holders
- Second row seat beverage holders*

* Not available on all models

NOTICE
Spilled liquids can damage the upholstery, carpeting, and electrical components in the interior.

Be careful when you are using the beverage holders. Hot liquid can scald you.

Using the Second Row Seat Armrest*
P. 224

Continued
Interior Convenience Items

- Rear door beverage holders
- Third row seat beverage holders
Interior Lights/Interior Convenience Items

Accessory Power Sockets

The accessory power sockets can be used when the power mode is in ACCESSORY or ON.

- Accessory power socket (console panel)
  Open the cover to use it.

Models without center pocket

Models with center pocket

Notice

Do not insert an automotive type cigarette lighter element: The power socket can overheat.

The accessory power socket is designed to supply power for 12 volt DC accessories that are rated 180 watts (15 amps) or less.

To prevent battery drain, use the power socket only when the engine is running.

Continued
■ Accessory power socket (third row seat)*
Open the cover to use it.

■ Accessory power socket (cargo area)
Open the cover to use it.

* Not available on all models
**AC Power Outlet**

The AC power outlet can be used when the engine is running. Open the cover to use it. Plug in the appliance slightly, turn it 90° clockwise, then push it all the way.

*AC Power Outlet*

**NOTICE**

Do not use the AC power outlet for electric appliances that require high initial peak wattage, such as cathode-ray tube type televisions, refrigerators, electric pumps, etc. It is not suitable for devices that process precise data, such as medical equipment, and that require an extremely stable power supply, such as microcomputer-controlled electric blankets, touch sensor lamps, etc.

The AC power outlet is designed to supply power for up to 115 volt appliances that are rated 150 watts or less.

Continued use of any electric appliance/device exceeding these ratings may result in damage to the appliance/device.

*Not available on all models*
Wireless Charger*

To use the wireless charger, the power mode must be in ACCESSORY or ON. Charge a compatible device on the area indicated by the ▲ and ▼ marks as follows:

1. Place the device you want to charge on the charging area.
   - The system will automatically start charging the device, and the green indicator light will come on.
   - Make sure that the device is compatible with the system and placed with the chargeable side in the center of the charging area.
2. When charging is completed, the green indicator light will go off.
   - If the device is not located on the charge area correctly, the green indicator light will blink.

**CAUTION**

Metal objects between the charge pad and the device to be charged will get hot and can burn you.
- Always remove foreign objects from the charge pad before charging the device.
- Be sure the surface is clear of dust and other debris before charging.
- Do not spill liquids (i.e. water, drinks, etc.) on the charger and the device.
- Do not use oil, grease, alcohol, benzine or thinner for cleaning the charge pad.
- Do not cover the system with towels, clothing, or other objects while charging etc.
- Avoid spraying aerosols which may come in contact with the charge pad surface.

Using the audio/information screen, you can disable the wireless charger function.

**Customized Features** P. 442

This system consumes a lot of power. Do not use the system for a long time when the engine is not running. This may weaken the battery, making it difficult to start the engine.

When using the wireless charger, check the user’s manual that came with the compatible device you want to charge.

* Not available on all models

Controls

■ Wireless Charger*

Using the audio/information screen, you can disable the wireless charger function.

**Customized Features** P. 442

This system consumes a lot of power. Do not use the system for a long time when the engine is not running. This may weaken the battery, making it difficult to start the engine.

When using the wireless charger, check the user’s manual that came with the compatible device you want to charge.

* Not available on all models
When charging does not start
Perform one of the solutions in the following table.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Indicator</th>
<th>Cause</th>
<th>Solution</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Slow Blink</td>
<td>There is an obstacle(s) between the charging area and the device.</td>
<td>Remove the obstacle(s).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The device is not within the center of the charging area where $\mathbb{Q}$ and $\mathbb{P}$ are located.</td>
<td>Move the device to the center of the charging area where $\mathbb{Q}$ and $\mathbb{P}$ are located.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fast Blink</td>
<td>The wireless charger is faulty.</td>
<td>Turn the vehicle off and back on. If the indicator still blinks, contact a dealer.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Not available on all models

Wireless Charger*

**NOTICE**
Do not place any magnetic recording media or precision machines within the charging area while charging.

The data on your cards such as credit cards can be lost because of the magnetic effect. Also precision machines such as watches can go wrong.

“$\mathbb{Q}$” and $\mathbb{P}$ marks are the registered trademarks owned by Wireless Power Consortium (WPC).

$\mathbb{Q}$ mark is the registered trademark owned by Power Matters Alliance (PMA).

In the following cases, charging may stop or not start:
- The device is already fully charged.
- The temperature of the device is extremely high while charging.
- You are at a place that emits strong electromagnetic waves or noises, such as a TV station, electric power plant, or gas station.

A device may not charge if the size or shape of its chargeable side is not appropriate for use with the charging area.

Not all devices are compatible with the system.

During the charging phase, it is normal for the charging area and device to heat up.

Charging may be briefly interrupted when:
- All the doors and the tailgate are closed - to avoid interference with the proper functioning of the smart entry system.
- The position of the device is altered.

Do not charge more than one device at a time on a charging area.
Coat Hooks
There are coat hooks under the grab handles in the second row, and under the window frames in the third row. Pull it down to use it.

The coat hooks are not designed for large or heavy items.
Cargo Hooks

Use the cargo hooks to secure luggage in the cargo area.

Grocery Bag Hook

The hook is designed to hold light items. Heavy objects may damage the hook.
To open the sunglasses holder, push and release the indent. To close, push it again until it latches.

You can store eyeglasses and other small items in this holder.

**Conversation mirror**
The sunglasses holder comes with a mirror. Open the sunglasses holder fully, then push it back to the first detent. You can use the mirror to view the rear seats.

Keep the holder closed while driving except when accessing stored items.
The power mode must be in ON to use the heated steering wheel.

Press the button on the right side of the steering wheel.

When a comfortable temperature is reached, press the button again to turn it off.

The heated steering wheel is turned off every time you start the engine, even if you turned it on the last time you drove the vehicle.

* Not available on all models

Do not use the heated steering wheel continuously when the engine is off. Under such conditions, the battery may be weakened, making the engine difficult to start.
The power mode must be in ON to use the seat heaters.

Press the seat heater button:
- Once - The HI setting (three indicators on)
- Twice - The MID setting (two indicators on)
- Three times - The LO setting (one indicator on)
- Four times - The OFF setting (no indicators on)

When the power mode is turned on after it is turned off, the previously selected setting of seat heaters is maintained.

**WARNING**

Heat induced burns are possible when using seat heaters.

Persons with a diminished ability to sense temperature (e.g., persons with diabetes, lower-limb nerve damage, or paralysis) or with sensitive skin should not use seat heaters.

Do not use the seat heaters even in LO when the engine is off. Under such conditions, the battery may be weakened, making the engine difficult to start.

After a certain period of time, the strength setting for the seat heaters will automatically be reduced by one level at a time until the seat heater shuts off. The elapsed time varies according to the interior environment.
### Front Seat Heaters and Seat Ventilation*

The power mode must be in ON to use the seat heaters and ventilation.

Press the seat heater or the seat ventilation button:
- Once - The HI setting (three indicators on)
- Twice - The MID setting (two indicators on)
- Three times - The LO setting (one indicator on)
- Four times - The OFF setting (no indicators on)

When the power mode is turned on after it is turned off, the previously selected setting of seat heaters and ventilations is maintained.

---

**WARNING**

Heat induced burns are possible when using seat heaters.

Persons with a diminished ability to sense temperature (e.g., persons with diabetes, lower-limb nerve damage, or paralysis) or with sensitive skin should not use seat heaters.

Do not use the seat heaters and the seat ventilation even in LO when the engine is OFF. Under such conditions, the battery may be weakened, making the engine difficult to start.

After a certain period of time, the strength setting for the seat heaters will automatically be reduced by one level at a time until the seat heater shuts off. The elapsed time varies according to the interior environment.

*Not available on all models*
Integrated Sunshades*

Second row sunshades
Pull the tab and roll up the sunshade all the way. Use the hooks to hang it.

Third row sunshades
Pull the tab and roll up the sunshade all the way. Attach the tab to the anchor.

Use the sunshades only when the windows are fully closed. If a window is open while a shade is being used, the shade can blow off and unhook, hitting and hurting anyone sitting near the window.
HondaVAC™*

An in-car vacuum system used for cleaning the inside of your vehicle. The vacuum can be operated with the engine running or for up to eight minutes without the engine running.

![HondaVAC™*](image)

**HondaVAC™**

**WARNING**

- Engine exhaust contains toxic carbon monoxide that builds up rapidly in enclosed areas. Breathing it can cause unconsciousness and even kill you. If running the engine to power the vacuum, park the vehicle outdoors and lower all windows to ensure adequate ventilation.

- Do not vacuum flammable liquids or in an area with flammable vapors. A fire or explosion could result, causing death or serious injury.

**NOTICE**

The vacuum is intended for dry use only. Water and other liquids can damage the vacuum.

* Not available on all models
To operate:
1. Set the parking brake.
2. Set the power mode to ACCESSORY.
3. Start the engine.
4. Press the button to turn on the system.

Without engine running:
- Start the engine.

With engine running:
- Press the button to turn on the system.

To operate:
- The vacuum automatically shuts off and the PWR SAVE indicator comes on if the system detects that running the vacuum is over discharging the battery.

After seven minutes of operation:
- The beeper sounds intermittently.
- When eight minutes elapse:
  - The beeper sounds once and the PWR SAVE indicator comes on. The vacuum automatically shuts off.
  - To continue vacuuming, start the engine.

Without engine running:
- Operate the engine only when there is sufficient ventilation.
To empty the canister or change the debris bag

1. Remove the lower vacuum lid.
2. Push the lever in.
3. Pull the canister down, then slide out from the track.
4. Push the three lid tabs outward and remove the canister lid.

The debris bag and canister can be accessed.

To reinstall the empty canister:
After sliding the canister into the track, push the lever in to lift the canister up.
Release the lever to lock the canister in position.

The orange unlocked decal should not be visible.

Both the debris bag and filter are replaceable. Contact a dealer for component replacement information.

The vacuum can be used with or without the bag.

If you find the vacuum performance poor or there is no suction:
• Check if the canister is locked in position.
• Check if the hose is attached to the vacuum.
• Empty the canister or change the bag.
• Clean or replace the filter.
• Check the hose for clogs or damage.
Climate Control System

**Dual-zone climate control system**

**Using Automatic Climate Control**

The automatic climate control system maintains the interior temperature you select. The system also selects the proper mix of heated or cooled air that raises or lowers the interior temperature to your preference as quickly as possible.

1. Press the **AUTO** button.
2. Adjust the interior temperature using the temperature control switch.
3. Press the **(On/Off) button to cancel.**

**Switching between the recirculation and fresh air modes**

Press the **(Recirculation) button and switch the mode depending on environmental conditions.**

- **Recirculation Mode (indicator on):** Recirculates air from the vehicle’s interior through the system.
- **Fresh Air Mode (indicator off):** Maintains outside ventilation. Keep the system in fresh air mode in normal situations.

**Using Automatic Climate Control**

If any buttons are pressed while using the climate control system in auto, the function of the button that was pressed will take priority. The **AUTO** indicator will go off, but functions unrelated to the button that was pressed will be controlled automatically.

To prevent cold air from blowing in from outside, the fan may not start immediately when the **AUTO** button is pressed.

If the interior is very warm, you can cool it down more rapidly by partially opening the windows, turning the system on auto, and setting the temperature to low. Change the fresh air mode to recirculation mode until the temperature cools down.

When you set the temperature to the lower or upper limit, **Lo** or **Hi** is displayed.

Pressing the **(On/Off) button switches the climate control system between on and off. When turned on, the system returns to your last selection.**

While ECON mode is active, the climate control system may have reduced cooling performance.
Defrosting the Windshield and Windows

Pressing the button turns the air conditioner system on and automatically switches the system to fresh air mode.

To rapidly defrost the windows

1. Press the button.
2. Press the button.

For your safety, make sure you have a clear view through all the windows before driving.

Do not set the temperature near the upper or lower limit. When cold air hits the windshield, the outside of the windshield may fog up.

If the side windows fog up, adjust the vents so that the air hits the side windows.

After defrosting the windows, switch over to fresh air mode. If you keep the system in recirculation mode, the windows may fog up from humidity. This impedes visibility.
You can set the temperature synchronously for the front compartment and the rear passenger compartment in synchronization mode.

1. Press the **SYNC** button.
   - The system switches to synchronization mode.
2. Adjust the temperature using the temperature control switch.

Press the **SYNC** button to return to dual mode.
Rear Climate Control System

| Using the Rear Climate Control System |

1. Press the **REAR ON/OFF** button.
2. Press the **REAR SETTINGS** button.
   - The system switches to the rear control mode for 10 seconds. The **REAR** indicator appears on the display.
3. Press the **AUTO** button.
   - The rear system changes to AUTO mode.
   - The system automatically adjusts the fan speed and airflow levels to maintain the set rear temperature. Change the temperature if necessary.
   - To turn off the rear climate control system, press the **REAR ON/OFF** button.

Use the system when the engine is running.

Use the system when the engine is running.
Climate Control System

Using Automatic Climate Control

The automatic climate control system maintains the interior temperature you select. The system also selects the proper mix of heated or cooled air that raises or lowers the interior temperature to your preference as quickly as possible.

1. Press the AUTO button.
2. Adjust the interior temperature using the driver’s side or passenger’s side control switch.
3. Press the button to cancel.

Tri-zone climate control system

Using Automatic Climate Control

Press the FRONT CLIMATE button to display A/C, MODE, fan control information on the audio/information screen for several seconds. Select icon to turn on or off A/C, change the vent mode, or change the fan speed.

Mode Control Icon
(Air flows from dashboard vents)

Fan Control Icon

A/C (Air Conditioning) Icon
AUTO Button
(On/Off) Button
FRONT CLIMATE Button

Driver’s Side Temperature Control switch
Passenger’s Side Temperature Control switch

SYNC (Synchronized) Button
Fan Control Button
(Recirculation) Button

Models with Auto Idle Stop

During idle-stops, air-conditioning is suspended, and only the blower remains active. If you do not want air-conditioning suspended, press to cancel idle-stop.

If any buttons are pressed while using the climate control system in auto, the function of the button that was pressed will take priority. The AUTO indicator will go off, but functions unrelated to the button that were pressed will be controlled automatically.

To prevent cold air from blowing in from outside, the fan may not start immediately when the AUTO button is pressed.

If the interior is very warm, you can cool it down more rapidly by partially opening the windows, turning the system on AUTO, and setting the temperature to low. Change the fresh mode to recirculation mode until the temperature cools down.

When you set the temperature to the lower or upper limit, Lo or Hi is displayed.
**Switching between the recirculation and fresh air modes**
Press the button and switch the mode depending on environmental conditions.
Recirculation Mode (indicator on): Recirculates air from the vehicle's interior through the system.
Fresh Air Mode (indicator off): Maintains outside ventilation. Keep the system in fresh air mode in normal situations.

**Defrosting the Windshield and Windows**
Pressing the button turns the air conditioner system on and automatically switches the system to fresh air mode.

**To rapidly defrost the windows**
1. Press the button.
2. Press the button.

**Using Automatic Climate Control**
Pressing the button switches the climate control system between on and off. When turned on, the system returns to your last selection.

While ECON mode is active, the climate control system may have reduced cooling performance.

**Defrosting the Windshield and Windows**
*For your safety, make sure you have a clear view through all the windows before driving.*

Do not set the temperature near the upper or lower limit.
When cold air hits the windshield, the outside of the windshield may fog up.

If the side windows fog up, adjust the vents so that the air hits the side windows.

**Models with Auto Idle Stop**
If you press the button during Auto Idle Stop, the engine restarts automatically.

**To rapidly defrost the windows**
After defrosting the windows, switch over to fresh air mode.
If you keep the system in recirculation mode, the windows may fog up from humidity. This impedes visibility.
You can set the temperature synchronously for the driver side, the passenger side and the rear passenger compartment in synchronization mode.

1. Press the **SYNC** button.
   - The system switches to synchronization mode.
2. Adjust the temperature using the driver’s side temperature control switch.

Press the **SYNC** button to return to tri-zone mode.

**Synchronization Mode**

When the system is not in synchronization mode, the temperature for the driver side, passenger side, and rear passenger compartment can be set separately.
Rear Climate Control System

Using the Rear Climate Control System From the Front Panel

1. Use the system when the engine is running.
2. Press the REAR CLIMATE button.
3. Press the REAR CLIMATE button to display AUTO, MODE, temperature control, and fan control information on the audio/information screen for several seconds.
4. Select the AUTO icon.
   - The rear system changes to AUTO mode.
   - The system automatically adjusts the fan speed and airflow levels to maintain the set rear temperature. Change the temperature if necessary.
   - To turn off the rear climate control system, select the ON/OFF icon.

Rear Climate Control System

LOCK appears on the rear control panel while the rear lock is on.

If the rear lock is on while in SYNC mode, the rear control panel is disabled. LOCK SYNC appears on the rear control panel.

Using the Rear Climate Control System From the Front Panel

Select the LOCK icon to turn the rear lock mode on and off.

While the rear lock mode is on, the rear control panel is disabled.

The color of LOCK icon on the audio/information screen changes from grey to blue.
Use the system when the engine is running.

1. Press the AUTO button.
2. Adjust the interior temperature using the rear temperature control bar.
3. To turn off the rear climate control system, press "OFF" button.
**Automatic Climate Control Sensors**

The automatic climate control system is equipped with sensors. Do not cover or spill any liquid on them.
Features

This chapter describes how to operate technology features.

Audio System

About Your Audio System .......... 260
USB Ports .................................. 261
Auxiliary Input Jack ................. 262
Audio System Theft Protection ....... 263
Audio Remote Controls ............. 264

Audio System Basic Operation ...... 267
Audio/Information Screen .......... 268
Adjusting the Sound .............. 272
Display Setup ........................ 273
Playing AM/FM Radio .............. 274
Playing an iPod ..................... 276
Playing a USB Flash Drive ......... 279
Playing Bluetooth® Audio .......... 282

Audio System Theft Protection 263

Models with color audio system

Audio System Basic Operation ...... 267
Audio/Information Screen .......... 268
Adjusting the Sound .............. 272
Display Setup ........................ 273
Voice Control Operation .......... 275
Playing AM/FM Radio .............. 278
Playing SiriusXM® Radio* ......... 280
Playing a CD* ...................... 281
Playing an iPod ..................... 283
Playing a USB Flash Drive ......... 284
Playing My Honda Music .......... 286
Playing Bluetooth® Audio .......... 289

Playing Social Playlist .............. 347
HondaLink® .............................. 349
Wi-Fi Connection .................... 354
Near Field Communication (NFC)* .... 355
Siri Eyes Free ....................... 359
Apple CarPlay ...................... 360
Android Auto ......................... 363

Audio Error Messages ............. 367
General Information on the Audio System .... 372
Blu-ray/DVD Rear Entertainment System* .... 396
Customized Features .............. 442
HomeLink® Universal Transceiver* .... 467
Bluetooth® HandsFreeLink® ......... 470, 495
CabinWatch™* ...................... 521
CabinTalk™* ......................... 522

* Not available on all models

259
About Your Audio System

The audio system features AM/FM radio and SiriusXM® Radio service. It can also play audio CDs*, WMA/MP3/AAC files*, USB flash drives, and iPod, iPhone, iPad* and Bluetooth® devices.

You can operate the audio system from the buttons* and knobs on the panel, the remote controls on the steering wheel, or the icons on the touchscreen interface*.

SiriusXM® Radio* is available on a subscription basis only. For more information on SiriusXM® Radio*, contact a dealer.

SiriusXM® Radio* is available in the United States and Canada, except Hawaii, Alaska, and Puerto Rico.

SiriusXM®* is a registered trademark of SiriusXM Radio*, Inc.

Models with Blu-ray™ or CD player

Video CDs, DVDs*, Blu-ray Discs*, and 3-inch (8-cm) mini CDs are not supported.

*1: Models with CD player

General Information on the Audio System

P. 372

State or local laws may prohibit the operation of handheld electronic devices while operating a vehicle.

Models with Blu-ray™ or CD player

Video CDs, DVDs*, Blu-ray Discs*, and 3-inch (8-cm) mini CDs are not supported.

*1: Models with CD player

After you set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF, you can use the audio system for up to 30 minutes per driving cycle, or until opening the driver’s door. However, whether you can continue using the audio system depends on the battery condition. Repeatedly using this feature may drain the battery.

* Not available on all models
USB Ports

Install the iPod USB connector or the USB flash drive to the USB port.

- **In the console compartment**

  - **Models with color audio system**
    
    The USB port (1.0A) on the right side is for playing audio files on a USB flash drive, connecting a cell phone, and charging devices.
    
    The USB port (2.5A) on the left side is only for charging devices.

  - **Models with Display Audio**
    
    The USB port (2.5A) is for charging devices, playing audio files and connecting compatible phones with Apple CarPlay or Android Auto.
    
    The USB port (2.5A) on the left side* is only for charging devices.

- **On the back of the console compartment**

  The USB ports (2.5A) are only for charging devices.

- **USB Ports**

  - Do not leave the iPod or USB flash drive in the vehicle. Direct sunlight and high temperatures may damage it.
  - We recommend using an extension cable with the USB port.
  - Do not connect the iPod or USB flash drive using a hub.
  - Do not use a device such as a card reader or hard disk drive, as the device or your files may be damaged.
  - We recommend keeping your data backed up before using the device in your vehicle.
  - Displayed messages may vary depending on the device model and software version.

  If the audio system does not recognize the iPod, try reconnecting it a few times or reboot the device. To reboot, follow the manufacturer’s instructions provided with the iPod or visit www.apple.com/ipod.

**USB charge**

The USB port can supply up to 1.0A/2.5A of power. It does not output 1.0A/2.5A unless the device requests.

For amperage details, read the operating manual of the device that needs to be charged.

Set the power mode to ACCESSORY or ON first.

Under certain conditions, a device connected to the port may generate noise in the radio you are listening to.

* Not available on all models
Auxiliary Input Jack

Use the jack to connect standard audio devices.

1. Open the AUX cover.
2. Connect a standard audio device to the input jack using a 1/8 inch (3.5 mm) stereo miniplug.
   ▶ The audio system automatically switches to the AUX mode.

Auxiliary Input Jack

Models with color audio system
You can return to AUX mode by pressing the MEDIA button.

Models with Display Audio
You can return to AUX mode by selecting the audio source icon on the audio/information screen.

You cannot use the auxiliary input jack if you replace the audio system.
Audio System Theft Protection

The audio system is disabled when it is disconnected from the power source, such as when the battery is disconnected or goes dead. In certain conditions, the system may display a code entry screen. If this occurs, reactivate the audio system.

■ Reactivating the audio system
1. Set the power mode to ON.
2. Turn on the audio system.
3. Press and hold the audio system power knob for more than two seconds.
   - The audio system is reactivated when the audio control unit establishes a connection with the vehicle control unit. If the control unit fails to recognize the audio unit, you must go to a dealer and have the audio unit checked.
Audio Remote Controls

Models with color audio system
Allow you to operate the audio system while driving.

SOURCE Button
Cycles through the audio modes as follows:
FM1 → FM2 → AM → USB/iPod → Bluetooth® Audio → AUX

+/− (Volume) Bar
Press +: To increase the volume.
Press −: To decrease the volume.

Buttons
- When listening to the radio
  Press ⏯: To select the next preset radio station.
  Press ⏯: To select the previous preset radio station.
  Press and hold ⏯: To select the next strong station.
  Press and hold ⏯: To select the previous strong station.
- When listening to an iPod, USB flash drive, or Bluetooth® Audio
  Press ⏯: To skip to the next song.
  Press ⏯: To go back to the beginning of the current or previous song.
- When listening to a USB flash drive, or Bluetooth® Audio
  Press and hold ⏯: To skip to the next folder.
  Press and hold ⏯: To go back to the previous folder.

Some modes appear only when an appropriate device or medium is used.
Depending on the Bluetooth® device you connect, some functions may not be operated.
Models with Display Audio

Allow you to operate the audio system while driving. The information is shown on the driver information interface.

+/− (Volume) Bar
Press +: To increase the volume.
Press −: To decrease the volume.

Audio Remote Controls

Some modes appear only when an appropriate device or medium is used.

Depending on the Bluetooth® device you connect, some functions may not be operated.

Press the → (back) button to go back to the previous screen or cancel a command.

Press the (home) button to go back to the home screen of the driver information interface.

You can show or hide the audio mode icons, or change the order of the icons.

Show/Hide Apps P. 130
Arrange Apps P. 131
Features

Audio System

Audio Remote Controls

/ENTER Buttons

- When selecting the audio mode
  Press ▲ or ▼ to select Now Playing on the home screen of the driver information interface, and then press the ENTER button.

  Press ▲ or ▼: To cycles through the audio modes as follows:
  Android Auto/Apple CarPlay → SiriusXM* → Rear Entertainment* → AUX Input → AM → Bluetooth® Audio → Social Playlist → FM → My Honda Music → USB/iPod → CD*

- When listening to the radio
  Press ▶: To select the next preset radio station.
  Press ◄: To select the previous preset radio station.

- When listening to a CD*, iPod, USB flash drive, My Honda Music, or Bluetooth® Audio
  Press ▶: To skip to the next song.
  Press ◄: To go back to the beginning of the current or previous song.

* Not available on all models
Audio System Basic Operation

Features

Audio System Basic Operation

To use the audio system, the power mode must be in ACCESSORY or ON. Use the selector knob or MENU/CLOCK button to access some audio functions.

Selector knob: Rotate left or right to scroll through the available choices. Press to set your selection.

MENU/CLOCK button: Press to select any mode. The available modes include the wallpaper, display, clock, language setup, and play modes. Play modes can be also selected from scan, random, repeat, and so on.

(Back) button: Press to go back to the previous display.

(Sound) button: Press to select the sound setting mode.

(Day/Night) button: Press to change the audio/information screen brightness. Press then adjust the brightness using .

Menu Items

- Adjusting the Clock P. 142
- Wallpaper Setup P. 270
- Display Setup P. 273
- Scan P. 275, 281
- Play Mode P. 278, 281
- RDS Settings P. 275
- Bluetooth P. 282

One of the operating systems used in this unit is eCos. For software license terms and condition, visit their website (eCos license URL: http://ecos.sourceforge.net/license-overview.html).

For source code disclosure and other details regarding eCos, visit: http://www.hondaopensource2.com

Press the SOURCE, +/-, or button on the steering wheel to change any audio setting.

Audio Remote Controls P. 264
Audio/Information Screen
Displays the audio status and wallpaper. From this screen, you can go to various setup options.

■ Switching the Display
■ Audio
Shows the current audio information.

■ Clock/Wallpaper
Shows a clock screen or an image you import.

■ Change display
1. Press the MENU/CLOCK button.
2. Rotate \( \text{\textcircled{}} \) to select Settings, then press \( \text{\textcircled{}} \).
3. Rotate \( \text{\textcircled{}} \) to select Display Change, then press \( \text{\textcircled{}} \).
4. Rotate \( \text{\textcircled{}} \) to select Wallpaper, then press \( \text{\textcircled{}} \).
   ▶ If you want to return to the audio/information screen, select Audio.
### Wallpaper Setup

You can change, store, and delete the wallpaper on the audio/information screen.

#### Import wallpaper

You can import up to three images, one at a time, for wallpaper from a USB flash drive.

1. Connect the USB flash drive to the USB port.

   - **USB Ports** P. 261
2. Press the **MENU/CLOCK** button.
3. Rotate to select **Settings**, then press .
4. Rotate to select **Wallpaper**, then press .
5. Rotate to select **Import**, then press .
   - The picture name is displayed on the list.
6. Rotate to select a desired picture, then press .
   - The selected picture is displayed.
7. Press to save the picture.
8. Press to select **OK**.
9. Rotate to select a location to save the picture, then press .
   - The display will return to the wallpaper setting screen.

#### Wallpaper Setup

- When importing wallpaper files, the image must be in the USB flash drive’s root directory. Images in a folder cannot be imported.
- The file name must be fewer than 64 characters.
- The file format of the image that can be imported is BMP (bmp) or JPEG (jpg).
- The individual file size limit is 2 MB.
- The maximum image size is 1,920 x 936 pixels. If the image size is less than 480 x 234 pixels, the image is displayed in the middle of the screen with the extra area appearing in black.
- Up to 255 files can be selected.
- If the USB flash drive does not have any pictures, the **No compatible images were found. See Owner’s Manual.** message appears.
■ Select wallpaper
1. Press the MENU/CLOCK button.
2. Rotate  to select Settings, then press .
3. Rotate  to select Wallpaper, then press .
4. Rotate  to select Select, then press .
   ► The screen changes to the wallpaper list.
5. Rotate  to select a desired wallpaper, then press .

■ To view wallpaper once it is set
1. Press the MENU/CLOCK button.
2. Rotate  to select Settings, then press .
3. Rotate  to select Display Change, then press .
4. Rotate  to select Wallpaper, then press .

■ Delete wallpaper
1. Press the MENU/CLOCK button.
2. Rotate  to select Settings, then press .
3. Rotate  to select Wallpaper, then press .
4. Rotate  to select Delete, then press .
   ► The screen changes to the wallpaper list.
5. Rotate  to select a wallpaper that you want to delete, then press .
6. Rotate  to select Yes, then press .
   ► The display will return to the wallpaper setting screen.

Wallpaper Setup
To go back to the previous screen, press the (back) button.

When the file size is large, it takes a while to be previewed.
Adjusting the Sound

Press the (sound) button, and rotate to scroll through the following choices:

- Bass
- Treble
- Fader
- Balance
- Subwoofer
- Speed-sensitive Volume Compensation

Rotate to adjust the sound setting, then press .

The SVC has four modes: Off, Low, Mid, and High. SVC adjusts the volume level based on the vehicle speed. As you go faster, audio volume increases. As you slow down, audio volume decreases.
Display Setup
You can change the brightness or color theme of the audio/information screen.

### Changing the Screen Brightness

1. Press the MENU/CLOCK button.
2. Rotate to select Settings, then press .
3. Rotate to select Display Adjustment, then press .
4. Rotate to select Brightness, then press .
5. Rotate to adjust the setting, then press .

### Changing the Screen’s Color Theme

1. Press the MENU/CLOCK button.
2. Rotate to select Settings, then press .
3. Rotate to select Color Theme, then press .
4. Rotate to select the setting you want, then press .

You can change the Contrast and Black Level settings in the same manner.
Playing AM/FM Radio

**RADIO Button**
Press to select a band.

**VOL/ (Volume/Power) Knob**
Press to turn the audio system on and off.
Turn to adjust the volume.

**/ (Seek/Skip) Buttons**
Press or to search up and down the selected band for a station with a strong signal.

**Preset Buttons (1-6)**
To store a station:
1. Tune to the selected station.
2. Pick a preset button and hold it until you hear a beep.
To listen to a stored station, select a band, then press the preset button.

**Selector Knob**
Turn to tune the radio frequency.
Press and then turn to select an item. After that, press again to make your selection.

**MENU/CLOCK Button**
Press to display the menu items.

**Audio/Information Screen**

**/ (Back) Button**
Press to go back to the previous display or cancel a setting.
Radio Data System (RDS)
Provides text data information related to your selected RDS capable FM station.

To find an RDS station from Station List
1. Press \( \text{MENU} \) while listening to an FM station.
2. Rotate \( \text{menu} \) to select the station, then press \( \text{select} \).

Update List
Updates your available station list at any time.
1. Press \( \text{MENU} \) while listening to an FM station.
2. Rotate \( \text{menu} \) to select Update List, then press \( \text{select} \).

Radio text
Displays the radio text information of the selected RDS station.
1. Press the MENU/CLOCK button.
2. Rotate \( \text{menu} \) to select Settings, then press \( \text{select} \).
3. Rotate \( \text{menu} \) to select RDS Settings, then press \( \text{select} \).
4. Rotate \( \text{menu} \) to select Radio Text, then press \( \text{select} \).

Scan
Samples each of the strongest stations on the selected band for 10 seconds.
1. Press the MENU/CLOCK button.
2. Rotate \( \text{menu} \) to select Scan, then press \( \text{select} \).

To turn off scan, press \( \text{select} \).
Playing an iPod

Connect the iPod using your USB connector to the USB port, then press the MEDIA button.

USB Ports P. 261
How to Select a Song from the iPod Music List with the Selector Knob

1. Press 🎧 to display the iPod music list.

2. Rotate 🎧 to select a category.

3. Press 🎧 to display a list of items in the category.

4. Rotate 🎧 to select an item, then press 🎧.
   - Press 🎧 and rotate 🎧 repeatedly until a desired item you want to listen to is displayed.

Continued
Audio System Basic Operation

Playing an iPod

Features

You can select repeat and shuffle modes when playing a song. Available mode icons appear above the play mode buttons. Press the button corresponding to the mode you want to select.

To turn off a play mode
Press the selected button.

How to Select a Play Mode

Shuffle Albums: Plays all available albums in a selected category (playlists, artists, albums, songs, genres, or composers) in random order.

Shuffle: Plays all available songs in a selected category (playlists, artists, albums, songs, genres, or composers) in random order.

Repeat One Track: Repeats the current song.

You can also select a play mode by pressing the MENU/CLOCK button. Rotate to select Play Mode, then press. Rotate to select a mode, then press. To turn it off, rotate to select Normal Play, then press.

How to Select a Play Mode

Play Mode Menu Items

Shuffle Albums: Plays all available albums in a selected category (playlists, artists, albums, songs, genres, or composers) in random order.

Shuffle: Plays all available songs in a selected category (playlists, artists, albums, songs, genres, or composers) in random order.

Repeat One Track: Repeats the current song.
Playing a USB Flash Drive

Your audio system reads and plays audio files on a USB flash drive in either MP3, WMA or AAC*1 format.

Connect your USB flash drive to the USB port, then press the MEDIA button.

---

*1: Only AAC format files recorded with iTunes are playable on this unit.
How to Select a File from a Folder with the Selector Knob

1. Press 📚 to display a folder list.

2. Rotate 📚 to select a folder.

3. Press 📚 to display a list of tracks in that folder.

4. Rotate 📚 to select a track, then press 🎵.
How to Select a Play Mode

You can select repeat, random, and scan modes when playing a file. Available mode icons appear above the play mode buttons. Press the button corresponding to the mode you want to select.

To turn off a play mode
Press the selected button.

How to Select a Play Mode

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Play Mode Menu Items</th>
<th>Repeat</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Repeat One Folder: Repeats all files in the current folder.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Repeat One Track: Repeats the current file.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Random</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Random in Folder: Plays all files in the current folder in random order.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Random All: Plays all files in random order.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Scan</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Scan Folders: Provides 10-second sampling of the first file in each of the main folders.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scan Tracks: Provides 10-second sampling of all files in the current folder.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

You can also select a play mode by pressing the MENU/CLOCK button. Rotate to select Play Mode, then press .

Rotate to select a mode, then press . To turn it off, rotate to select Normal Play, then press .
Playing Bluetooth® Audio

Your audio system allows you to listen to music from your Bluetooth-compatible phone. This function is available when the phone is paired and connected to the vehicle’s Bluetooth® HandsFreeLink® (HFL) system.

Phone Setup P. 476

Not all Bluetooth-enabled phones with streaming audio capabilities are compatible with the system. For a list of compatible phones:

- U.S.: Visit automobiles.honda.com/handsfreelink/, or call 1-888-528-7876.
- Canada: Visit www.handsfreelink.ca, or call 1-888-528-7876.

In some states, it may be illegal to perform some data device functions while driving.

Only one phone can be used with HFL at a time. When there are more than two paired phones in the vehicle, the first paired phone the system finds is automatically connected.

If more than one phone is paired to the HFL system, there may be a delay before the system begins to play.

In some cases, the name of the artist, album, or track may not appear correctly.

Some functions may not be available on some devices.
Audio System Basic Operation

Playing Bluetooth® Audio Features

1. Make sure that your phone is paired and connected to HFL.
2. Press the MEDIA button until the Bluetooth® Audio mode is selected.

If the phone is not recognized, another HFL-compatible phone, which is not compatible for Bluetooth® Audio, may already be connected.

■ To pause or resume a file
Press the play or pause button to select a mode.

To play the audio files, you may need to operate your phone. If so, follow the phone maker’s operating instructions.

The pause function may not be available on some phones.

If any audio device is connected to the auxiliary input jack or USB port, you may need to press the MEDIA button repeatedly to select the Bluetooth® Audio system.

Switching to another mode pauses the music playing from your phone.
How to Select a Song from the Music Search List with the Selector Knob

1. Press to display the music search list.

2. Rotate to select a category.

3. Press to display a list of items in the category.

4. Rotate to select an item, then press.
   - Press and rotate repeatedly until a desired item you want to listen to is displayed.

How to Select a Song from the Music Search List with the Selector Knob

Depending on the Bluetooth® device you connect, some or all of the categories may not be displayed.
Audio System Basic Operation

Models with Display Audio
To use the audio system function, the power mode must be in ACCESSORY or ON.

Select to go to the home screen.
Select to go back to the previous display when it is displayed.
Select once and select or to make an adjustment.
Each time you select , the mode switches among the daytime mode, nighttime mode and off mode.
Audio/Information Screen

Displays the audio status and wallpaper. From this display, you can go to various setup options.

Switching the Display

Using the audio/information screen

Select to go to the home screen.
Select the following icons on the home screen or after selecting **All Apps**.

Touchscreen Operation

- Use simple gestures - including touching, swiping, and scrolling - to operate certain audio functions.
- Some items may be grayed out during driving to reduce the potential for distraction.
- You can select them when the vehicle is stopped or use voice commands.
- Wearing gloves may limit or prevent touchscreen response.

You can change the touchscreen sensitivity setting.

Customized Features P. 442
### Phone
Displays the HFL information.

* Bluetooth® HandsFreeLink® P. 495

### Trip Computer
Displays the trip computer information.
- **Current Drive** tab: Displays the current trip information.
- **Trip A/Trip B** tab: Displays information for the current and three previous drives.
  - The information is stored every time you reset Trip A/B.
  - To reset Trip A/B, select **Reset**.
  - To change the setting of how to reset Trip A/B, select **Settings**, then select **Trip A Reset Method** or **Trip B Reset Method**.

### Clock
Displays the clock.

### System Updates
Updates the software version of the audio system.

* System Updates P. 300

### FM/AM/Sirius XM®/CD®/USB/Bluetooth Audio/AUX Input/My Honda Music/Social Playlist
Displays the each audio information.

### Settings
Enters the customizing menu screen.

* Customized Features P. 448

---

* Not available on all models
Features

■ Navigation*
Displays the navigation screen.
Refer to the Navigation System Manual

■ HondaLink
Connects with your smartphone*1 to play personalized music, information, and social media streams.
HondaLink® P. 349

■ Apple CarPlay/Android Auto
Displays the Apple CarPlay or Android Auto.
Apple CarPlay P. 360
Android Auto P. 363

■ Messages
Displays the text message screen.
Bluetooth® HandsFreeLink® P. 495

■ CabinTalk*
Displays the CabinTalk screen.
CabinTalk™* P. 522

■ CabinWatch*
Displays the CabinWatch screen.
CabinWatch™* P. 521


* Not available on all models
■ Rear Entertainment*
Displays the rear audio screen.
   • Blu-ray/DVD Rear Entertainment System* P. 396

■ AT&T Hotspot*
Displays the AT&T Hotspot screen.

■ NFC Manager*
Displays the Near Field Communication (NFC) manager screen.
   • Near Field Communication (NFC)* P. 356

■ File Manager
Displays the file manager screen.
   • File Manager P. 306

* Not available on all models
Audio System Basic Operation

Audio/Information Screen

**Wallpaper Setup**

You can change, store, and delete the wallpaper on the audio/information screen.

**Import wallpaper**

1. Connect the USB flash drive to the front USB port.
   - USB Ports P. 261
2. Select Clock.
3. Select Settings.
4. Select Clock Faces.
5. Select Add More.
   - The File Manager screen is displayed.
6. Import a desired picture.
   - How to Transfer a File P. 306
   - The display will return to the Clock Faces screen.

**Wallpaper Setup**

The wallpaper you set up on Clock Faces cannot be displayed on the driver information interface.

- The file name must be fewer than 255 characters.
- The file format of the image that can be imported is BMP, GIF, JPEG, PNG, or WebP.
- If the USB flash drive does not have any pictures, the No Data message appears.
■ Select wallpaper
1. Select Clock.
2. Select Settings.
3. Select Clock Faces.
4. Select a desired wallpaper.
   ▶ The preview is displayed on the screen.
5. Select Save.
   ▶ The display will return to the clock screen.

■ To view wallpaper once it is set
1. Select .
2. Select Clock.

■ Delete wallpaper
1. Select Clock.
2. Select Settings.
3. Select Clock Faces.
4. Select Delete Photos.
   ▶ The File Manager screen is displayed.
5. Delete a picture.
   ▶ How to Delete a File P. 309
   ▶ The display will return to the Clock Faces screen.
Home Screen

To change to a next screen

Selecting ▶ or ◀, or swiping the screen left or right changes to the next screen.

Home Screen

The home screen has 5 pages. You cannot add any more pages.

Select ▶ to go directly back to the first page of the home screen from any page.
To add app icons on the home screen

App icons can be added on the home screen.
1. Select the home screen.
2. Select All Apps.
3. Check the box of the app you want to add. The app icon will be added on the home screen.

Pre-installed apps may not start up normally. If this occurs, you need to reset the system.

Defaulting All the Settings P. 466

If you perform Factory Data Reset, it may reset all the settings to their factory default.

Defaulting All the Settings P. 466

In case those apps still do not startup normally even after Factory Data Reset, contact your dealer.

There is a possibility that a browser is shut down in the situation of the use. In that situation, the screen will return to before the browser startup.
Audio System Basic Operation ▶ Audio/Information Screen

■ To move icons on the home screen
You can change location on the home screen.

1. Select and hold an icon.
   ▶ The screen switches to the customization screen.
2. Drag and drop the icon to where you want it to be.
3. Select Done.
   ▶ The screen will return to the home screen.

Select Tips to show tips. To hide them, select it again.
To remove icons on the home screen
You can delete the icons on the home screen.

1. Select and hold an icon.
   ▶️ The screen switches to the customization screen.
2. Drag and drop the icon you want to remove to the Hide icon.
   ▶️ The icon is removed from the home screen.
3. Select Done.
   ▶️ The screen will return to the home screen.

Apps will not be deleted by deleting the icon on the home screen.
Select Tips to show tips. To hide them, select it again.
■ To preset icons on the home screen
You can store up to three icons on the upper left of the home screen.

1. Select and hold an icon.
   ▶ The screen switches to the customization screen.
2. Drag and drop the icon you want to store to the upper left of the home screen.
   ▶ The icon is preset.
3. Select Done.
   ▶ The screen will return to the home screen.
Status Area

1. Select the system status icon.
   - The status area appears.
2. Select an item to see the details.
3. Select [or the system status icon to close the area.

Continued
Some of the audio system’s apps can be updated wirelessly when connected via Wi-Fi, or Bluetooth® in conjunction with the HondaLink® app installed on a compatible iOS or Android device. If an update is available, a notification is displayed at the top of the screen with the respective app’s update icon.

To update an app:

1. A notification appears and notifies you of an update message on the header area.

2. Select the system status icon, and then select the software update notification from the list.

Updating Apps

The wireless updates are for the apps on the audio system only.

To update compatible apps on your iPhone or Android phone, please visit the App Store or Google Play Store, respectively.
3. Select **Download**.

![Download screenshot]

4. Select **OK**.
   - A notification appears on the screen if the update is successful. Select **OK**.
   - Restart the engine for the update to be applied.
System Updates

The audio system’s firmware can be updated with a Wi-Fi connection or with a USB device.

How to Update Wirelessly

1. Select .
2. Select System Updates.
3. Select Settings.
4. Select Connection Setup.
5. Select Change Mode.
6. Select Network, then Save.
   ▶️ The display returns to the network list.
7. Select an access point from the network list, then Connect.
   ▶️ If the audio system requires a password, enter a password.
How to update

When the audio system update is available, the notification is shown on the audio/information screen. Use the following procedure to update the system.

1. Select 📡
2. Select System Updates.

4. Select Download Now.
   - A notification appears on the screen.
5. Select **Install Now** or **Install while Vehicle OFF**.
   - A notification appears on the screen if the update is successful.

**How to update**

If **Install while Vehicle OFF** is selected and the user turns the vehicle back on after the update has been completed, for 3 to 5 minutes the system will rebuild the applications, during which time the Honda logo will be displayed.
■ Automatic download settings
Use the following procedure to change to the automatic download setting.

1. Select 🏡.
2. Select System Updates.
3. Select Settings.
4. Select Auto Download.
5. Select the access point, then Allow.

■ View an update result
Use the following procedure to confirm the update result.

1. Select 🏡.
2. Select System Updates.
3. Select Settings.
4. Select Update Result.
How to Update with a USB Device

1. Select "System Updates".
2. Select "via USB".
3. Connect a USB device into the front USB port.
4. The inventory data is copied into the USB device.
5. Remove the USB device from the USB port.
6. Connect the USB device into your computer, and then download the update files.
7. Follow the link to download the required software update files. Refer to https://usb.honda.com for instructions.

How to Update with a USB Device

A USB device with a minimum of 8 GB of free space or more is recommended.

Be sure to delete any previous inventory or update files from the USB before starting the USB update process.
Update the audio system

1. Select [ ]
2. Select System Updates.
3. Select via USB.
   - A notification appears on the screen.
4. Connect the USB device with the update files into the USB port.
   - A notification appears on the screen.
   - USB Ports P. 261
5. Select Install Now or Install while Vehicle OFF.
   - A notification appears on the screen if the update is successful.

Update the audio system

If Install while Vehicle OFF is selected and the user turns the vehicle back on after the update has been completed, for 3 to 5 minutes the system will rebuild the applications, during which time the Honda logo will be displayed.
Audio System Basic Operation

File Manager

Allows you to transfer image or audio files to the audio system with a USB device.

How to Transfer a File

1. Connect a USB device into the USB port.
2. Select USB Ports P. 261
3. Select All Apps.
4. Select File Manager.
5. Select Transfer Content.

To transfer a selected file:

5. Select Select Files to Transfer.
6. Select the file or folder you want to transfer.
7. Select OK.

8. Select Transfer.
   - A confirmation message appears on the screen. Select Continue.
   - A notification appears on the screen if the transfer is successful. Then, the display will return to the File Manager screen.

How to Transfer a File
To switch the view method, select List or Thumbnail on the upper right of the screen.
To transfer all files:

5. Select **Transfer All Content**.

6. Select **Transfer**.
   - A confirmation message appears on the screen. Select **Continue**.
   - A notification appears on the screen if the transfer is successful. Then, the display will return to the **File Manager** screen.

**How to Transfer a File**

To switch the view method, select **List** or **Thumbnail** on the upper right of the screen.
How to Delete a File

1. Select 📦, then select 📦 All Apps.
2. Select File Manager.
3. Select Delete Content.

To delete a selected file:
4. Select Select Files to Delete.
5. Select the file or folder you want to delete.
6. Select OK.

7. Select Delete.
   A notification appears on the screen if the deletion is successful. Then, the display will return to the File Manager screen.

How to Transfer a File
To switch the view method, select List or Thumbnail on the upper right of the screen.
To delete all files:

4. Select **Delete All Content**.

5. Select **Delete**.
   - A notification appears on the screen if the transfer is successful. Then, the display will return to the **File Manager** screen.

How to Transfer a File

To switch the view method, select **List** or **Thumbnail** on the upper right of the screen.
Adjusting the Sound

1. Select 
2. Select an audio source icon.
3. Select Sound.

Select an item from the following choices:
- **Bass / Treble**: Treble, Midrange, Bass
- **Center / Subwoofer Volume**: Center*, Subwoofer
- **Balance / Fader**: Balance, Fader
- **Audio Zones***: Driver Only, Front Only, Rear Only, Full Vehicle
- **Speed Volume Compensation**: Speed Volume Compensation (SVC)
- **DTS Neural Surround***: DTS Neural Surround™

* Not available on all models

Adjusting the Sound

The SVC has four modes: off, low, mid, and high. SVC adjusts the volume level based on the vehicle speed. As you go faster, audio volume increases. As you slow down, audio volume decreases.

You can also adjust the sound the following procedure.
1. Select 
2. Select Settings.
3. Select Sound.

To reset each setting for **Bass / Treble**, **Center / Subwoofer Volume** and **Balance / Fader**, select Reset.
Display Setup

You can change the brightness of the audio/information screen.

### Changing the Screen Brightness

1. Select .
2. Select Settings.
3. Select Display.
4. Select Day Mode or Night Mode.
5. Select the setting you want.
6. Select Save.

You can change the Contrast and Black Level settings in the same manner.

To reset the settings, select Reset.
Selecting an Audio Source

Select the current source icon, then select an icon on the source list to switch the audio source.

Limitations for Manual Operation

Certain manual functions are disabled or inoperable while the vehicle is in motion. You cannot select a grayed-out option until the vehicle is stopped.
Voice Control Operation

Your vehicle has a voice control system that allows hands-free operation. The voice control system uses the talk and back buttons on the steering wheel and a microphone near the map lights on the ceiling.

Voice Recognition

To achieve optimum voice recognition when using the voice control system:

- Make sure the correct screen is displayed for the voice command that you are using.
- Adjust the dashboard and side vents so air does not blow onto the microphone on the ceiling.
- Speak clearly in a clear, natural speaking voice without pausing between words.
- Reduce any background noise if possible. The system may misinterpret your command if more than one person is speaking at the same time.

* Not available on all models
Audio System Basic Operation

Voice Control Operation

Features

When the (talk) button is pressed, available voice commands appear on the screen. For a complete list of commands, say “Voice Help” after the beep.

- The system only recognizes the commands on the following pages, at certain screens. Free form voice commands are not recognized.

- Phone
  This can be only used when the phone is connected. When the system recognizes the Phone command, the screen will change the dedicated screen for the voice recognition of the phone.
  - Call <Your Contact Name>
  - Call <Phone Number>
  - Call <Category>
  Phone commands are not available if using Apple CarPlay.

- Audio
  When the system recognizes the Audio command, the screen will change the dedicated screen for the voice recognition of the audio.
  - FM
  - AM
  - USB
  - Sirius XM*
  - My Honda Music

- Navigation*1
  The screen changes the navigation screen.
  Refer to the Navigation System Manual

- Voice Help
  Readout voice guidance for Help on current screen.

*1: Models with navigation system

* Not available on all models
### Phone Commands

The system accepts these commands on the dedicated screen for the voice recognition of the phone.

- Call <Your Contact Name>
- Call <Phone Number>
- Call <Category>

### Audio Commands

The system accepts these commands on the dedicated screen for the voice recognition of the audio.

#### FM Commands

- Tune to <87.7-107.9> FM

#### AM Commands

- Tune to <530-1710> AM

#### Sirius XM Commands*

- Channel <1-999>
- Channel <station name>

#### USB/My Honda Music Commands

- Play Artist
- Play Album
- Play Genre
- Play Playlist
- Play Music
- Play Song

---

* Not available on all models
Audio System Basic Operation > Playing AM/FM Radio

## Playing AM/FM Radio

**Back Icon**  
Select to go back to the previous display.

**VOL/ AUDIO (Volume/Power) Knob**  
Push to turn the audio system on and off.  
Turn to adjust the volume.

**Seek Icons**  
Select [←] or [→] to search up and down the selected band for a station with a strong signal.

**Tune Icon**  
Select to use the on-screen keyboard for entering the radio frequency directly.

**Scan Icon**  
Select to scan each station with a strong signal.

**Auto Scan**  
Select to scan each station with a strong signal.

**Preset Icons**  
Tune the radio frequency for preset memory.  
Select and hold the preset icon to store that station.  
Select [>] to display preset 5 onwards.

**Audio/Information Screen**

**Settings Icon**  
Select whether to tune to HD Radio™ automatically.

*Not available on all models*
Audio System Basic Operation

Playing AM/FM Radio

■ Preset Memory
To store a station:
1. Tune to the selected station.
2. Select and hold the preset number for the station you want to store.

■ Station List
Lists the strongest stations on the selected band.
1. Select Station List to display a list.
2. Select the station.

■ Manual update
Updates your available station list at any time.
1. Select Station List to display a list.
2. Select Refresh.

HD Radio Technology manufactured under license from iBiquity Digital Corporation. U.S. and Foreign Patents. HD Radio™ and the HD, HD Radio, and “Arc” logos are proprietary trademarks of iBiquity Digital Corp.
Audio System Basic Operation

Playing AM/FM Radio

■ Scan
Samples each of the strongest stations on the selected band for 10 seconds. To turn off scan, select Stop or .

■ Radio Data System (RDS)
Provides text data information related to your selected RDS-capable FM station.

■ To find an RDS station from Station List
1. Select Station List to display a list while listening to an FM station.
2. Select the station.

■ Manual update
Updates your available station list at any time.
1. Select Station List to display a list while listening to an FM station.
2. Select Refresh.

■ Scan
Samples each of the strongest stations on the selected band for 10 seconds. To turn off scan, select Stop or .

Radio Data System (RDS)
When you select an RDS-capable FM station, the RDS automatically turns on, and the frequency display changes to the station name. However, when the signals of that station become weak, the display changes from the station name to the frequency.
Models with HD Radio™ feature

HD Subchannel

Displays the subchannel list when an HD Radio™ station is selected while listening to an FM station.

1. Select **HD Radio Channels**.
2. Select the channel number.
Audio System Basic Operation

Playing SiriusXM® Radio*

Features

(Back) Icon
Select to go back to the previous display.

VOL/AUDIO (Volume/Power) Knob
Push to turn the audio system on and off.
Turn to adjust the volume.

Channel Icons
Select or to the previous or next channel.
Select and hold to rapidly skip 10 channels at a time.

Category Icons
Select or to display and select a SiriusXM® Radio category.

Audio/Information Screen

Preset Icons
Tune the radio frequency for preset memory. Select and hold the preset icon to store that station. Select to display preset 5 onwards.

* Not available on all models
To Change the Tune Mode

1. Select Settings.
2. Select Tune Mode.
3. Select All Channels or Within Category.

Playing SiriusXM® Radio*

In the channel mode, all available channels are selectable. In the category mode, you can select a channel within a category (Jazz, Rock, Classical, etc.).

There may be instances when SiriusXM® Radio does not broadcast all the data fields (artist name, title). This does not indicate a problem with your audio system.

SiriusXM® Radio stations load in ascending order, which can take about a minute. Once they have loaded you will be able to scroll up or down to make your selections.

Switching the Audio Mode

Press the ▲ or ▼ button on the steering wheel or select the audio source icon on the screen.

Audio Remote Controls P. 264

Tune Start:

When you change to a preset channel, a song being played on that channel restarts from the beginning with this function. This can be turned on or off by the following procedure.

1. Select Settings.
2. Select Tune Start.
3. Select ON or OFF.

To change a category, select Category icons, or select More and then select Category List.

* Not available on all models
## Preset Memory

To store a channel:
1. Tune to the selected channel.
2. Select and hold the preset number for the station you want to store.

### Multi-channel preset (for music channels only)
You can store up to 10 of your preferred music channels per preset.

1. Tune a station.
2. Select and hold the preset number you want to add a music channel.
3. Select **Add to TuneMix** or **Create TuneMix**.

   ▶️ A message appears if there are no available presets.

## Preset Memory

You can store 12 SiriusXM® channels into the preset memory.

### Multi-channel preset (for music channels only)

**TuneMix:**
The multi-channel preset function can be turned on or off by the following procedure.
1. Select **Settings**.
2. Select **TuneMix**.
3. Select **ON** or **OFF**.

When you want to replace the channel, select **Replace Preset**.
If you want to delete a channel, select **Edit TuneMix**, and then select the channel you want to delete.
Listening to Featured Channels

Suggested channel listing received from SiriusXM® can be displayed and selected.

1. Select Channel List.
2. Select the featured channel list title you want to listen to.
   - The selected channel list of the title is displayed.
3. Select the channel.

Listening to Featured Channels

Up to three featured channels by SiriusXM® can be displayed.

Featured channel lists are at the top of the channel list.

To switch the sorting method, select Number, Name or Category on the upper right of the screen.

Select Keypad to use the on-screen keyboard for entering the channel number directly.
Replay Function

The system can record up to the last 60 minutes broadcast of your currently tuned channel as well as the last 30 minutes broadcast of preset channels, starting from the moment you turn the vehicle on. If you tuned to preset channel, the system records up to 60 minutes of a broadcast instead of up to 30 minutes. You can rewind and replay the last 30 or 60 minutes of a broadcast.

Move the position you want to replay by selecting ◄◄ or ►►.

To play or pause on playback mode, select the play/pause icon.

- Returning to real-time broadcast
  Select and hold ►►

Replay Function

The system starts storing broadcast in memory when the power mode is turned ON. You can go back to the program from that point.

You can no longer replay any program once the power mode is turned off as it erases memory. You can check how long the program has been stored in memory from the audio/information screen.

After 30 or 60 minutes of recording the system will automatically start deleting the oldest data.

Audio/Information Screen

(A): Shows how much time the replayed segment is behind the real-time broadcast
(B): Replayed segment
(C): Length stored in memory
(D): Play/Pause icon
Live Sports Alert

While listening to other channel, you can receive sports alerts such as scores from your favorite teams.

To set up a favorite team

1. Select Settings.
2. Select Sports Notifications Setup.
3. Select Favorite Teams.
4. Select + Add Favorite Team.
5. Select a team.

To set up an alert message

1. Select Settings.
2. Select Sports Notifications Setup.
3. Select Notifications.
4. Select Game Notifications or SportsFlash Game Play Notifications.
5. Select Notifications.
7. Select a favorite team.
Audio System Basic Operation ➤ Playing SiriusXM® Radio

### Traffic and Weather Information

You can receive traffic and weather information.

1. Select **Settings**.
2. Select **Traffic & Weather Setup**.
3. Select **Selected City**.
4. Select the region.
   - When you do not want to receive the information, select **Reset Location**.

The traffic and weather information function at SiriusXM® mode only.
Channel Schedule

You can view a channel schedule or receive a alert when your favorite program is about to start.

■ To view a channel schedule

1. Select More.
2. Select Channel Schedule.

■ To set up an alert message

1. Select More.
2. Select Channel Schedule.
3. Select a program.
4. Select Set Program Alert.
5. Select Just Once or Every Time.

Audio System Basic Operation
Playing SiriusXM® Radio

Features

1. Select Keypad to use the on-screen keyboard for entering the channel number directly.

2. To set up an alert message

The alert function at SiriusXM® mode only.

Selecting Just Once disables the alert feature next time you turn the power mode to ON.

If you want to delete the alert, select Remove Alert.
You can change settings for the alert function.

**To enable the alert function**
1. Select Settings.
2. Select Manage Program Alerts.
3. Select Notifications.
4. Select ON or OFF.

**To remove an alert**
1. Select Settings.
2. Select Manage Program Alerts.
3. Select Alerts Set.
4. Select the alert you want to delete.
   - A confirmation message appears on the screen. Select Delete.
Audio System Basic Operation
Playing SiriusXM® Radio

**Scan**

Sample each channel on the selected mode for 10 seconds.
1. Select **More**.
2. Select **Scan**.

You can change a scan mode by the following procedure.
1. Select **Settings**.
2. Select **Scan Mode**.
3. Select **Channel** or **Preset**.

To turn off scan, select **Stop**.

---

**Scan**

The "Scan Songs in Presets" function is based on TuneScan™ technology of SiriusXM®.

The "Featured Channels" function is based on Featured Favorites™ technology of SiriusXM®.

TuneScan™ and Featured Favorites™ are registered trademarks of SiriusXM® Radio, Inc.
Playing a CD*

Your audio system supports audio CDs, CD-Rs, and CD-RWs in either MP3, WMA, or AAC*1 format. With the CD loaded, select the CD mode.

*1: Only AAC format files recorded with iTunes are playable on this unit.

* Not available on all models
How to Select a File from the Music Search List

If there is a folder(s) on a CD:
1. Select Browse.
2. Select Current Playlist, or Folders then a folder.
3. Select a track.

If there is no folder on a CD:
1. Select Track List.
2. Select a track.

NOTICE
Do not use CDs with adhesive labels. The label can cause the CD to jam in the unit.

WMA files protected by digital rights management (DRM) cannot be played.
The audio system displays Selected file cannot be played on this system, then skips to the next file.

Text data appears on the display under the following circumstances:
• When you select a new folder, file, or track.
• When you change the audio mode to CD.
• When you insert a CD.

If you eject the CD but do not remove it from the slot, the system reloads the CD automatically after several seconds.

* Not available on all models
### Audio System Basic Operation

#### Playing a CD

You can select scan, repeat, and random modes when playing a track or file.

**Scan**

Select **Scan**.

- If there is a folder(s) on a CD, you can select **Current folder** or **First Track in All Folders**.

To turn off scan, select **Stop**.

**Random/Repeat**

Cycles through the modes as follows:

- **Random**
  - (off) → (highlighted)
- **Repeat**
  - (off) →

#### How to Select a Play Mode

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Play Mode Menu Items</th>
<th>Details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Scan</strong></td>
<td>Select <strong>Scan Mode</strong>, and then select the following: <strong>First Track in All Folders</strong> (MP3/WMA/AAC): Provides 10-second sampling of the first file in each of the main folders. <strong>Current folder</strong>: Provides 10-second sampling of all tracks on the CD (all files in the current folder in MP3, WMA, or AAC).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Playing an iPod

Connect the iPod using your USB connector to the USB port, then select the USB mode.

USB Ports P. 261
How to Select a Song from the Music Search List

1. Select Browse.
2. Select the items on that menu.

Playing an iPod

Available operating functions vary on models or versions. Some functions may not be available on the vehicle’s audio system.

If there is a problem, you may see an error message on the audio/information screen.

If you operate the music app on your iPhone/iPod while the phone is connected to the audio system, you may no longer be able to operate the same app on the audio/information screen. Reconnect the device if necessary.

If an iPhone is connected via Apple CarPlay, the iPod/USB source will be unavailable and audio files on the phone will be playable only within Apple CarPlay.
How to Select a Play Mode

You can select shuffle and repeat modes when playing a file. Select or .

To turn off a play mode
Select the mode you want to turn off.

Notes

Play Mode Menu Items

Shuffle All Songs: Plays all available files in a selected list (playlists, artists, albums, songs, podcasts, genres, composers, or audiobooks) in random order.

Repeat Song: Repeats the current track.
Playing a USB Flash Drive

Your audio system reads and plays audio files on a USB flash drive in either MP3, WMA, or AAC*1 format.
Connect your USB flash drive to the USB port, then select the USB mode.

USB Ports P. 261

*1: Only AAC format files recorded with iTunes are playable on this unit.
How to Select a File from the Music Search List

1. Select Browse.
2. Select the items on that menu.

Playing a USB Flash Drive

Use the recommended USB flash drives.

General Information on the Audio System
P. 372

WMA files protected by digital rights management (DRM) cannot be played. The audio system displays The selected file cannot be played on this system, then skips to the next file.

If there is a problem, you may see an error message on the audio/information screen.

iPod/USB Flash Drive P. 369
How to Select a Play Mode

You can select repeat and random modes when playing a file.

- **Random/Repeat**
  Select  or  .

To turn off a play mode
Select the mode you want to turn off.

Random/Repeat Menu Items

- **Random in Category**: Plays all files in the current category in random order.
- **Repeat Track**: Repeats the current file.
Audio System Basic Operation

Playing My Honda Music

My Honda Music plays audio files that have been imported from a USB flash drive. Your audio system supports audio files in either MP3, WMA, or AAC*1 format.

File Manager P. 306

*1: Only AAC format files recorded with iTunes are playable on this unit.
Playing My Honda Music

How to Transfer an Audio File

1. Connect a USB device into the USB port.
   - USB Ports P. 261
2. Select More.
   - The File Manager screen is displayed.
4. Transfer an audio file to your audio system.
   - How to Transfer a File P. 306

How to delete an audio file

1. Select More.
2. Select Delete Files from My Honda Music.
   - The File Manager screen is displayed.
3. Delete an audio file.
   - How to Delete a File P. 309

How to Transfer an Audio File

If there is no audio file in your audio system, the system will automatically proceed to step 3 after connecting a USB device.

Use the recommended USB flash drives.
- General Information on the Audio System P. 372
How to Select a File from the Music Search List

1. Select Browse.
2. Select the items on that menu.

WMA files protected by digital rights management (DRM) cannot be played. The audio system displays **The selected file cannot be played on this system**, then skips to the next file.
How to Select a Play Mode

You can select repeat and random modes when playing a file.

- **Random/Repeat**
  Select  or .

**To turn off a play mode**
Select the mode you want to turn off.

---

How to Select a Play Mode

Play Mode Menu Items

**Random/Repeat**

- **Random in Category**: Plays all files in the current category in random order.
- **Random All Tracks**: Plays all files in random order.
- **Repeat Track**: Repeats the current file.
Playing Bluetooth® Audio

Your audio system allows you to listen to music from your Bluetooth-compatible phone. This function is available when the phone is paired and connected to the vehicle’s Bluetooth® HandsFreeLink® (HFL) system.

*1: Depending on the Bluetooth® device you connect, this function may not be displayed.

Audio/Information Screen

Bluetooth Indicator
Appears when your phone is connected to HFL.

(Back) Icon
Select to go back to the previous display.

VOL/AUDIO (Volume/Power) Knob
Push to turn the audio system on and off. Turn to adjust the volume.

Random Icon*1
Select to play all files in the current category in random order.

Repeat Icon*1
Select to repeat the current file.

Play/Pause Icon

Track Icons
Select \[\] or \[\] to change tracks.

Phone Setup P. 500

Not all Bluetooth-enabled phones with streaming audio capabilities are compatible. To check if your phone is compatible, visit http://www.handsfreelink.com/Honda/.

It may be illegal to perform some data device functions while driving.

Only one phone can be used with HFL at a time. When there are more than two paired phones in the vehicle, the first paired phone the system finds is automatically connected.

The connected phone for Bluetooth® Audio can be different.

If more than one phone is paired to the HFL system, there may be a delay before the system begins to play.

In some cases, the name of the artist, album, or track may not appear correctly.

Some functions may not be available on some devices.

If a phone is currently connected via Apple CarPlay or Android Auto, Bluetooth® Audio from that phone will be unavailable. However, you can have a second previously paired phone stream Bluetooth® Audio by selecting \[\] from the Bluetooth® device list.

Phone Setup P. 500
To Play Bluetooth® Audio Files

1. Make sure that your phone is paired and connected to the system.
   - Phone Setup P. 500
2. Select the Bluetooth® Audio mode.

   If the phone is not recognized, another HFL-compatible phone, which is not compatible for Bluetooth® Audio, may already be connected.

To pause or resume a file
Select the play/pause icon.

Searching for Music

1. Select Browse.
2. Select a search category (e.g., Albums).
3. Select an item.
   - The selection begins playing.

To Play Bluetooth® Audio Files

To play the audio files, you may need to operate your phone. If so, follow the phone maker’s operating instructions.

Switching to another mode pauses the music playing from your phone.

You can change the connected phone by selecting Change Device.
   - Phone Setup P. 500

Searching for Music

Depending on the Bluetooth® device you connect, some or all of the lists may not be displayed.
Playing Social Playlist

The Honda CabinControl™ smartphone app allows users to share audio files from their devices to Social Playlist. Unfortunately, the driver cannot select the audio files from the audio/information screen. The driver can play in order of their choice only if they individually select each song in the queue. The driver cannot rearrange the order of the playlist.

For more information, check the Honda CabinControl smartphone app instruction manual.
How to Edit the Playlist

1. Select 玩。
2. Select Social Playlist.
3. Select Queue.

To play a file on the playlist:
   - Select the file.
To remove a file from the playlist:
   - Select 隐藏 on the file.
To clear the playlist:
   - Select Clear, and then select Request Songs to reload a playlist.
To check the connected device:
   - Select Device List.
HondaLink®

HondaLink® connects you to the latest information from Honda. You can connect your phone wirelessly through Wi-Fi or Bluetooth®.

- Wi-Fi Connection P. 354
- Phone Setup P. 500

**To Connect to HondaLink® Service**

Use the following procedure to connect to HondaLink® service.

**To enable the HondaLink® service**

You need to allow the consent of the location service to enable the HondaLink® service.

- **Disable**: Does not allow this consent.
- **Enable Once**: Allows only one time. (Shows again next time.)
- **Always Enable**: Allows anytime. (Never show again.)

The HondaLink® connect app is compatible with most iPhone and Android phones.

Some cell phone carriers charge for tethering and smartphone data use. Check your phone's data subscription package.

When Apple CarPlay or Android Auto is connected to the audio system, HondaLink® can be accessed even without a Wi-Fi connection.
Audio System Basic Operation

HondaLink®

To link with HondaLink®

You may see the connection guide screen after launching HondaLink® when there is no connection available.

HondaLink® Menu

Vehicle
Displays instruction messages when the vehicle needs service.

Help & Support
Displays tips for vehicle usage, and get support via road side or customer service center.
Messages from Honda
Displays helpful and important information from Honda.

Vehicle Information and Message from Honda Tips
You can check the messages that are received quickly in the shortcut operation.

1. A notification appears and notifies you of a new message on the header area.

2. A notification is continuously displayed in the header area until the new message is read.
3. Select the system status icon to see the messages.

4. Select a new message to open.
Audio System Basic Operation

HondaLink® Features

Connect to the HondaLink® operator when trying to find a destination or for roadside assistance.

1. Press the LINK button.
   - Connection to the operator begins.
2. Talk to the operator.
   - To disconnect, select Hang Up on the audio/information screen or press the button on the steering wheel.

Operator Assistance*

Remain attentive to road conditions and driving during operator assistance.

If you want to add or renew a subscription, call the Operator Assistance.

1. Select 🌐.
2. Select Settings.
3. Select System.
4. Select Subscription.
5. Select HondaLink Subscription Status.

* Not available on all models
Wi-Fi Connection

You can connect the audio system to the Internet using Wi-Fi and browse websites or use online services on the audio/information screen. If your phone has cell hotspot capabilities, the system can be tethered to the phone. Use the following steps to setup.

1. Select .
2. Select Settings.
3. Select Connections.
4. Select Wi-Fi.
5. Select Change Mode.
6. Select Network or HotSpot, then Save.
   ▶ To change the Wi-Fi settings, select Network Options or HotSpot Options.
   ▶ Select the access point you want to connect to the system.
7. Select Connect.
   ▶ Enter a password for the access point, and select OK.
   ▶ When the connection is successful, the icon is displayed on the list.
8. Select to go back to the home screen.

Wi-Fi mode (setting for the first time)

You cannot go through the setting procedure while a vehicle is moving. Park in a safe place to setup the Wi-Fi connection.

Some cell phone carriers charge for tethering and smartphone data use. Check your phone’s data subscription package.

Check your phone manual to find out if the phone has Wi-Fi connectivity.

You can confirm whether Wi-Fi connection is on or off with the icon on the Wi-Fi network list. Transmission speed and others will not be displayed on this screen.

In case of Wi-Fi connection with your phone, make sure your phone’s Wi-Fi setting is in access point (tethering) mode.
Wi-Fi mode (after the initial setting has been made)

Make sure your phone’s Wi-Fi setting is in access point (tethering) mode.

Phone users
You may need to go through an initial setup for Wi-Fi connection again after you boot your phone.
Near Field Communication (NFC)*

Near Field Communication (NFC) allows you to connect your phone to the audio system easily via Bluetooth®. NFC enables two devices to communicate in close proximity, within about 2 inch (40 mm).

The following features are available:
- Bluetooth® setup
- Image transfer for wallpaper

**NFC Setup**

1. Select 🎁
2. Select Settings.
3. Select Connections.
4. Select NFC, then ON.

* Android phone only

* Not available on all models
Audio System Basic Operation

Near Field Communication (NFC)*

Features

1. Select then select NFC Manager. Or touch the NFC logo near the glove box with the NFC tag of your phone. The NFC Manager screen is displayed.

2. Select Connect Device to Vehicle Bluetooth.

3. Touch the NFC logo near the glove box with the NFC tag of your phone.

4. A notification appears on the screen if pairing is successful.

Continued
Audio System Basic Operation
Near Field Communication (NFC)*

Image Transfer for the Wallpaper

1. Select 🌐
2. Select NFC Manager.

4. Open the photo you want to transfer on your phone, then select Next.
   ▶ A notification appears on the screen.
5. Touch the NFC logo near the glove box with the NFC tag of your phone.
   ▶ A notification appears on the screen.
6. Select the photo on your phone.
7. A confirmation message appears on the screen. Select OK.
Siri Eyes Free

You can talk to Siri using the (Talk) button on the steering wheel when your iPhone is paired to the Bluetooth® HandsFreeLink® (HFL) system.

Phone Setup P. 500

Using Siri Eyes Free

Press and hold until the display changes as shown.

Appears when Siri is activated in Siri Eyes Free

While in Siri Eyes Free:
The display remains the same. No feedback or commands appear.

Siri Eyes Free

Siri is a trademark of Apple Inc.

Check Apple Inc. website for features available for Siri.

While driving we recommend only using Siri through the (Talk) button on the steering wheel (Siri Eyes Free).

Using Siri Eyes Free

Some commands work only on specific phone features or apps.
Apple CarPlay

If you connect an Apple CarPlay-compatible iPhone to the system via the front USB port, you can use the audio/information screen, instead of the iPhone display, to make a phone call, listen to music, view maps (navigation), and access messages.

USB Ports P. 261

■ Phone
Access the contact list, make phone calls, or listen to voice mail.

■ Messages
Check and reply to text messages, or have messages read to you.

■ Music
Play music stored on your iPhone.

Apple CarPlay Menu

To use Apple CarPlay, connect the USB cable to the USB port located in the console compartment. The USB ports located on the back of the console compartment will not enable Apple CarPlay operation.

USB Ports P. 261

While connected to Apple CarPlay, calls are only made through Apple CarPlay. If you want to make a call with HandsFreeLink, turn Apple CarPlay OFF or detach the USB cable from your iPhone.

Setting Up Apple CarPlay P. 361

When your iPhone is connected to Apple CarPlay, it is not possible to use the Bluetooth® Audio or Bluetooth® HandsFreeLink®. However, other previously paired phones can stream audio via Bluetooth® while Apple CarPlay is connected.

Phone Setup P. 500

For details on countries and regions where Apple CarPlay is available, as well as information pertaining to function, refer to the Apple homepage.
- **Maps**
  Display Apple Maps and use the navigation function just as you would on your iPhone.

  **Models with navigation system**
  Only one navigation system (pre-installed navigation or Apple CarPlay) can give directions at a time. When you are using one system, directions to any prior destination set on the other system will be canceled, and the system you are currently using will direct you to your destination.

- **Setting Up Apple CarPlay**
  After you have connected your iPhone to the system via the front USB port, use the following procedure to set up Apple CarPlay. Use of Apple CarPlay will result in the transmission of certain user and vehicle information (such as vehicle location, speed, and status) to your iPhone to enhance the Apple CarPlay experience. You will need to consent to the sharing of this information on the audio/information screen.

- **Enabling Apple CarPlay**
  **Enable**: Allows this consent.  
  **Disable**: Does not allow this consent.

  You may change the consent settings under the **Connections** settings menu.

---

- **Apple CarPlay**

  **Apple CarPlay Operating Requirements & Limitations**
  Apple CarPlay requires a compatible iPhone with an active cellular connection and data plan. Your carrier’s rate plans will apply.

  Changes in operating systems, hardware, software, and other technology integral to providing Apple CarPlay functionality, as well as new or revised governmental regulations, may result in a decrease or cessation of Apple CarPlay functionality and services. Honda cannot and does not provide any warranty or guarantee of future Apple CarPlay performance or functionality.

  It is possible to use 3rd party apps if they are compatible with Apple CarPlay. Refer to the Apple homepage for information on compatible apps.

  **Setting Up Apple CarPlay**
  You can also use the method below to set up Apple CarPlay:
  Select HOME → Settings → Connections → Apple CarPlay

  **Use of user and vehicle information**
  The use and handling of user and vehicle information transmitted to/from your iPhone by Apple CarPlay is governed by the Apple iOS terms and conditions and Apple’s Privacy Policy.
### Operating Apple CarPlay with Siri

Press and hold the talk button to activate Siri.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>(Talk) button:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Press and hold to activate Siri.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Press again to deactivate Siri.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Press and release to activate standard voice recognition system.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Android Auto

When you connect an Android phone to the audio system via the front USB port, Android Auto is automatically initiated. When connected via Android Auto, you can use the audio/information screen to access the Phone, Google Maps (Navigation), Google Play Music, and Google Now functions. When you first use Android Auto, a tutorial will appear on the screen.

We recommend that you complete this tutorial while safely parked before using Android Auto.

- USB Ports P. 261
- Auto Pairing Connection P. 365

Android Auto

To use Android Auto, you need to download the Android Auto app from Google Play to your smartphone.

Only Android 5.0 (Lollipop) or later versions are compatible with Android Auto.

Bluetooth A2DP cannot be used with Android Auto phone.

Park in a safe place before connecting your Android phone to Android Auto and when launching any compatible apps.

To use Android Auto, connect the USB cable to the USB port located in the console compartment. The USB ports located on the back of the console compartment will not enable Android Auto operation.

- USB Ports P. 261

To directly access the Android Auto phone function, press Phone on the home screen.

- Auto Pairing Connection P. 365

When your Android phone is connected to Android Auto, it is not possible to use the Bluetooth® Audio. However, other previously paired phones can stream audio via Bluetooth® while Android Auto is connected.

- Phone Setup P. 500

Continued
Audio System Basic Operation

Android Auto

Android Auto Menu

1 Maps (Navigation)
Display Google Maps and use the navigation function just as you would with your Android phone. When the vehicle is in motion, it is not possible to make keyboard entries. Stop the vehicle in a safe location to undertake a search or provide other inputs.

Models with navigation system
Only one navigation system (pre-installed navigation or Android Auto) can give directions at a time. When you are using one system, directions to any prior destination set on the other system will be canceled, and the system you are currently using will direct you to your destination. The audio/Information screen shows you turn-by-turn driving directions to your destination.

2 Phone (Communication)
Make and receive phone calls as well as listen to voicemail.

3 Google Now (Home screen)
Display useful information organized by Android Auto into simple cards that appear just when they’re needed.

Android Auto

For details on countries and regions where Android Auto is available, as well as information pertaining to function, refer to the Android Auto homepage.

Android Auto Operating Requirements & Limitations
Android Auto requires a compatible Android phone with an active cellular connection and data plan. Your carrier’s rate plans will apply.

Changes in operating systems, hardware, software, and other technology integral to providing Android Auto functionality, as well as new or revised governmental regulations, may result in a decrease or cessation of Android Auto functionality and services. Honda cannot and does not provide any warranty or guarantee of future Android Auto performance or functionality.

It is possible to use 3rd party apps if they are compatible with Android Auto. Refer to the Android Auto homepage for information on compatible apps.
Music and audio
Play Google Play Music and music apps that are compatible with Android Auto. To switch between music apps, press this icon.

Go back to the Home Screen.

Voice
Operate Android Auto with your voice.

Auto Pairing Connection
When you connect an Android phone to the unit via the front USB port, Android Auto is automatically initiated.

Enabling Android Auto
Enable: Allows this consent.
Disable: Does not allow this consent.

You may change the consent settings under the Connections settings menu.

Enabling Android Auto
Only initialize Android Auto when you safely parked. When Android Auto first detects your phone, you will need to set up your phone so that auto pairing is possible. Refer to the instruction manual that came with your phone.

You can use the method below to change Android Auto settings after you have completed the initial setup:
Select HOME → Settings → Connections → Android Auto

Use of user and vehicle information
The use and handling of user and vehicle information transmitted to/from your phone by Android Auto is governed by the Google’s Privacy Policy.
Operating Android Auto with Voice Recognition

Press and hold the talk button to operate Android Auto with your voice.

(Talk) button:
Press and hold to operate Android Auto with your voice. Press and release to activate standard voice recognition system.

Below are examples of commands you can give with voice recognition:
• Reply to text.
• Call my wife.
• Navigate to Honda.
• Play my music.
• Send a text message to my wife.
• Call flower shop.

For more information, please refer to the Android Auto homepage.

You can also activate the voice recognition function by pressing the icon in the upper-right corner of the screen.
# Audio Error Messages

## CD Player*

If a disc error occurs, you may see the following error messages.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Error Message</th>
<th>Cause</th>
<th>Solution</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Problem ejecting disc from the player. Contact Honda dealer to fix this problem.</td>
<td>Disc stuck in player</td>
<td>• Contact a dealer and the player needs to be replaced.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| There is a problem with the player. Eject and re-insert the disc. If this does not work, try another disc. If the error continues, contact Honda dealer. | Focus error  Unsupported disc error  Mechanical error  Servo error  DRM file access  Error file access | • Press the (eject) button and remove the disc, and check that the error message is cleared.  
• Check that the disc is not damaged or deformed, and insert the disc again.  
[Protecting CDs P. 374](#) |
| The system has overheated. Try to reduce the temperature by tuning the audio system off and allowing the player to cool down. | High temperature               | • Turn the audio system off and allow the player to cool down until the error message is cleared. |

* Not available on all models
# Audio Error Messages

## CD Player

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Error Message</th>
<th>Cause</th>
<th>Solution</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>There is a problem with the player. Eject and re-insert the disc. If this does not work, try another disc. If this error continues contact Honda dealer.</td>
<td>Disc error</td>
<td>• Check that the disc is not damaged or deformed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Protecting CDs P. 374</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The system has overheated. Try to reduce the temperature by turning the audio system off and allowing the player to cool down.</td>
<td>High temperature</td>
<td>• Turn the audio system off and allow the player to cool down until the error message is cleared.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
# iPod/USB Flash Drive

If an error occurs while playing an iPod or USB flash drive, you may see the following error messages. If you cannot clear the error message, contact a dealer.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Error Message</th>
<th>Solution</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>USB Error</strong>^1</td>
<td>Appears when there is a problem with the audio system. Check if the device is compatible with the audio system.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Problem reading connected device. See Owner's Manual for a list of compatible devices. If device is compatible, try reconnecting device. If this error remains, contact Honda dealer. ^2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Bad USB Device</strong>^1</td>
<td>Appears when an incompatible device is connected. Disconnect the device. Then turn the audio system off, and turn it on again. Do not reconnect the device that caused the error.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Problem reading connected device. See Owner's Manual for a list of compatible devices. If device is compatible, try reconnecting device. If this error remains, contact Honda dealer. ^2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| **Unsupported Ver**^1        | • Appears when an unsupported iPod is connected. If it appears when a supported iPod is connected, update the iPod software to the newer version. 
• Appears when an unsupported device is connected. If it appears when a supported device is connected, reconnect the device. |
| Problem reading connected device. See Owner's Manual for a list of compatible devices. If device is compatible, try reconnecting device. If this error remains, contact Honda dealer. ^2 |

^1: Models with color audio system  
^2: Models with Display Audio
### Audio Error Messages

#### iPod/USB Flash Drive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Error Message</th>
<th>Solution</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Problem reading connected device. See Owner's Manual for a list of compatible devices. If device is compatible, try reconnecting device. If this error remains, contact Honda dealer.&quot;²</td>
<td>Appears when the system does not acknowledge the iPod. Reconnect the iPod.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unplayable File¹</td>
<td>Appears when the files in the USB flash drive are DRM or an unsupported format. This error message appears for about three seconds, then plays the next song.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The selected file cannot be played on this system²</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No Data¹</td>
<td>iPod</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The connected device does not contain any files that can be played on this system. See Owner's Manual for a list of compatible file types.²</td>
<td>Appears when the iPod is empty.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*¹ Models with color audio system
*² Models with Display Audio
If an error occurs while using the audio system or apps, you may see the following error messages. If you cannot clear the error message, contact a dealer.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Error Message</th>
<th>Solution</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Unfortunately, **** has stopped.*1</td>
<td>Error has occurred within app, select <strong>OK</strong> on the screen to close the app.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>**** is not responding. Would you like to close it?*1</td>
<td>App is not responding. &lt;br&gt; Select <strong>Wait</strong> if you can wait for a response from app a little longer. &lt;br&gt; If it does not respond even if you keep waiting, select <strong>OK</strong> to close the app and start it up. &lt;br&gt; If the error message continues, perform <strong>Factory Data Reset</strong>. &lt;br&gt; <strong>Defaulting All the Settings</strong> P. 466</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*1: **** part is variable characters, and will change depending upon where an error occurs.
General Information on the Audio System

Models with Display Audio

SiriusXM® Radio Service*

Subscribing to SiriusXM® Radio

1. You need your radio ID ready before registering for subscription. To see the ID in the screen, select Channel to 0.
2. Have your radio ID ready, and either call or visit the SiriusXM® website to subscribe.

Receiving SiriusXM® Radio

Switch to the SiriusXM® mode by using the audio remote controls on the steering wheel, or through the audio/information screen, and stay in this mode for about 30 minutes until the service is activated. Make sure your vehicle is in an open area with good reception.

SiriusXM® Radio Display Messages

Channel not subscribed. Call SiriusXM to subscribe.:
You are not subscribed to the channel selected.
Subscription updated:
SiriusXM® radio is receiving information update from the network.
Channel Not Available:
No such channel exits, or the artist or title information is unavailable.
No Signal:
The signal is too weak in the current location.
Check Tuner:
There is a problem with the SiriusXM® tuner. Contact a dealer.
Check Antenna:
There is a problem with the SiriusXM® antenna. Contact a dealer.

* Not available on all models

Contact Information for SiriusXM® Radio:
- US: SiriusXM® Radio at www.siriusxm.com or 1-800-852-9696
- Canada: SiriusXM® Canada at www.siriusxm.ca, or 1-877-209-0079

Receiving SiriusXM® Radio

The SiriusXM® satellites are in orbit over the equator; therefore, objects south of the vehicle may cause satellite reception interruptions. Satellite signals are more likely to be blocked by tall buildings and mountains the farther north you travel from the equator.

You may experience reception problems under the following circumstances:
- In a location with an obstruction to the south of your vehicle.
- In tunnels
- On the lower level of a multi-tiered road
- Large items carried on the roof rack
Models with Display Audio

Recommended CDs*

- Use only high-quality CD-R or CD-RW discs labeled for audio use.
- Use only CD-R or CD-RW discs on which the recordings are closed.
- Play only standard round-shaped CDs.

The CD packages or jackets should have one of these marks.

| COMPACT DISC DIGITAL AUDIO ReWritable | COMPACT DISC DIGITAL AUDIO Recordable |
| COMPACT DISC DIGITAL AUDIO Recordable |

CDs with MP3, WMA or AAC files

- Some software files may not allow for audio play or text data display.
- Some versions of MP3, WMA or AAC formats may be unsupported.

* Not available on all models

Continued
■ Protecting CDs
Follow these precautions when handling or storing CDs:
• Store a CD in its case when it is not being played.
• When wiping a CD, use a soft clean cloth from the center to the outside edge.
• Handle a CD by its edge. Never touch either surface.
• Never insert foreign objects into the CD player.
• Keep CDs out of direct sunlight and extreme heat.
• Do not place stabilizer rings or labels on the CD.
• Avoid fingerprints, liquids, and felt-tip pens on the CD.

NOTICE
Do not insert a damaged CD. It may be stuck inside and damage the audio unit.

Examples:
• Bubbled, wrinkled, labeled, and excessively thick CDs
• Sealed With Plastic Ring
• Using Printer Label Kit
• Damaged CDs
• With Label/Sticker
• Poor quality CDs
• Chipped/Cracked
• Warped
• Small CDs
• 3-inch (8-cm) CD
• Burrs
Compatible iPod, iPad, iPhone, and USB Flash Drives

■ iPod, iPad, and iPhone Model Compatibility

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Model</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>iPod (5th generation)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iPod classic 80GB/160GB (launch in 2007)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iPod classic 120GB (launch in 2008)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iPod classic 160GB (launch in 2009)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iPod nano (1st to 7th generation*) released between 2005 and 2012</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iPod touch (1st to 5th generation*) released between 2007 and 2012</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iPhone*/iPad 3G/iPhone 3GS/iPhone 4/iPhone 4s/iPhone 5c/iPhone 5s/iPhone 6/iPhone 6 Plus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iPad*/iPad 2*/iPad (3rd generation)*1/iPad (4th generation)*1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iPad Air*/iPad Air 2*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iPad mini*/iPad mini 2*/iPad mini 3*</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

■ USB Flash Drives

- A USB flash drive of 256 MB or higher is recommended.
- Some digital audio players may not be compatible.
- Some USB flash drives (e.g., a device with security lockout) may not work.
- Some software files may not allow for audio play or text data display.
- Some versions of MP3, WMA, or AAC formats may be unsupported.

*1: Models with Display Audio

* Not available on all models
Honda App License Agreement

END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT

PLEASE CAREFULLY READ THIS END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT (THIS “AGREEMENT”) WHICH GOVERNS YOUR USE OF THE SOFTWARE INSTALLED ON YOUR HONDA OR ACURA VEHICLE (YOUR “VEHICLE”) AS WELL AS THE APPLICATIONS, SERVICES, FUNCTIONS, AND CONTENT PROVIDED THROUGH THE SOFTWARE (COLLECTIVELY, THE “SERVICES”). YOUR USE OF THE SOFTWARE OR SERVICES WILL SERVE AS YOUR CONSENT TO THE TERMS OF THIS AGREEMENT. THE SOFTWARE IS OWNED (OR LICENSED), PROVIDED, AND/OR OPERATED BY AMERICAN HONDA MOTOR CO. INC., (“HONDA,” “US,” “WE,” OR “OUR”), WITH ITS BUSINESS ADDRESS AT 1919 TORRANCE BLVD., TORRANCE, CA 90501. REFERENCE TO “HONDA” IN THIS AGREEMENT INCLUDES HONDA’S PARENT COMPANY AND ITS AFFILIATES AND DESIGNATED AGENTS. THE SERVICES ARE OWNED (OR LICENSED), PROVIDED, AND/OR OPERATED BY HONDA OR A THIRD-PARTY SERVICE PROVIDER (A “PROVIDER”). REFERENCE TO A “PROVIDER” IN THIS AGREEMENT INCLUDES SUCH PROVIDER’S PARENT COMPANY, AFFILIATES, AND DESIGNATED AGENTS.

A. Description of the Software. The SOFTWARE includes the software, firmware and the like, installed and executing on your VEHICLE during manufacture, and thereafter updated from time to time by HONDA, you or an authorized HONDA dealer (a “DEALER”). The SOFTWARE allows you to access and use a variety of SERVICES, including but not limited to: (a) HONDA applications, services, and content provided through the SOFTWARE (together, “HONDA SERVICES”); and (b) PROVIDER applications, services, and content provided through the SOFTWARE (together, “PROVIDER SERVICES”), each of which may provide access to various information, media, content, and services.

B. SOFTWARE Licensing and Intellectual Property.

1. SOFTWARE. This AGREEMENT grants you a non-exclusive, limited, and revocable license to use the SOFTWARE and SERVICES solely (a) as installed on your VEHICLE by HONDA, (b) as updated on your Vehicle by HONDA, you (but only as and when directed by HONDA), or a DEALER and (c) as permitted under the terms of this AGREEMENT.

2. HONDA Services. The SOFTWARE may provide you with access to various HONDA SERVICES. Installation, activation, or use of HONDA SERVICES may require your consent to additional terms, conditions, and privacy policies applicable to those HONDA SERVICES (the “HONDA TERMS”). You acknowledge and agree that any collection, use, sharing of data generated by your VEHICLE or your use of your VEHICLE, and your use of the HONDA SERVICES shall be subject to this AGREEMENT and any additional HONDA TERMS that may be specifically applicable to such HONDA SERVICES or data generation. The HONDA SERVICES may collect, use, and share such data while you are using the SOFTWARE.
3. **Open-Source Software.** The SOFTWARE and SERVICES may incorporate software licensed to HONDA under free or open-source licenses which govern HONDA’s distribution and your use of such software. HONDA and the third-party authors, licensors, and distributors of such software disclaim all warranties and all liability arising from any and all use or distribution of the software. To the extent such software is provided under terms that differ from the applicable free or open-source licenses, those terms are offered by HONDA alone. Additional information regarding free and open-source software incorporated in the SOFTWARE and SERVICES is available in this manual or within the SOFTWARE.

4. **Provider Services.** The SOFTWARE may provide you with access to various PROVIDER SERVICES. Installation or use of such PROVIDER SERVICES may require your consent to additional terms, conditions, and privacy policies of the applicable PROVIDER (the “PROVIDER TERMS”). This AGREEMENT restricts the manner in which you can install and use PROVIDER SERVICES but does not grant you a license or permission to use such PROVIDER SERVICES. Your permission to use PROVIDER SERVICES is limited and subject to any license grants, conditions, and limitations included in the PROVIDER TERMS. You acknowledge that any collection, use, sharing of your information, targeted advertising practices by PROVIDERS, and your use of the PROVIDER SERVICES shall be subject to both this AGREEMENT and any applicable PROVIDER TERMS. The PROVIDER SERVICES may collect, use, and share such information while you are using the SOFTWARE.

5. **License Limitations and Restrictions on Use.**
   (a) **Limited License.** You understand and agree that the SOFTWARE and SERVICES are licensed, not sold, to you solely for use in accordance with this AGREEMENT and any applicable PROVIDER TERMS, and any documentation for the VEHICLE made available to you by HONDA (any “DOCUMENTATION”). HONDA and its licensors reserve all rights in the SOFTWARE and HONDA SERVICES not expressly granted to you under this AGREEMENT. PROVIDERS and their licensors reserve all rights in the PROVIDER SERVICES not expressly granted to you under the applicable PROVIDER TERMS.
Features

General Information on the Audio System

Honda App License Agreement

(b) Restrictions on Use. The licenses granted under this AGREEMENT do not permit you to use the SOFTWARE or SERVICES on a device other than your VEHICLE. As a condition of using the SOFTWARE and SERVICES, you agree that you may not and will not:

1. copy, download, distribute, modify, publish, sell, rent, lease, lend, license, sublicense, reuse, or create derivative works of the SOFTWARE or SERVICES or any of the content or other material within the SOFTWARE or SERVICES, including without limitation, HONDA or PROVIDER names, logos, or any other trademarks of HONDA or PROVIDERS or used in association with the SOFTWARE or any SERVICES, except as required to use the SOFTWARE or SERVICES in accordance with this AGREEMENT, any applicable PROVIDER TERMS, and the DOCUMENTATION;

2. access or use the SOFTWARE or SERVICES in any manner intended to damage or impair the operation of the SOFTWARE or SERVICES or interfere with anyone else’s use and enjoyment of the SOFTWARE or SERVICES;

3. access or attempt to access any system or server on which the SOFTWARE or SERVICES is hosted or modify or alter the SOFTWARE or SERVICES in any way;

4. use the SOFTWARE or SERVICES for any unlawful purpose, or in violation of any third party rights;

5. use the SOFTWARE or SERVICES in violation of any applicable traffic regulations, rules or laws, including but not limited to any driver distraction laws, rules or regulations;

6. violate the terms of this AGREEMENT, any HONDA TERMS, any PROVIDER TERMS or other applicable third-party terms, conditions, and privacy policies; or

7. reverse engineer, decompile, disassemble, attempt to derive the source code of, nor permit others to reverse engineer, decompile, or disassemble, or attempt to derive the source code of the SOFTWARE or SERVICES, except and only to the extent that such activity is expressly permitted (a) by applicable law notwithstanding this limitation or (b) the terms of applicable free or opensource software licenses.

6. Intellectual Property Rights. All title and intellectual property rights in and to the SOFTWARE and SERVICES, the accompanying DOCUMENTATION, and all copies of the SOFTWARE or SERVICES are owned by HONDA, PROVIDERS, or their suppliers or licensors. This AGREEMENT does not grant you any rights in connection with any trademarks or service marks of HONDA, PROVIDERS, or their licensors, affiliates, or suppliers.
7. Export Restrictions: You acknowledge that the SOFTWARE and SERVICES are subject to U.S., European Union, and other export jurisdictions. You agree to comply with all applicable international and national laws that apply to the SOFTWARE and SERVICES, including the U.S. Export Administration Regulations, as well as end-user, end-use, and destination restrictions issued by the U.S. and other governments.

C. SOFTWARE Operation
1. HONDA reserves the right to suspend or terminate your access to and use of the SOFTWARE or SERVICES if you are found to be in violation of this AGREEMENT or as reasonably deemed necessary by HONDA.

2. Eligibility/Registration/Activation. The SOFTWARE is intended for and available to individuals who (a) are of legal age of majority in their jurisdiction of residence (and at least 18 years of age), or are younger than 18 years of age and possess a valid driver’s license issued by their jurisdiction of residence, and (b) own or have permissive access to a compatible VEHICLE. We do not knowingly collect any information, including personal information, from children under 13. If we learn or are notified that we have collected personal information of a child under 13, we will immediately take steps to delete such information.

3. Use of PROVIDER SERVICES through the SOFTWARE. Certain PROVIDER SERVICES made available through the SOFTWARE may require that you register or otherwise have an account with the PROVIDER and agree to PROVIDER TERMS. Any use of any of such PROVIDER SERVICES within the SOFTWARE is subject to this AGREEMENT and the applicable PROVIDER TERMS. HONDA does not exercise control over such PROVIDER SERVICES and is not responsible or liable for the availability, security, or content of such PROVIDER SERVICES, and the inclusion of any PROVIDER SERVICES does not imply a referral from, the approval of, or the endorsement by HONDA of such PROVIDER SERVICES. HONDA is not responsible or liable, directly or indirectly, for any damage relating to or resulting from your use of the PROVIDER SERVICES.

4. Links to Third Party Sites: The SOFTWARE may provide you with the ability to access third-party sites and content through the use of the SOFTWARE or SERVICES. The third-party sites and content are not under the control of HONDA. HONDA is not responsible or liable, directly or indirectly, for such third-party websites and their content or for any damage relating to or resulting from your access or use of such websites and content.
5. **Unauthorized Use and Abuse.** You are responsible for ensuring your (and any authorized third parties’) use of the SOFTWARE and SERVICES remains in compliance with this AGREEMENT and all other applicable HONDA TERMS and PROVIDER TERMS. You acknowledge and agree that any use of the SOFTWARE or SERVICES occurring through your VEHICLE will be deemed your actions and that HONDA and PROVIDERS may rely upon such actions. You agree to immediately notify us if you suspect fraudulent or abusive activity involving the SOFTWARE or SERVICES. If you so notify us or if we otherwise suspect fraudulent or abusive activity, you agree to cooperate with us in any fraud investigation and to use any fraud prevention measures we prescribe. Your failure to immediately notify us or cooperate to use such measures will result in your liability for all fraudulent usage or abusive activity associated with your VEHICLE.

6. **SOFTWARE Updates.** The SOFTWARE and SERVICES may be updated when your VEHICLE is serviced by a DEALER or remotely, over-the-air, by HONDA from time to time; such updates may occur with or without further notice or your future consent. The SOFTWARE may be updated at HONDA’s discretion and for any purpose including, without limitation, to patch or otherwise improve the SOFTWARE or SERVICES functionality, security, or stability. All updates to the SOFTWARE and SERVICES are subject to this AGREEMENT and any other applicable HONDA TERMS and PROVIDER TERMS.

7. **Uninstalling, Removing, and Replacing the SOFTWARE.** Replacing SOFTWARE or HONDA SERVICES with software or firmware not provided and installed by HONDA or a DEALER will render all representations and warranties for the SOFTWARE, HONDA SERVICES, and VEHICLE functionality reliant upon the SOFTWARE or HONDA SERVICES null and void.

D. **SOFTWARE Operational Notices and Warnings**

1. **Vehicle Geolocation Information.** You acknowledge that your VEHICLE may be equipped with certain traffic and map features. The traffic feature will automatically collect and transmit, through GPS technology, your Vehicle’s current location (longitude and latitude), travel direction and speed (“VEHICLE GEOLOCATION INFORMATION”) to HONDA and PROVIDERS. The VEHICLE GEOLOCATION INFORMATION is used by HONDA and PROVIDERS to provide traffic and navigation-related information to you, but may also be used to provide other SERVICES or offers to you. HONDA will not use such VEHICLE GEOLOCATION INFORMATION for its own marketing efforts, or provide such information to unaffiliated third parties for their own purposes, without your express consent.
2. Potential Map Inaccuracy and Route Safety. Maps used by this system may be inaccurate because of changes in roads, traffic controls, routing, or driving conditions. Always use good judgment and common sense when following suggested routes. Do not follow the route suggestions if doing so would result in an unsafe or illegal driving maneuver, if you would be placed in an unsafe situation, or if you would be directed into an area that you consider unsafe. Do not rely on any navigation features included in the system to route you to emergency services. Not all emergency services such as police, fire stations, hospitals, or clinics are likely to be contained in the map database for such navigation features. Ask local authorities or an emergency services operator for such locations and routes. The driver is ultimately responsible for the safe operation of the vehicle and therefore, must evaluate whether it is safe to follow the suggested directions. Any navigation features are provided only as an aid. Make your driving decisions based on your observations of local conditions and existing traffic regulations. Navigation features are not a substitute for your personal judgment. Any route suggestions made by the SOFTWARE or SERVICES should never replace any local traffic regulations or your personal judgment or knowledge of safe driving practices.

3. Speech Recognition: You acknowledge and understand that HONDA and PROVIDERS may record, retain, and use voices commands when you use the speech recognition components of the SOFTWARE or SERVICES. You and all VEHICLE operators and passengers (a) consent to the recording and retention of voice commands in support of providing speech recognition components and (b) release HONDA and PROVIDERS from all claims, liabilities, and losses that may result from any use of such recorded voice commands. Recognition errors are inherent in speech recognition. It is your responsibility to monitor any speech recognition functions included in the system and address any errors. Neither HONDA nor PROVIDERS will be liable for any damages arising out of errors in the speech recognition process.

4. Distraction Hazards. Navigation features may require manual (non-verbal) input or setup. Attempting to perform such set-up or insert data while driving can seriously distract your attention and could cause a crash or other serious consequences; the ability to undertake such interactions may also be limited by state or local law, which laws you are responsible to know and follow. Even occasional short scans of the screen may be hazardous if your attention has been diverted away from your driving at a critical time. Pull over and stop the vehicle in a safe and legal manner before attempting to access a function of the system requiring prolonged attention. Do not raise the volume excessively. Keep the volume at a level where you can still hear outside traffic and emergency signals while driving. Driving while unable to hear these sounds could result in a crash.
E. Information Collection and Storage

1. Information Collection, Use, Transmission and Storage of Data. Consent to Use of Data: You agree that HONDA and PROVIDERS may collect and use your information gathered in any manner as part of product support services related to the SOFTWARE or related services. HONDA may share such information with third parties, including, without limitation, PROVIDERS, third party software and services suppliers, their affiliates and/or their designated agents, solely to improve their products or to provide services or technologies to you. HONDA, third party software and systems suppliers, their affiliates and/or their designated agent may disclose this information to others, but not in a form that personally identifies you.

2. Information Storage. Depending on the type of multimedia system you have in your VEHICLE, certain information may be stored for ease of use of the SOFTWARE including, without limitation, search history, location history in certain applications, previous and saved destinations, map locations within certain applications, and device numbers and contact information.

   (a) Vehicle Health Information. Your VEHICLE may remotely transmit information regarding the status and health of your VEHICLE ("VEHICLE INFORMATION") to HONDA without notification to you. VEHICLE INFORMATION may contain VEHICLE maintenance and malfunction status that is derived from VEHICLE diagnostic data and includes, but is not limited to, status of powered doors and windows, battery life data, battery charging data, VEHICLE speed, coolant temperature, air compressor revolution, output power, warning codes, diagnostic trouble codes, fuel injection volume, and engine rotations per minute. VEHICLE HEALTH INFORMATION may be used by HONDA for research and development, to deliver HONDA SERVICES and information to you, and to contact you, and is retained only for a period of time necessary to fulfill these goals.

   (b) VEHICLE Geolocation Data (non-navigation/map based). If you opt-in to geolocation-based SERVICES, your vehicle’s geolocation data (latitude and longitude) will be automatically sent from your VEHICLE to HONDA and PROVIDERS.

   (c) You understand that the inputting or uploading of information to your VEHICLE’s multimedia system or the SOFTWARE or SERVICES is at your own risk and that HONDA is not responsible for unauthorized access to or use of any personal or other information. All information uploaded to the SOFTWARE and SERVICES may be stored on your VEHICLE’s multimedia system and you understand that the security and safety of your VEHICLE’s multimedia system is your sole responsibility.
F. NO WARRANTY. You understand and agree that your use of the SOFTWARE and SERVICES are solely at your own risk and that you will be solely responsible for any damage to your VEHICLE’s multimedia system or any other equipment or any loss of data that may result from your use of the SOFTWARE or SERVICES. THE SOFTWARE AND SERVICES ARE PROVIDED ON AN “AS IS” AND “AS AVAILABLE” BASIS WITHOUT ANY WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EXPRESSED, IMPLIED OR STATUTORY. WE SPECIFICALLY DISCLAIM ANY IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, AND NON-INFRINGEMENT. HONDA makes no warranties that the SOFTWARE or SERVICES will meet your requirements, or that the SOFTWARE or SERVICES will be uninterrupted, timely, secure, non-infringing or error free. You understand and agree that you are responsible for any and all charges, costs or expenses associated with your use of the SOFTWARE or SERVICES. Advice or information, whether oral or written, obtained by you from us or through the SOFTWARE or SERVICES are provided for informational purposes only and will not create any warranty not expressly made herein. You should not rely on any such information or advice. We assume no liability or responsibility for any errors or omissions in the SOFTWARE or SERVICES. We do not make any warranty or representation that your use of the material displayed on, or obtained through, the SOFTWARE or SERVICES is non-infringing of any rights of any third party. Any decision or action taken by you on the basis of information or content provided via the application is at your sole discretion and risk. HONDA and PROVIDERS are not responsible or liable for any such decision, or for the accuracy, completeness, usefulness, or availability of any content or information displayed, transmitted, or otherwise made available via the SOFTWARE or SERVICES. To the extent jurisdictions do not allow the exclusion of certain warranties, some of the above exclusions may not apply to you.

G. LIMITATIONS ON LIABILITY. You and HONDA are each waiving important rights.

1. Limitations on YOUR liability. HONDA cannot recover from you any consequential, indirect, incidental, or special damages, or attorney’s fees in connection with your use of the SOFTWARE or HONDA SERVICES. HONDA WAIVES TO THE FULLEST EXTENT ALLOWED BY LAW ANY CLAIM FOR DAMAGES OTHER THAN DIRECT, COMPENSATORY DAMAGES AS LIMITED IN THIS AGREEMENT.
2. Limitation on HONDA and PROVIDER liability. Neither HONDA nor PROVIDERS will be liable to you or any other party for consequential, indirect, incidental, special, or punitive damages (including without limitation lost profits) in connection with your use of the SOFTWARE or SERVICES, even if HONDA or PROVIDERS are aware of the possibility of such damages. These limitations apply to all claims, including, without limitation, claims in contract and tort (such as negligence, product liability and strict liability). To the extent that a jurisdiction does not permit the exclusion or limitation of liability as set forth herein our liability is limited to the maximum extent permitted by law in such states. If HONDA or PROVIDERS are found liable to you for any reason, you agree that the aggregate liability of all these parties to you for any claim is limited to ten U.S. dollars (US $10.00). Neither HONDA nor any PROVIDER would have agreed to provide the SOFTWARE or SERVICES to you if you did not agree to this limitation. This amount is the sole and exclusive liability of HONDA and PROVIDERS to you, and is payable as liquidated damages and not as a penalty. Except where prohibited by law, you may not bring any claim against HONDA or any third-party beneficiary more than two (2) years after the claim arises. We do not have any liability for SOFTWARE or SERVICES interruptions of any length.

(a) Release of HONDA and PROVIDERS For yourself and anyone else claiming under you, you agree to release and discharge HONDA, PROVIDERS, their respective officers, directors, and employees, and each third-party beneficiary from all claims, liabilities and losses in connection with the SOFTWARE or SERVICES, including, but not limited to claims for personal injury or property damage arising from the total or partial failure of performance of the SOFTWARE or SERVICES, even if caused by or based upon the negligence, gross negligence, strict products liability, Deceptive Trade Practices Act violations, bad faith, or breach of warranty of us or the malfunction of the SOFTWARE or SOFTWARE SERVICES. YOU AGREE TO WAIVE TO THE FULLEST EXTENT ALLOWED BY LAW, ANY CLAIM FOR DAMAGES OTHER THAN DIRECT, COMPENSATORY DAMAGES AS LIMITED IN THIS AGREEMENT. YOU HEREBY RELEASE AND DISCHARGE HONDA AND ITS LICENSORS AND CONTRACTORS (INCLUDING ANY THIRD PARTIES PROVIDING ALL OR PART OF THE SOFTWARE OR SERVICES) FROM AND AGAINST ANY CLAIMS, DAMAGES, EXPENSES AND LIABILITY ARISING FROM OR RELATED TO ANY INJURIES, DAMAGES, OR LOSSES TO ANY PERSON (INCLUDING DEATH) OR PROPERTY OF ANY KIND RESULTING IN WHOLE OR PART, DIRECTLY OR INDIRECTLY, FROM YOUR USE OF THE SOFTWARE OR SERVICES.

H. Survival. You agree that the limitations of liability and indemnities in this AGREEMENT will survive even after the AGREEMENT has ended. These limitations of liability apply not only to you, but to anyone using the SOFTWARE or SERVICES via your VEHICLE, to anyone making a claim on your behalf, and to any claims made by your family, employees, customers, or others arising out of or relating to your VEHICLE, the SOFTWARE, or SERVICES.
I. **Availability/Interruption.** The SOFTWARE and certain SERVICES are made available through your VEHICLE's compatible multimedia system when the VEHICLE is turned on. Certain SERVICES may be available only through your compatible mobile device when it is within the operating range of the VEHICLE and a wireless carrier. The availability of the SOFTWARE and SERVICES may be subject to transmission limitation or interruption, including but not limited to technical obsolesce or sunsetting of the hardware, software or firmware, inside of or external to the Vehicle, required for data transmission or receipt. HONDA does not guarantee that the SOFTWARE, SERVICES, or any portion thereof will be available at all times or in all areas. You acknowledge and agree that HONDA is not responsible for performance degradation, interruption or delays. You acknowledge that HONDA shall not be liable to you if the SOFTWARE or SERVICES in a given location are not available. If the SOFTWARE or SERVICES are not available within your intended location, you agree that your sole remedy shall be to cease using the SOFTWARE and SERVICES.

J. **PRODUCT SUPPORT:** Product support for the SOFTWARE is provided by HONDA. For product support, please refer to HONDA instructions provided in the DOCUMENTATION. Should you have any questions concerning this AGREEMENT, or if you desire to contact HONDA for any other reason, please refer to the HONDA contact information provided in the DOCUMENTATION.

K. **Termination and Transfer.**
1. **Termination.** This AGREEMENT is effective until terminated by you or US. WE may terminate this AGREEMENT for any or no reason, and with or without notice to you. Your rights under this AGREEMENT will terminate automatically without notice from US if you fail to comply with any term of this AGREEMENT. Upon termination of this AGREEMENT, you shall cease all use of the SOFTWARE and SERVICES.

2. **Transfer:** You may permanently transfer your rights under this AGREEMENT only as part of a sale or transfer of the VEHICLE, provided you retain no copies, you transfer all of the SOFTWARE and HONDA SERVICES (including all component parts, the media and printed materials, and any upgrades), and the recipient agrees to the terms of this AGREEMENT. You agree to notify HONDA upon the sale or transfer of the VEHICLE. To contact HONDA, please refer to the HONDA contact information provided in the DOCUMENTATION.
L. Changes to the SOFTWARE or SERVICES. WE may change, modify, or update the SOFTWARE or SERVICES from time to time. Unless explicitly stated otherwise, any new features or services that augment or enhance the SOFTWARE or SERVICES in the future shall respectively be considered part of the SOFTWARE or SERVICES and subject to this AGREEMENT. WE reserve the right at any time and from time to time to interrupt, restrict, modify, suspend, discontinue, temporarily or permanently, the SOFTWARE or SERVICES (or any portion thereof), with or without notice to you, and you agree that HONDA shall not be liable to you or to any third party for any modification, suspension or discontinuance of the SOFTWARE or SERVICES.

M. ARBITRATION:

PLEASE READ THIS ARBITRATION PROVISION CAREFULLY TO UNDERSTAND YOUR RIGHTS. YOU AGREE THAT ANY CLAIM THAT YOU MAY HAVE IN THE FUTURE MUST BE RESOLVED THROUGH BINDING ARBITRATION. YOU WAIVE THE RIGHT TO HAVE YOUR DISPUTE HEARD IN COURT AND WAIVE THE RIGHT TO BRING CLASS CLAIMS. YOU UNDERSTAND THAT DISCOVERY AND APPEAL RIGHTS ARE MORE LIMITED IN ARBITRATION.

Arbitration is a method of resolving a claim, dispute or controversy without filing a lawsuit. By agreeing to arbitrate, the right to go to court is waived and instead claims, disputes or controversies are submitted to binding arbitration. This provision sets forth the terms and conditions of our agreement. YOU and HONDA agree and acknowledge that this Agreement affects interstate commerce and the Federal Arbitration Act (“FAA”) applies. By using the Software, Vehicle, or Services, YOU elect to have disputes resolved by arbitration. YOU, HONDA or any involved third party may pursue a Claim. “Claim” means any dispute between YOU, HONDA, or any involved third party relating to your use of the Software, the Vehicle, or the Services, this Agreement, or our relationship, including any representations, omissions or warranties. “Claim” does not include personal injury or wrongful death claims. YOU or HONDA may seek remedies in small claims court or provisional judicial remedies without arbitrating. In addition, notwithstanding anything herein to the contrary, YOU or HONDA may seek equitable relief in a court of competent jurisdiction.

YOU or HONDA may select arbitration with American Arbitration Association, JAMS or National Arbitration and Mediation. Contact these sponsors for their rules. The hearing will be in the federal district where YOU reside. If agreed, it may be by telephone or written submissions. Filing and arbitrator fees to be paid per the sponsor rules. You may contact the sponsor for a fee waiver. If no fee waivers, HONDA will pay filing and arbitrator fees up to $5,000, unless law requires more. Each party is responsible for other fees. Arbitrator may award costs or fees to prevailing party, if permitted by law. HONDA will not seek fees, unless the claims are frivolous.
Arbitrator shall be an attorney or current or retired judge familiar with automotive or consumer software. The arbitrator shall follow substantive law, statute of limitations and decide all issues relating to the interpretation, construction, enforceability and applicability of this provision. The arbitrator may order relief permitted by law. This provision is governed and enforceable by the FAA. An award shall include a written opinion and be final, subject to appeal by the FAA.

This provision survives termination of this Agreement or relationship, bankruptcy, assignment or transfer. If part of this provision is unenforceable, the remainder remains in effect. If unenforceability allows arbitration as a class action, then this provision is entirely unenforceable. YOU may opt out within 30 days of your initial use of the Software by sending a signed, written notice to HONDA at Honda Financial Services, P.O. Box 165007, Irving, TX 75016. HONDA reserves the right to make changes to this provision after providing written notice and an opportunity to opt out.

N. Miscellaneous: You may not assign this AGREEMENT without HONDA’s prior written consent. This AGREEMENT and any additional HONDA TERMS and PROVIDER TERMS represents the entire agreement between you and US. HONDA may amend the terms of this AGREEMENT by providing you with notices of such updated terms. If you do not consent to be bound by the updated terms, your sole remedy will be to cease using the SOFTWARE and SERVICES. If any part of this AGREEMENT is found invalid, void, or unenforceable, the balance of the AGREEMENT will remain valid and enforceable according to its terms. To the fullest extent permitted by law, and except as explicitly provided otherwise, this AGREEMENT and any disputes arising out of or relating to it will be governed by the laws of the State of California, except that California laws concerning choice of law or conflicts shall not apply if they would cause the substantive law of another jurisdiction to apply. Notwithstanding the foregoing, Section M shall be governed by the Federal Arbitration Act and the laws of the State of California, as applicable, as set forth therein. The failure to enforce any term of this AGREEMENT on one occasion shall not prevent enforcement on any other occasion or the enforcement of any other term. Headings and captions shall not be considered included for purposes of interpretation or application hereof, but are for convenience only.
Legal Information on Apple CarPlay/Android Auto

USE OF APPLE CARPLAY IS SUBJECT TO YOUR AGREEMENT TO THE CARPLAY TERMS OF USE, WHICH ARE INCLUDED AS PART OF THE APPLE iOS TERMS OF USE. IN SUMMARY, THE CARPLAY TERMS OF USE DISCLAIM APPLE AND ITS SERVICE PROVIDERS’ LIABILITY IF THE SERVICES FAIL TO PERFORM CORRECTLY OR ARE DISCONTINUED, STRICTLY LIMIT APPLE AND ITS SERVICE PROVIDERS’ OTHER LIABILITIES, DESCRIBE THE KINDS OF USER INFORMATION (INCLUDING, FOR EXAMPLE, VEHICLE LOCATION, VEHICLE SPEED, AND VEHICLE STATUS) BEING GATHERED AND STORED BY APPLE AND ITS SERVICE PROVIDERS, AND DISCLOSE CERTAIN POSSIBLE RISKS ASSOCIATED WITH THE USE OF CARPLAY, INCLUDING THE POTENTIAL FOR DRIVER DISTRACTION. SEE APPLE’S PRIVACY POLICY FOR DETAILS REGARDING APPLE’S USE AND HANDLING OF DATA UPLOADED BY CARPLAY.

USE OF ANDROID AUTO IS SUBJECT TO YOUR AGREEMENT TO THE ANDROID AUTO TERMS OF USE WHICH MUST BE AGREED TO WHEN THE ANDROID AUTO APPLICATION IS DOWNLOADED TO YOUR ANDROID PHONE. IN SUMMARY, THE ANDROID AUTO TERMS OF USE DISCLAIM GOOGLE AND ITS SERVICE PROVIDERS’ LIABILITY IF THE SERVICES FAIL TO PERFORM CORRECTLY OR ARE DISCONTINUED, STRICTLY LIMIT GOOGLE AND ITS SERVICE PROVIDERS’ OTHER LIABILITIES, DESCRIBE THE KINDS OF USER INFORMATION (INCLUDING, FOR EXAMPLE, VEHICLE LOCATION, VEHICLE SPEED, AND VEHICLE STATUS) BEING GATHERED AND STORED BY GOOGLE AND ITS SERVICE PROVIDERS, AND DISCLOSE CERTAIN POSSIBLE RISKS ASSOCIATED WITH THE USE OF ANDROID AUTO, INCLUDING THE POTENTIAL FOR DRIVER DISTRACTION. SEE GOOGLE’S PRIVACY POLICY FOR DETAILS REGARDING GOOGLE’S USE AND HANDLING OF DATA UPLOADED BY ANDROID AUTO.
DISCLAIMER OF WARRANTIES; LIMITATION ON LIABILITY

YOU EXPRESSLY ACKNOWLEDGE AND AGREE THAT USE OF APPLE CARPLAY OR ANDROID AUTO ("THE APPLICATIONS") IS AT YOUR SOLE RISK AND THAT THE ENTIRE RISK AS TO SATISFACTORY QUALITY, PERFORMANCE, ACCURACY AND EFFORT IS WITH YOU TO THE MAXIMUM EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, AND THAT THE APPLICATIONS AND INFORMATION ON THE APPLICATIONS IS PROVIDED "AS IS" AND "AS AVAILABLE," WITH ALL FAULTS AND WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, AND HONDA HEREBY DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES AND CONDITIONS WITH RESPECT TO THE APPLICATIONS AND INFORMATION ON THE APPLICATIONS, EITHER EXPRESS, IMPLIED OR STATUTORY, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES AND/OR CONDITIONS OF MERCHANTABILITY, SATISFACTORY QUALITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, ACCURACY, QUIET ENJOYMENT, AND NON-INFRINGEMENT OF THIRD PARTY RIGHTS. NO ORAL OR WRITTEN INFORMATION OR ADVICE GIVEN BY HONDA OR AN AUTHORIZED REPRESENTATIVE SHALL CREATE A WARRANTY. AS EXAMPLES, AND WITHOUT LIMITATION, HONDA DISCLAIMS ANY WARRANTY REGARDING THE ACCURACY OF DATA PROVIDED BY THE APPLICATIONS, SUCH AS THE ACCURACY OF DIRECTIONS, ESTIMATED TRAVEL TIME, SPEED LIMITS, ROAD CONDITIONS, NEWS, WEATHER, TRAFFIC, OR OTHER CONTENT PROVIDED BY APPLE, GOOGLE, THEIR AFFILIATES, OR THIRD PARTY PROVIDERS; HONDA DOES NOT GUARANTEE AGAINST LOSS OF APPLICATION DATA, WHICH MAY BE LOST AT ANY TIME; HONDA DOES NOT GUARANTEE THAT THE APPLICATIONS OR ANY SERVICES PROVIDED THROUGH THEM WILL BE PROVIDED AT ALL TIMES OR THAT ANY OR ALL SERVICES WILL BE AVAILABLE AT ANY PARTICULAR TIME OR LOCATION. FOR EXAMPLE, SERVICES MAY BE SUSPENDED OR INTERRUPTED WITHOUT NOTICE FOR REPAIR, MAINTENANCE, SECURITY FIXES, UPDATES, ETC., SERVICES MAY BE UNAVAILABLE IN YOUR AREA OR LOCATION, ETC. IN ADDITION, YOU UNDERSTAND THAT CHANGES IN THIRD PARTY TECHNOLOGY OR GOVERNMENT REGULATION MAY RENDER THE SERVICES AND/OR APPLICATIONS OBSOLETE AND/OR UNUSABLE. TO THE EXTENT NOT PROHIBITED BY LAW, IN NO EVENT SHALL HONDA OR ITS AFFILIATES BE LIABLE FOR PERSONAL INJURY, OR ANY INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, INDIRECT OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES WHATSOEVER, INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, DAMAGES FOR LOSS OF PROFITS, CORRUPTION OR LOSS OF DATA, FAILURE TO TRANSMIT OR RECEIVE ANY DATA, BUSINESS INTERRUPTION OR ANY OTHER COMMERCIAL DAMAGES OR LOSSES, ARISING OUT OF OR RELATED TO THE APPLICATIONS OR YOUR USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THE APPLICATIONS OR INFORMATION ON THE APPLICATIONS, HOWEVER CAUSED, REGARDLESS OF THE THEORY OF LIABILITY (CONTRACT, TORT OR OTHERWISE) AND EVEN IF HONDA WERE ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. SOME STATES AND JURISDICTIONS DISALLOW THE EXCLUSION OR LIMITATION OF LIABILITY FOR DAMAGES. SO THESE LIMITATIONS AND EXCLUSIONS MAY NOT APPLY TO YOU. IN NO EVENT SHALL HONDA'S TOTAL LIABILITY TO YOU FOR ALL DAMAGES (OTHER THAN AS MAY BE REQUIRED BY APPLICABLE LAW IN CASES INVOLVING PERSONAL INJURY) EXCEED THE AMOUNT OF FIVE DOLLARS ($5.00). THE FOREGOING LIMITATIONS WILL APPLY EVEN IF THE ABOVE STATED REMEDY FAILS OF ITS ESSENTIAL PURPOSE.
About Open Source Licenses

To see the open source license information, follow these steps.
1. Select.
2. Select Settings.
3. Select System.
4. Select About.
5. Select Legal Information.
License Information*

■ DOLBY DIGITAL

Manufactured under license from Dolby Laboratories. Dolby, Dolby Audio, Pro Logic, and the double-D symbol are trademarks of Dolby Laboratories.

■ DTS

For DTS patents, see http://patents.dts.com. Manufactured under license from DTS Licensing Limited. DTS, DTS-HD, the Symbol, & DTS and the Symbol together are registered trademarks of DTS, Inc. ©DTS, Inc. All Rights Reserved.

* Not available on all models
Bluetooth

The Bluetooth® word mark and logos are registered trademarks owned by Bluetooth SIG, Inc. and any use of such marks by DENSO CORPORATION is under license. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.

Windows Media

This product is protected by certain intellectual property rights of Microsoft. Use or distribution of such technology outside of this product is prohibited without a license from Microsoft.
Apple

“Made for iPod,” “Made for iPhone,” and “Made for iPad” mean that an electronic accessory has been designed to connect specifically to iPod, iPhone, or iPad, respectively, and has been certified by the developer to meet Apple performance standards. Apple is not responsible for the operation of this device or its compliance with safety and regulatory standards. Please note that the use of this accessory with iPod, iPhone, or iPad may affect wireless performance.

Apple, the Apple Logo, iPad, iPhone, iPod, iPod classic, iPod nano, and iPod touch are trademarks of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries. iPad Air, iPad mini, iPad Pro, Apple CarPlay, and Lightning are trademarks of Apple Inc. App Store is a service mark of Apple Inc.
General Information on the Audio System

License Information

MPEG

Mpeg4 Visual

THIS PRODUCT IS LICENSED UNDER THE MPEG-4 VISUAL PATENT PORTFOLIO LICENSE FOR THE PERSONAL AND NON-COMMERCIAL USE OF A CONSUMER FOR (i) ENCODING VIDEO IN COMPLIANCE WITH THE MPEG-4 VISUALA STANDARD ("MPEG-4 VIDEO") AND/OR (ii) DECODING MPEG-4 VIDEO THAT WAS ENCODED BY A CONSUMER ENGAGED IN A PERSONAL AND NONCOMMERCIAL ACTIVITY AND/OR WAS OBTAINED FROM A VIDEO PROVIDER LICENSED BY MPEG LA TO PROVIDE MPEG-4 VIDEO. NO LICENSE IS GRANTED OR SHALL BE IMPLIED FOR ANY OTHER USE. ADDITIONAL INFORMATION INCLUDING THAT RELATING TO PROMOTIONAL, INTERNAL AND COMMERCIAL USES AND LICENSING MAY BE OBTAINED FROM MPEG LA, LLC. SEE HTTP://WWW.MPEGLA.COM.

VC-1

THIS PRODUCT IS LICENSED UNDER THE VC-1 PATENT PORTFOLIO LICENSE FOR THE PERSONAL AND NON-COMMERCIAL USE OF A CONSUMER TO (i) ENCODE VIDEO IN COMPLIANCE WITH THE VC-1 STANDARD ("VC-1 VIDEO") AND/OR (ii) DECODE VC-1 VIDEO THAT WAS ENCODED BY A CONSUMER ENGAGED IN A PERSONAL AND NON-COMMERCIAL ACTIVITY AND/OR WAS OBTAINED FROM A VIDEO PROVIDER LICENSED TO PROVIDE VC-1 VIDEO. NO LICENSE IS GRANTED OR SHALL BE IMPLIED FOR ANY OTHER USE. ADDITIONAL INFORMATION MAY BE OBTAINED FROM MPEG LA, L.L.C. SEE HTTP://WWW.MPEGLA.COM.
General Information on the Audio System

License Information

AVC/H.264
THIS PRODUCT IS LICENSED UNDER THE AVC PATENT PORTFOLIO LICENSE FOR THE PERSONAL AND NONCOMMERCIAL USE OF A CONSUMER TO (i) ENCODE VIDEO IN COMPLIANCE WITH THE AVC STANDARD (“AVC VIDEO”) AND/OR (ii) DECODE AVC VIDEO THAT WAS ENCODED BY A CONSUMER ENGAGED IN A PERSONAL AND NON-COMMERCIAL ACTIVITY AND/OR WAS OBTAINED FROM A VIDEO PROVIDER LICENSED TO PROVIDE AVC VIDEO. NO LICENSE IS GRANTED OR SHALL BE IMPLIED FOR ANY OTHER USE. ADDITIONAL INFORMATION MAY BE OBTAINED FROM MPEG LA, L.L.C. SEE HTTP://WWW.MPEGLA.COM.

■ SDHC Memory Card
microSDHC Logo is a trademark of SD-3C, LLC.
Blu-ray/DVD Rear Entertainment System*

Rear seat passengers can enjoy a completely separate entertainment source than front passengers, including movies, games, and other audio choices.

Blu-ray/DVD Rear Entertainment System*

Blu-ray Disc™, Blu-ray™, and the logos are trademarks of the Blu-ray Disc Association.

BD-XL, BD-Live, Blu-ray 3D, and Ultra HD Blu-ray are not supported.

CAUTION: Radio Frequency Radiation Exposure The Rear Entertainment System remote complies with FCC radiation exposure limits set forth for an uncontrolled environment and meets the FCC radio frequency (RF) Exposure Guidelines. The Rear Entertainment System remote should be kept at least 7.9 inch (20 cm) or more away from a person’s body when operated.

* Not available on all models
Wireless Headphones

The rear seat passengers can listen to audio from the Blu-ray/DVD rear entertainment system by a wireless headphone that comes with your vehicle.

To turn on the switch: Press the (power) button at the right earpiece. The indicator comes on.

To adjust the volume: Turn the dial at the right earpiece.

For DTS patents, see http://patents.dts.com. Manufactured under license from DTS Licensing Limited. DTS, the Symbol, & DTS and the Symbol together are registered trademarks, and DTS Headphone:X is a trademark of DTS, Inc. © DTS, Inc. All Rights Reserved.

DTS Headphone:X™

Your vehicle comes with two wireless headphones.

Wear the headphone correctly with the earpiece marked with L goes to your left ear and R goes to your right ear.

Wearing the headphone backward may affect the audio reception.

You can put the headphones into the front seat-back upper pockets, and the remote into the front passenger’s seat-back lower pocket as shown below.
Auxiliary Console Panels

Headphone connectors for the Blu-ray/DVD rear entertainment system are on the both sides of the third row outer seats.

■ Headphone Connectors

A headphone can also be used by connecting to either auxiliary console panel. There are two headphone connectors for the third row passengers. Each connector has its own volume control.
**HDMI™ Port**

There is an HDMI™ port on the back of the center console compartment. The Blu-ray/DVD rear entertainment system will accept HDMI™ port from video games and video equipment which are equipped with an HDMI™ port. Open the cover and insert the cable.

![HDMI Port](image)

---

**Overhead Screen**

Pull down the screen to the first or second detent until it latches.

![Overhead Screen](image)
Operating the System

To operate the system, set the power mode to ON or ACCESSORY. Select **Rear Entertainment**, then **Rear** in the audio/information screen to turn on the system. You can also turn on the system by pressing the **(power)** button on the remote.

To display the home screen on the overhead screen, press the **(home)** button on the remote. From this screen, you can use various apps or settings.

---

**Home Screen**

To change the order of icons, press and hold the **ENTER** button on the remote.
Playing a DVD/Blu-ray™

To play a DVD or Blu-ray™, insert a DVD or Blu-ray™ into the lower slot of the front audio system, and select [Rear] in the audio/information screen.

The system automatically starts the DVD or Blu-ray™. DVD or Blu-ray™ is available for the rear seat passenger only.

### System Controls

- **(Power) Button**: Press to turn the Blu-ray/DVD rear entertainment system on or off.
- **(Home) Button**: Press to display the home screen.
- **(Back) Button**: Press to go back to the previous display or operation.
- **Red/Green/Yellow/Blue Button**: Press to use on a DVD or Blu-ray™ menu.
- **(Play/Pause) Button**: Press to pause or play a DVD or Blu-ray™.
- **MENU Button**: Press to display the menu items.
- **Enter Button**: Use ▼, ▲, ◄, or ► to highlight a menu item, and press the ENTER button to make a selection.
- **(Light) Button**: Press to illuminate the buttons for a few seconds.
- **(Stop) Button**: Press to stop a DVD or Blu-ray™.
Blu-ray/DVD Rear Entertainment System* ➤ Playing a DVD/Blu-ray™

### Features

#### Rear DVD or Blu-ray™ Menu

1. Press the **MENU** button on the remote to display the menu screen.
2. Select an item and then press the **ENTER** button on the remote.

The following items are available:
- **DVD Menu/Blu-ray Menu**: Displays the top menu of the DVD or Blu-ray™.
- **Aspect Ratio**: Selects an aspect ratio of the image.
  - **Setting the Aspect Ratio** P. 402
- **Brightness**: Adjusts the screen’s brightness.
- **Contrast**: Adjusts the screen’s contrast.
- **Root Menu**[^1^]: Displays the disc menu for the current playing title.
- **Pop-up Menu**[^2^]: Displays the menu of the Blu-ray™.
- **Player Options**: Displays while a DVD or Blu-ray™ is playing and changes the DVD or Blu-ray™ preferences.
  - **Setting the Player Options** P. 403

#### Setting the Aspect Ratio

1. Press the **MENU** button on the remote to display the menu screen.
2. Select **Aspect Ratio**.
3. Select the setting you want.
   - You can select the three options; normal, full, or zoom.

[^1^]: Appears only when you select the DVD source.
[^2^]: Appears only when you select the Blu-ray™ source.

---

[^1^]: Appears only when you select the DVD source.
[^2^]: Appears only when you select the Blu-ray™ source.
Setting the Player Options

1. Press the MENU button on the remote to display the menu screen.
2. Select Player Options.
3. Select an item and then press the ENTER button on the remote.

The following items are available:

- **Repeat**: Selects the repeat mode.
  - **Off**: Repeat mode is off.
  - **Title** (only for DVD-V, AVCREC and BDAV): Repeats the current title.
  - **Chapter** (only for DVD-V, AVCREC and BDAV): Repeats the current chapter.
  - **Program** (only for DVD-VR): Repeats the current program if the disc has the correspondence list.
  - **Playlist** (only for DVD-VR): Repeats the current playlist if the disc has the correspondence list.
  - **Entry Point** (only for DVD-VR): Repeats the current entry point if the disc has the correspondence list.

- **Subtitles and Audio**: Selects the language of the DVD subtitle and audio.
- **Angle**: Selects the angle of the scene shot with multiple cameras.
- **Search**: Skips to a title or chapter.
  - **Searching a title/chapter/program/playlist** P. 404
- **Change Order** (only for DVD-VR, AVCREC and BDAV): Changes the order of the program or playlist.
- **Default Language**: Selects the language for the menus, audio, and subtitle of the DVD or Blu-ray™.
- **Sound Leveling**: Adjusts the range of the loud and soft sound. Select **Auto**, **On** or **Off**.
- **Secondary Audio** (only for BDMV): Turns on and off the function that plays the available commentary or narrator audio along with the main disc track.
- **Onscreen Remote**: Displays the on-screen buttons for the remote.
■ Searching a title/chapter/program/playlist
1. Press the MENU button on the remote to display the menu screen.
2. Select Player Options.
3. Select Search.
4. Enter a number of a title, chapter, program or playlist to skip, and then select enter.

The following items are available:
• Title: Skips to a title you specify.
• Chapter: Skips to a chapter you specify.
• Program (only for DVD-VR): Skips to a program you specify while playing with the program list.
• Playlist (only for DVD-VR): Skips to a playlist you specify while playing with the playlist.
System Settings

1. Press the (home) button on the remote.
2. Select Settings and then press the ENTER button on the remote to display the Settings screen.
3. Select an item.

The following items are available:

- **Display**: Adjusts the screen’s preferences.
  - Adjusting the screen P. 406
- **Language**: Sets the system language used on all screens.
  - Setting the Language P. 406
- **Headphones**: Sets the surround of the wireless headphones.
  - Setting the Headphones P. 406
- **Accessibility**: With On selected, the Blu-ray/DVD rear entertainment system provides audio feedback through the headphones to assist the user with on-screen operations.
- **About My System**: Displays the information of the Blu-ray/DVD rear entertainment system.
- **System Reset**: Resets the Blu-ray/DVD rear entertainment system settings and erases all login information.

After you make all the adjustments, press the (back) or (home) button to return.
■ Adjusting the screen
1. Press the (home) button on the remote.
2. Select Settings and then press the ENTER button on the remote to display the Settings screen.
3. Select Display and then press the ENTER button on the remote.
4. Select the setting you want.

The following items are available:
- Brightness: Adjusts the screen’s brightness.
- Contrast: Adjusts the screen’s contrast.
- Tint: Adjusts the screen’s hue.
- Color: Adjusts the screen’s color strength.

■ Setting the Language
1. Press the (home) button on the remote.
2. Select Settings and then press the ENTER button on the remote to display the Settings screen.
3. Select Language and then press the ENTER button on the remote.
4. Select the setting you want.
   - You can select the language from US English, UK English, Spanish, Canadian French, Arabic, or Korean.

■ Setting the Headphones
1. Press the (home) button on the remote.
2. Select Settings and then press the ENTER button on the remote to display the Settings screen.
3. Select Headphones and then press the ENTER button on the remote.
4. Select the setting you want.
   - You can select the options from Off or On. Select Off to disable the feature.
Front Control Panel Operation

You can operate the Blu-ray/DVD Rear Entertainment System (RES) from the audio/information screen.

Selecting the App using Front Control Panel

1. Select  
2. Select Rear Entertainment.
3. Select Rear if the power is off.
   - If you select this icon while the system is operating, the system is turned off.
4. Select the app you want to use.

The following items are available on the audio/information screen:

- **Rear**: Turns the system on or off.
- **Now Playing**: Displays the current playing app.
- **Rear Apps**: Displays the home screen.
- **CabinTalk**: Displays the CabinTalk screen.
- **Remote**: Disables controls from the remote.
- **Settings**: Changes the system settings.

* Not available on all models
Rear System Setup

- **Manage Apps**
  Shows or hides app icons on the home screen.
  1. Select 
  2. Select Rear Entertainment.
  3. Select Settings.
  4. Select Manage Apps.
  5. Select Available or Hidden.
  6. Select Save.
Setting the DVD or Blu-ray™ Menu

Select Options while a DVD or Blu-ray™ is playing.

The following items are available on the audio/information screen:
- **Subtitles and Audio**
  - Setting the Player Options P. 403
- **Repeat**
  - Setting the Player Options P. 403
- **Change Order**
  - Setting the Player Options P. 403
- **Autoplay**: Turns on and off to automatically play a DVD or Blu-ray™ disc.

Depending on the disc you insert, some items may not be displayed.
Playing Apps

You can play apps such as USB, iPod, HDMI® and more from the rear seats.

Streaming Applications

Your vehicle’s Blu-ray/DVD rear entertainment system comes pre-loaded with audio and video streaming applications.

Before launching any application, first confirm that your vehicle’s date and time are set correctly. Having the incorrect date and time settings may prevent your applications from operating correctly.

You can set the date and time on the front display in the following steps.
Select Home ➞ Settings ➞ Date & Time ➞ Set Date & Time

Your vehicle is equipped with the ability to apply software updates. When a software update is provided to your vehicle, please accept the update and allow the installation to complete.

Disclaimer:
The video and audio quality of your streaming applications will depend on your internet connection. If you experience lagging or disconnections, check your connection and confirm it is operational.
## System Controls

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Button</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(Power) Button</td>
<td>Press to turn the Blu-ray/DVD rear entertainment system on or off.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Home) Button</td>
<td>Press to display the home screen.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Back) Button</td>
<td>Press to go back to the previous display or operation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Play/Pause) Button</td>
<td>Press to pause or play a video or audio file.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Buttons</td>
<td>Press to change videos or audio files.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Button</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(Light) Button</td>
<td>Press to illuminate the buttons for a few seconds.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MENU Button</td>
<td>Press to display the menu items.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Stop) Button</td>
<td>Press to stop a video or audio file.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Use ▼, ▲, or ▶ to highlight a menu item, and press the ENTER button to make a selection.
Playing a Disc in the Rear

To play a disc, press the [H] (home) button on the remote, and then select the Blu-ray Disc icon on the overhead screen.

When you press the MENU button on the remote while the CD is playing, the audio menu appears on the overhead screen.

The available options appear on the overhead screen are repeat, random, brightness, and contrast.

Playing an iPod and a USB Flash Drive in the Rear

To play an iPod and a USB flash drive, press the [H] (home) button on the remote, and then select the USB icon on the overhead screen.

When you press the MENU button on the remote while the iPod or USB flash drive is playing, the audio menu appears on the overhead screen.

The available options appear on the overhead screen are repeat, random, aspect ratio, brightness, and contrast.

System Controls

You can also operate the Blu-ray/DVD rear entertainment system on the audio/information screen.
Playing a Video Using the HDMI™

To play videos from an HDMI™-compatible device, connect the device using an HDMI™ cable.

 Press the (home) button on the remote, and then select the HDMI icon on the overhead screen.

When you press the MENU button on the remote while the video using the HDMI™ is playing, the audio menu appears on the overhead screen.

The available options appear on the overhead screen are aspect ratio, brightness, and contrast.
How Much Farther?™*

Displays the current location temperature, time remaining, distance traveled, and distance remaining with an animation.

To play the app, press the (home) button on the remote, and then select the **How Much Farther?** icon on the overhead screen.

You can select a background from five types using ▼ or ▶ on the remote, and bring some items (at top of the screen) up and down using ▲ or ▼.

Media Servers

Plays a stored video or audio file from a connected device via Wi-Fi. Connect the device using Wi-Fi.

**Wi-Fi Connection** P. 354

Press the (home) button on the remote, and then select the **Media Servers** icon on the overhead screen.

The operation are the same as the USB mode.

* Not available on all models
Audio Sources for Front and Rear Seats

The table shows the possible audio source combinations of the front audio system and Blu-ray/DVD rear entertainment system’s simultaneous use.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Front</th>
<th>AM/FM Radio</th>
<th>SiriusXM® Radio</th>
<th>CD DVD*1</th>
<th>Blu-ray™*1</th>
<th>USB iPod</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Rear</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CD DVD*1</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Blu-ray™*1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>USB iPod</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HDMI™*1</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*1: The front seat passengers are only able to hear the DVD’s, Blu-ray™’s or HDMI™’s sound from the front speakers.

Yes: These audio sources are simultaneously playable. When listening to same source in both the front and rear, the playing channel or track will also be the same for each.
No: These audio sources are not simultaneously playable.
Blu-ray/DVD Rear Entertainment System

Playable Discs

The discs that come with these labels can be played in your vehicle’s Blu-ray/DVD rear entertainment system. Also look for the region code of 1, ALL, © or ™ on the package or jacket on the disc. DVD-ROMs and Blu-ray™ ROMs (BD ROM) are not playable in this unit.

The disc packages or jackets should have one of these marks.

Also includes:

This product incorporates copyright protection technology that is protected by U.S. patents and other intellectual property rights. This item incorporates copy protection technology that is protected by U.S. patents and other intellectual property rights of Rovi Corporation. Reverse engineering and disassembly are prohibited.

For DTS patents, see http://patents.dts.com.
Manufactured under license from DTS Licensing Limited. DTS, DTS-HD, the Symbol, & DTS and the Symbol together are registered trademarks of DTS, Inc. ©DTS, Inc. All Rights Reserved.

Manufactured under license from Dolby Laboratories. Dolby, Dolby Audio, Pro Logic, and the double-D symbol are trademarks of Dolby Laboratories.


DVD is a trademark of DVD Format/Logo Licensing Corporation.
Java
Oracle, Java and all Java-based trademarks and logos are trademarks or registered trademarks of Oracle and/or its affiliates. Other names may be trademarks of their respective owners.

END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT

BEFORE USING THIS IN-CAR BLU-RAY PRODUCT, PLEASE READ ALL OF THE FOLLOWING TERMS AND CONDITIONS OF THIS END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT ("Agreement") CAREFULLY. THIS AGREEMENT IS A LEGALLY BINDING CONTRACT BETWEEN END USER ("you") AND PANASONIC THAT SETS FORTH THE TERMS AND CONDITIONS THAT GOVERN YOUR USE OF ORACLE JAVA ME MEDIA PACK FOR CDC (the "program") IMPLEMENTED IN THIS IN-CAR BLU-RAY PRODUCT.

(1) Java Technology Restrictions. You are prohibited from creating, modifying, changing the behavior of classes, interfaces, or subpackages that are in any way identified as "Java", "Javax", "Sun" or similar convention as specified by Oracle in any naming convention designation.

(2) Trademarks and Logos. You shall acknowledge that Oracle owns the Java trademark and all Java-related trademarks, logos and icons including the Coffee Cup and Duke ("Java Marks") and shall agree to: (a) comply with the Java Trademark Guidelines at http://www.oracle.com/us/legal/third-party-trademarks/index.html; (b) not do anything harmful to or inconsistent with Oracle’s rights in the Java Marks; and (c) assist Oracle in protecting those rights, including assigning to Oracle any rights acquired by you in any Java Mark.

(3) Third Party Code. You shall read additional copyright notices and license terms applicable to portions of the programs are set forth below.
COMPONENTS

The following software (or certain identified files distributed with the software) may be included in this product. Unless otherwise specified, the software identified in this file is licensed under the licenses described below. The disclaimers and copyright notices provided are based on information made available to Oracle by the third party licensors listed.

3DES

Des3Cipher - the triple-DES encryption method

Copyright (C) 1996 by Jef Poskanzer <jef@mail.acme.com>. All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

1. Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
2. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE AUTHOR AND CONTRIBUTORS "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE AUTHOR OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

Visit the ACME Labs Java page for up-to-date versions of this and other fine Java utilities: http://www.acme.com/java/
AES

Cryptix General License

Copyright (c) 1995-2005 The Cryptix Foundation Limited. All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

1. Redistributions of source code must retain the copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
2. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE CRYPTIX FOUNDATION LIMITED AND CONTRIBUTORS "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED.

IN NO EVENT SHALL THE CRYPTIX FOUNDATION LIMITED OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.
Blu-ray/DVD Rear Entertainment System

Playable Discs

**DES**

**DES**

DesCipher - the DES encryption method

@@ The meat of this code is by Dave Zimmerman <dzimm@widget.com>, and is:

Copyright (c) 1996 Widget Workshop, Inc. All Rights Reserved.

Permission to use, copy, modify, and distribute this software and its documentation for NON-COMMERCIAL or COMMERCIAL purposes and without fee is hereby granted, provided that this copyright notice is kept intact.

WIDGET WORKSHOP MAKES NO REPRESENTATIONS OR WARRANTIES ABOUT THE SUITABILITY OF THE SOFTWARE, EITHER EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, OR NON-INFRINGEMENT. WIDGET WORKSHOP SHALL NOT BE LIABLE FOR ANY DAMAGES SUFFERED BY LICENSEE AS A RESULT OF USING, MODIFYING OR DISTRIBUTING THIS SOFTWARE OR ITS DERIVATIVES.

THIS SOFTWARE IS NOT DESIGNED OR INTENDED FOR USE OR RESALE AS ON-LINE CONTROL EQUIPMENT IN HAZARDOUS ENVIRONMENTS REQUIRING FAIL-SAFE PERFORMANCE, SUCH AS IN THE OPERATION OF NUCLEAR FACILITIES, AIRCRAFT NAVIGATION OR COMMUNICATION SYSTEMS, AIR TRAFFIC CONTROL, DIRECT LIFE SUPPORT MACHINES, OR WEAPONS SYSTEMS, IN WHICH THE FAILURE OF THE SOFTWARE COULD LEAD DIRECTLY TO DEATH, PERSONAL INJURY, OR SEVERE PHYSICAL OR ENVIRONMENTAL DAMAGE (“HIGH RISK ACTIVITIES”). WIDGET WORKSHOP SPECIFICALLY DISCLAIMS ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTY OF FITNESS FOR HIGH RISK ACTIVITIES.

@@ The rest of the code is:

Copyright (C) 1996 by Jef Poskanzer <jef@mail.acme.com>. All rights reserved.
Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

1. Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
2. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE AUTHOR AND CONTRIBUTORS "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE AUTHOR OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

Visit the ACME Labs Java page for up-to-date versions of this and other fine Java utilities: http://www.acme.com/java/

JPEG library

The authors make NO WARRANTY or representation, either express or implied, with respect to this software, its quality, accuracy, merchantability, or fitness for a particular purpose. This software is provided "AS IS", and you, its user, assume the entire risk as to its quality and accuracy.

This software is copyright (C) 1991-1998, Thomas G. Lane.
Blu-ray/DVD Rear Entertainment System

Playable Discs

zlib 1.1.3

@@@ Acknowledgments:

Oracle gratefully acknowledges the contributions of Jean-loup Gailly and Mark Adler in creating the zlib general purpose compression library which is used in this product.

@@@ Copyright notice:

(C) 1995-1998 Jean-loup Gailly and Mark Adler

This software is provided 'as-is', without any express or implied warranty. In no event will the authors be held liable for any damages arising from the use of this software.

Permission is granted to anyone to use this software for any purpose, including commercial applications, and to alter it and redistribute it freely, subject to the following restrictions:

1. The origin of this software must not be misrepresented; you must not claim that you wrote the original software. If you use this software in a product, an acknowledgment in the product documentation would be appreciated but is not required.
2. Altered source versions must be plainly marked as such, and must not be misrepresented as being the original software.
3. This notice may not be removed or altered from any source distribution.

Jean-loup Gailly         Mark Adler
jloup@gzip.org           madler@alumni.caltech.edu

If you use the zlib library in a product, we would appreciate *not* receiving lengthy legal documents to sign. The sources are provided for free but without warranty of any kind. The library has been entirely written by Jean-loup Gailly and Mark Adler; it does not include third-party code.
If you redistribute modified sources, we would appreciate that you include in the file ChangeLog history information documenting your changes.

(4) Others.
(i) You shall not install the programs separately and independently from this Blu-ray product.
(ii) You agree not to rely on the future availability of any programs or services which Oracle will provide.

(5) ENTIRE AGREEMENT
You agree that this Agreement is the complete agreement pertaining to the subject matter hereof (including references to information contained in a URL) and this Agreement supersedes all prior or contemporaneous written or oral agreements or representations existing between you and Panasonic with respect to such subject matter. If any term of this Agreement is found to be invalid or unenforceable, the remaining provisions will remain effective. Panasonic’s failure to enforce any right or provisions in this Agreement will not constitute a waiver of such provision, or any other provision of this Agreement.
Blu-ray/DVD Rear Entertainment System

Features

■ HDMI
HDMI, the HDMI Logo, and High-Definition Multimedia Interface are trademarks or registered trademarks of HDMI Licensing LLC in the United States and other countries.

■ Cinavia
This product uses Cinavia technology to limit the use of unauthorized copies of some commercially-produced film and videos and their soundtracks. When a prohibited use of an unauthorized copy is detected, a message will be displayed and playback or copying will be interrupted.

More information about Cinavia technology is provided at Cinavia Online Consumer Information Center at http://www.cinavia.com. To request additional information about Cinavia by mail, send a postcard with your mailing address to: Cinavia Consumer Information Center, P.O. Box 86851, San Diego, CA, 92138, USA.

This product incorporates proprietary technology under license from Verance Corporation and is protected by U.S. Patent 7,369,677 and other U.S. and worldwide patents issued and pending as well as copyright and trade secret protection for certain aspects of such technology. Cinavia is a trademark of Verance Corporation. Copyright 2004-2014 Verance Corporation. All rights reserved by Verance. Reverse engineering or disassembly is prohibited.
■ MPEG

THIS PRODUCT IS LICENSED UNDER THE AVC PATENT PORTFOLIO LICENSE FOR THE PERSONAL AND NON-COMMERCIAL USE OF A CONSUMER TO (i) ENCODE VIDEO IN COMPLIANCE WITH THE AVC STANDARD (“AVC VIDEO”) AND/OR (ii) DECODE AVC VIDEO THAT WAS ENCODED BY A CONSUMER ENGAGED IN A PERSONAL AND NON-COMMERCIAL ACTIVITY AND/OR WAS OBTAINED FROM A VIDEO PROVIDER LICENSED TO PROVIDE AVC VIDEO. NO LICENSE IS GRANTED OR SHALL BE IMPLIED FOR ANY OTHER USE. ADDITIONAL INFORMATION MAY BE OBTAINED FROM MPEG LA, L.L.C. SEE HTTP://WWW.MPEGLA.COM.

THIS PRODUCT IS LICENSED UNDER THE VC-1 PATENT PORTFOLIO LICENSE FOR THE PERSONAL AND NON-COMMERCIAL USE OF A CONSUMER TO (i) ENCODE VIDEO IN COMPLIANCE WITH THE VC-1 STANDARD (“VC-1 VIDEO”) AND/OR (ii) DECODE VC-1 VIDEO THAT WAS ENCODED BY A CONSUMER ENGAGED IN A PERSONAL AND NON-COMMERCIAL ACTIVITY AND/OR WAS OBTAINED FROM A VIDEO PROVIDER LICENSED TO PROVIDE VC-1 VIDEO. NO LICENSE IS GRANTED OR SHALL BE IMPLIED FOR ANY OTHER USE. ADDITIONAL INFORMATION MAY BE OBTAINED FROM MPEG LA, L.L.C. SEE HTTP://WWW.MPEGLA.COM.

This product is protected by certain intellectual property rights of Microsoft Corporation and third parties. Use or distribution of such technology outside of this product is prohibited without a license from Microsoft or an authorized Microsoft subsidiary and third parties.

This product is licensed under the AVC patent portfolio license and VC-1 patent portfolio license for the personal use of a consumer or other uses in which it does not receive remuneration to (i) encode video in compliance with the AVC Standard and VC-1 Standard (“AVC/VC-1 Video”) and/or (ii) decode AVC/VC-1 Video that was encoded by a consumer engaged in a personal activity and/or was obtained from a video provider licensed to provide AVC/VC-1 Video.

No license is granted or shall be implied for any other use. Additional information may be obtained from MPEG LA, L.L.C. See http://www.mpeglacom.
OSS
This product incorporates the following software:
(1) The software developed by, or developed for, Panasonic Corporation ("Panasonic"),
(2) The software owned by third party and licensed to Panasonic,
(3) The software licensed under the GNU GENERAL PUBLIC LICENSE, Version 2 ("GPL"),
(4) The software licensed under the GNU LESSER GENERAL PUBLIC LICENSE, Version 2.1 ("LGPL"), and/or
(5) Open sourced software licensed under terms and conditions other than GPL or LGPL.

For the software classified as (3) or (4) above, please refer to the terms and conditions of GPL and LGPL at the websites listed below:
http://www.gnu.org/licenses/old-licenses/gpl-2.0.html
http://www.gnu.org/licenses/old-licenses/lgpl-2.1.html

The software classified as (3) and (4) above are copyrighted by multiple people. Please refer to the websites below regarding the copyright notices of those people.

http://www.hondaopensource2.com/17M_BDP/

At least three (3) years from delivery of products, Panasonic will give to any third party who contacts us at the Contact Information provided below, for a charge no more than our cost of physically performing source code distribution, a complete machine-readable copy of the source code corresponding to the GPL/LGPL Software.

Please note that we are unable to answer any queries regarding source code details, etc.

[Contact Information]
Engineering Administration Group Manager Panasonic Corporation, Automotive Systems Company, 4261 Ikonobe-cho, Tsuzuki-ku, Yokohama, Kanagawa 224-8520, Japan
Furthermore, source code corresponding to the GPL/LGPL Software listed above is freely available to you and any member of the public at the websites listed below:

http://www.hondaopensource2.com/17M_BDP/

The software classified as (5) above contains various open sourced software ("OSS") including the following software:
LICENSE ISSUES

The OpenSSL toolkit stays under a dual license, i.e. both the conditions of the OpenSSL License and the original SSLeay license apply to the toolkit. See below for the actual license texts. Actually both licenses are BSD-style Open Source licenses. In case of any license issues related to OpenSSL please contact openssl-core@openssl.org.

OpenSSL License

Copyright (c) 1998-2011 The OpenSSL Project. All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

1. Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.

2. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.

3. All advertising materials mentioning features or use of this software must display the following acknowledgment: "This product includes software developed by the OpenSSL Project for use in the OpenSSL Toolkit. (http://www.openssl.org/)

4. The names "OpenSSL Toolkit" and "OpenSSL Project" must not be used to * endorse or promote products derived from this software without prior written permission. For written permission, please contact openssl-core@openssl.org.

5. Products derived from this software may not be called "OpenSSL" nor may "OpenSSL" appear in their names without prior written permission of the OpenSSL Project.

6. Redistributions of any form whatsoever must retain the following acknowledgment: "This product includes software developed by the OpenSSL Project for use in the OpenSSL Toolkit (http://www.openssl.org/)

Continued 427
Blu-ray/DVD Rear Entertainment System

Features

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE OpenSSL PROJECT "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESSED OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE OpenSSL PROJECT OR ITS CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

This product includes cryptographic software written by Eric Young (eay@cryptsoft.com). This product includes software written by Tim Hudson (tjh@cryptsoft.com).

Original SSLeay License

Copyright (C) 1995-1998 Eric Young (eay@cryptsoft.com) All rights reserved.

This package is an SSL implementation written by Eric Young (eay@cryptsoft.com).
The implementation was written so as to conform with Netscapes SSL.

This library is free for commercial and non-commercial use as long as the following conditions are aheared to. The following conditions apply to all code found in this distribution, be it the RC4, RSA, Ihash, DES, etc., code; not just the SSL code. The SSL documentation included with this distribution is covered by the same copyright terms except that the holder is Tim Hudson (tjh@cryptsoft.com).

Copyright remains Eric Young's, and as such any Copyright notices in the code are not to be removed.
If this package is used in a product, Eric Young should be given attribution as the author of the parts of the library used.
This can be in the form of a textual message at program startup or in documentation (online or textual) provided with the package.
Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:
1. Redistributions of source code must retain the copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
2. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
3. All advertising materials mentioning features or use of this software must display the following acknowledgement:
   "This product includes cryptographic software written by Eric Young (eay@cryptsoft.com)"
   The word 'cryptographic' can be left out if the routines from the library being used are not cryptographic related :-).
4. If you include any Windows specific code (or a derivative thereof) from the apps directory (application code) you must include an acknowledgement: "This product includes software written by Tim Hudson (tjh@cryptsoft.com)"

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY ERIC YOUNG "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE AUTHOR OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

The license and distribution terms for any publically available version or derivative of this code cannot be changed. i.e. this code cannot simply be copied and put under another distribution license [including the GNU Public License.]
Blu-ray/DVD Rear Entertainment System

Playable Discs

Copyright (c) 1998, Regents of the University of California All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
Neither the name of the University of California, Berkeley nor the names of its contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE COPYRIGHT HOLDER OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.
tcp_wrappers

Copyright (c) 1998, Regents of the University of California All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
Neither the name of the University of California, Berkeley nor the names of its contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.
THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS AND CONTRIBUTORS "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE COPYRIGHT HOLDER OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.
Blu-ray/DVD Rear Entertainment System

Playable Discs

FreeType

Portions of this software are copyright (c) 1996-2002, 2006 The FreeType Project (www.freetype.org). All rights reserved.

Legal Terms

0. Definitions

Throughout this license, the terms 'package', 'FreeType Project', and 'FreeType archive' refer to the set of files originally distributed by the authors (David Turner, Robert Wilhelm, and Werner Lemberg) as the 'FreeType Project', be they named as alpha, beta or final release.

'You' refers to the licensee, or person using the project, where 'using' is a generic term including compiling the project's source code as well as linking it to form a 'program' or 'executable'. This program is referred to as 'a program using the FreeType engine'.

This license applies to all files distributed in the original FreeType Project, including all source code, binaries and documentation, unless otherwise stated in the file in its original, unmodified form as distributed in the original archive. If you are unsure whether or not a particular file is covered by this license, you must contact us to verify this.

The FreeType Project is copyright (C) 1996-2000 by David Turner, Robert Wilhelm, and Werner Lemberg. All rights reserved except as specified below.

1. No Warranty

THE FREETYPE PROJECT IS PROVIDED 'AS IS' WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EITHER EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. IN NO EVENT WILL ANY OF THE AUTHORS OR COPYRIGHT HOLDERS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DAMAGES CAUSED BY THE USE OR THE INABILITY TO USE, OF THE FREETYPE PROJECT.
2. Redistribution

This license grants a worldwide, royalty-free, perpetual and irrevocable right and license to use, execute, perform, compile, display, copy, create derivative works of, distribute and sublicense the FreeType Project (in both source and object code forms) and derivative works thereof for any purpose; and to authorize others to exercise some or all of the rights granted herein, subject to the following conditions:

- Redistribution of source code must retain this license file ('FTL.TXT') unaltered; any additions, deletions or changes to the original files must be clearly indicated in accompanying documentation. The copyright notices of the unaltered, original files must be preserved in all copies of source files.

- Redistribution in binary form must provide a disclaimer that states that the software is based in part of the work of the FreeType Team, in the distribution documentation. We also encourage you to put an URL to the FreeType web page in your documentation, though this isn’t mandatory.

These conditions apply to any software derived from or based on the FreeType Project, not just the unmodified files. If you use our work, you must acknowledge us. However, no fee need be paid to us.

3. Advertising

Neither the FreeType authors and contributors nor you shall use the name of the other for commercial, advertising, or promotional purposes without specific prior written permission.

We suggest, but do not require, that you use one or more of the following phrases to refer to this software in your documentation or advertising materials: ‘FreeType Project’, ‘FreeType Engine’, ‘FreeType library’, or ‘FreeType Distribution’.

As you have not signed this license, you are not required to accept it. However, as the FreeType Project is copyrighted material, only this license, or another one contracted with the authors, grants you the right to use, distribute, and modify it. Therefore, by using, distributing, or modifying the FreeType Project, you indicate that you understand and accept all the terms of this license.
4. Contacts

There are two mailing lists related to FreeType:

- freetype@nongnu.org Discusses general use and applications of FreeType, as well as future and wanted additions to the library and distribution. If you are looking for support, start in this list if you haven’t found anything to help you in the documentation.

- freetype-devel@nongnu.org Discusses bugs, as well as engine internals, design issues, specific licenses, porting, etc. Our home page can be found at

http://www.freetype.org

libjpeg

this software is based in part on the work of the Independent JPEG Group

Vera.ttf

Copyright (c) 2003 by Bitstream, Inc. All Rights Reserved. Bitstream Vera is a trademark of Bitstream, Inc.

Permission is hereby granted, free of charge, to any person obtaining a copy of the fonts accompanying this license ("Fonts") and associated documentation files (the "Font Software"), to reproduce and distribute the Font Software, including without limitation the rights to use, copy, merge, publish, distribute, and/or sell copies of the Font Software, and to permit persons to whom the Font Software is furnished to do so, subject to the following conditions:

The above copyright and trademark notices and this permission notice shall be included in all copies of one or more of the Font Software typefaces.

The Font Software may be modified, altered, or added to, and in particular the designs of glyphs or characters in the Fonts may be modified and additional glyphs or characters may be added to the Fonts, only if the fonts are renamed to names not containing either the words "Bitstream" or the word "Vera".
This License becomes null and void to the extent applicable to Fonts or Font Software that has been modified and is distributed under the "Bitstream Vera" names.

The Font Software may be sold as part of a larger software package but no copy of one or more of the Font Software typefaces may be sold by itself.

THE FONT SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED "AS IS", WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO ANY WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NONINFRINGEMENT OF COPYRIGHT, PATENT, TRADEMARK, OR OTHER RIGHT. IN NO EVENT SHALL BITSTREAM OR THE GNOME FOUNDATION BE LIABLE FOR ANY CLAIM, DAMAGES OR OTHER LIABILITY, INCLUDING ANY GENERAL, SPECIAL, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES, WHETHER IN AN ACTION OF CONTRACT, TORT OR OTHERWISE, ARISING FROM, OUT OF THE USE OR INABILITY TO USE THE FONT SOFTWARE OR FROM OTHER DEALINGS IN THE FONT SOFTWARE.

Except as contained in this notice, the names of Gnome, the Gnome Foundation, and Bitstream Inc., shall not be used in advertising or otherwise to promote the sale, use or other dealings in this Font Software without prior written authorization from the Gnome Foundation or Bitstream Inc., respectively. For further information, contact: fonts at gnome dot org.

libtiff

Copyright (c) 1988-1997 Sam Leffler
Copyright (c) 1991-1997 Silicon Graphics, Inc.

Permission to use, copy, modify, distribute, and sell this software and its documentation for any purpose is hereby granted without fee, provided that (i) the above copyright notices and this permission notice appear in all copies of the software and related documentation, and (ii) the names of Sam Leffler and Silicon Graphics may not be used in any advertising or publicity relating to the software without the specific, prior written permission of Sam Leffler and Silicon Graphics.
THE SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED "AS IS" AND WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS, IMPLIED OR OTHERWISE, INCLUDING WITHOUT LIMITATION, ANY WARRANTY OF MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. IN NO EVENT SHALL SAM LEFFLER OR SILICON GRAPHICS BE LIABLE FOR ANY SPECIAL, INCIDENTAL, INDIRECT OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES OF ANY KIND, OR ANY DAMAGES WHATSOEVER RESULTING FROM LOSS OF USE, DATA OR PROFITS, WHETHER OR NOT ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF DAMAGE, AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, ARISING OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE USE OR PERFORMANCE OF THIS SOFTWARE.

giflib

The GIFLIB distribution is Copyright (c) 1997 Eric S. Raymond

Permission is hereby granted, free of charge, to any person obtaining a copy of this software and associated documentation files (the "Software"), to deal in the Software without restriction, including without limitation the rights to use, copy, modify, merge, publish, distribute, sublicense, and/or sell copies of the Software, and to permit persons to whom the Software is furnished to do so, subject to the following conditions:

The above copyright notice and this permission notice shall be included in all copies or substantial portions of the Software.

THE SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED "AS IS", WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO THE WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NONINFRINGEMENT. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE AUTHORS OR COPYRIGHT HOLDERS BE LIABLE FOR ANY CLAIM, DAMAGES OR OTHER LIABILITY, WHETHER IN AN ACTION OF CONTRACT, TORT OR OTHERWISE, ARISING FROM, OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE SOFTWARE OR THE USE OR OTHER DEALINGS IN THE SOFTWARE.
**zlib**

**zlib License**

This software is provided 'as-is', without any express or implied warranty. In no event will the authors be held liable for any damages arising from the use of this software.

Permission is granted to anyone to use this software for any purpose, including commercial applications, and to alter it and redistribute it freely, subject to the following restrictions:

1. The origin of this software must not be misrepresented; you must not claim that you wrote the original software. If you use this software in a product, an acknowledgment in the product documentation would be appreciated but is not required.

2. Altered source versions must be plainly marked as such, and must not be misrepresented as being the original software.

3. This notice may not be removed or altered from any source distribution.

■ **FDA**

-Caution-

Use of controls or adjustments or performance of procedures other than those specified herein may result in hazardous radiation exposure.
Playable Disc Types

This unit is compatible with NTSC and PAL color TV systems. Use discs that are labeled as NTSC or PAL. Capability of this unit to play discs other than NTSC or PAL TV system (SECAM) is not guaranteed.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type and symbol of playable disc</th>
<th>Size/Playable Side</th>
<th>Max. play time</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DVD 12 cm/single-sided</td>
<td>Single layer</td>
<td>&lt;MPEG 2 standard&gt; 133 min.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Video 12 cm/Double-sided</td>
<td>Single layer</td>
<td>242 min.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Dual layer</td>
<td>266 min.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Dual layer</td>
<td>484 min.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Blu-ray Disc 12 cm/signal-side</td>
<td>Single layer</td>
<td>at 27 Mbps 123 min.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Dual layer</td>
<td>246 min.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Playable Disc Region Codes

Some DVD/Blu-ray™ discs have a region code such as 1, 2, and this number shows the region the disc can be played in. Playable disc regions are restricted depending on the map coverage areas. If you play other discs, Check Disc message is displayed. In addition, some discs that do not have a region code number may still have a region restriction and may not be played on this unit.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Symbol</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>Number of available soundtracks</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Number of available subtitles</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Number of angles</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:9</td>
<td>Selectable screen aspect ratios</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:3</td>
<td>(TV screen’s horizontal to vertical ratio)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ALL</td>
<td>Selectable region codes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>ALL: Region free</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ABC</td>
<td>A number (ex. 1): Particular region code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>ABC: Region free</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>An alphabet (ex. A): Particular region code</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For Dual Disc (double sided disc with both a DVD layer and a non-DVD layer), the DVD layer can be played as a Video DVD if the disc has the mark displayed on the right. Discs without the mark and the non-DVD layer are not supported, and operation cannot be guaranteed. In addition, the discs may be scratched when they are inserted or ejected.
### Recommended Discs

Compression video not supported, Compression audio specification are following.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Media</th>
<th>Playable Discs</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CD-R/CD-RW</td>
<td>CD-ROM Mode1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DVD-R/DVD-RW</td>
<td>CD-ROM Mode2 Form1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DVD+R/DVD+RW</td>
<td>DVD-ROM</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Media
- CD-R/CD-RW
- DVD-R/DVD-RW
- DVD+R/DVD+RW

#### Disc format
- CD-ROM Mode1
- CD-ROM Mode2 Form1
- DVD-ROM

#### File format
- ISO9660 Level 1 & 2
- Romeo, Joliet

#### Audio format
- MP3
- WMA
- AAC

#### Audio format specification
- MPEG-1 AUDIO LAYER3
- MPEG-2 AUDIO LAYER3
- MPEG-2.5 AUDIO LAYER3
- ISO9660 Level 1 & 2
- Romeo, Joliet
- Microsoft Windows Media Audio Ver7,8,9
- MPEG4-AAC
- m4a files created by iTunes (Apple)

#### Sampling frequency (kHz)
- MPEG-1: 32/44.1/48
- MPEG-2: 16/22.05/24
- MPEG-2.5: 8/11.025/12
- Exceptions not supported by DVD Player: 12/24

#### Bit rate [kbps]
- MPEG-1: 32/40/48/56/64/80/96/112/128/192/224/256/320
- MPEG-2: 8/16/24/32/40/48/64/80/96/128/144/224/256/320
- MPEG-2.5: 8/16/24/32/40/48/56/64/80/96/112/128/144/160
- Exceptions not supported by DVD Player: 24/224/384

#### File extension
- .mp3/.MP3
- .wma/.WMA
- .m4a/.M4A

Large files may take longer to change audio or fast-forward/fast-rewind.

Some CD-R/CD-RW/DVD-R/DVD-RW may not be read due to the discs' encoding properties. Use discs recorded with disc-at-once or track-at-once for this unit.

“AVCHD Progressive” and the “AVCHD Progressive” logo are trademarks of Panasonic Corporation and Sony Corporation.
## DVD or Blu-ray™ Player Error Messages

If a disc error occurs, you may see the following error messages.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Error Message in Audio/Information Screen</th>
<th>Error Message in Overhead Screen</th>
<th>Cause</th>
<th>Solution</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Problem ejecting disc from the player. Contact Honda dealer to fix this problem.</td>
<td>Problem ejecting disc from the player. Contact Honda dealer to fix this problem.</td>
<td>Disc stuck in player</td>
<td>• Contact a dealer and the player needs to be replaced.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>There is a problem with the player. Eject and re-insert the disc. If this does not work, try another disc. If the error continues, contact Honda dealer.</td>
<td>There seems to be a problem playing this disc. Try inserting the disc into the Blu-ray player again.</td>
<td>Focus error Unsupported disc error Mechanical error Servo error DRM file access Error file access Device error</td>
<td>• Press the button and remove the disc, and check that the error message is cleared. • Check that the disc is not damaged or deformed, and insert the disc again.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The system has overheated. Try to reduce the temperature by tuning the audio system off and allowing the player to cool down.</td>
<td>The Blu-ray player is too hot right now. Give it some time to cool off and try again later.</td>
<td>High temperature</td>
<td>• Turn the audio system off and allow the player to cool down until the error message is cleared.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Playback stopped. The content being played is protected by Cinavia™ and is not authorized for playback on this device.</td>
<td>Playback stopped. The content being played is protected by Cinavia™ and is not authorized for playback on this device. For more information, see <a href="http://www.cinavia.com">http://www.cinavia.com</a>. Message Code 1.</td>
<td>Cinavia 1 error</td>
<td>• Current track/file will be skipped. The next supported track/file plays automatically.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

**Features**

**Blu-ray/DVD Rear Entertainment System**

**DVD or Blu-ray™ Player Error Messages**
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Error Message in Audio/Information Screen</th>
<th>Error Message in Overhead Screen</th>
<th>Cause</th>
<th>Solution</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Audio outputs temporarily muted. Do not adjust the playback volume. The content being played is protected by Cinavia and is not authorized for playback on this device. For more information, see <a href="http://www.cinavia.com">http://www.cinavia.com</a>. Message Code 3.</td>
<td>Audio outputs temporarily muted. Do not adjust the playback volume. The content being played is protected by Cinavia™ and is not authorized for playback on this device. For more information, see <a href="http://www.cinavia.com">http://www.cinavia.com</a>. Message Code 3.</td>
<td>Cinavia 3 error</td>
<td>• Current track/file will be skipped. The next supported track/file plays automatically.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| This disc cannot be played. Check that the disc is not damaged or deformed. If the disc is OK, see Owner’s Manual for information on supported disc types and files. | There seems to be a problem with this disc. Please check if it might be damaged. | Region mismatch | • Press the button and remove the disc, and check that the error message is cleared.  
• Check the disk if region code is matched. |
| Cannot access Blu-ray Player. Contact Honda dealer. | DTCP certificate error | **DTCP certificate error** | • Contact a dealer and the player needs to be replaced. |
Use the audio/information screen to customize certain features.

**Models with color audio system**

**How to customize**

While the vehicle is at a complete stop with the power mode in ON, press the MENU/CLOCK button, then select Settings. To customize the phone settings, press the (Phone) button, then select Phone Setup.

When you customize settings, make sure that the vehicle is at a complete stop and shift to **P**.

**How to customize**

These indications are used to show how to operate the selector knob.

Rotate 🔄 to select.

Press 🎭 to enter.

To customize other features, select Settings, rotate 🔄, then press 🎭.

**List of customizable options** P. 445
Customization Flow

Press the MENU/CLOCK button.

- Adjust Clock
- Settings
- RDS Settings
  - RDS Information
  - Radio Text
- Bluetooth
  - Add New Device
  - Connect an Audio Device
- Display Adjustment
  - Brightness
  - Contrast
  - Black Level
- Rear Camera
  - Camera Guideline
- Display Change
- Wallpaper
  - Select
  - Import
  - Delete
- Color Theme
- Language
- Clock Format

*1: FM mode
Press the button and rotate to select Phone Setup, then press .
### List of customizable options

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setup Group</th>
<th>Customizable Features</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Selectable Settings</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Adjust Clock</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td>Adjusts clock.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>RDS Information</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td>Selects whether the RDS information comes on.</td>
<td>On*/Off</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Radio Text</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td>Displays the radio text information of the selected RDS station.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Add New Device</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Connect an Audio Device</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Display Adjustment</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Brightness</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td>Changes the brightness of the audio/information screen.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Contrast</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td>Changes the contrast of the audio/information screen.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Black Level</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td>Changes the black level of the audio/information screen.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Rear Camera</strong></td>
<td><strong>Camera Guideline</strong></td>
<td>Selects whether the guidelines come on the audio/information screen.</td>
<td>On*/Off</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*1: Default Setting
### Customized Features

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setup Group</th>
<th>Customizable Features</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Selectable Settings</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Display Change</strong></td>
<td>Changes the display type.</td>
<td><strong>Audio</strong>*/Wallpaper*</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Wallpaper</strong></td>
<td>Changes the wallpaper type.</td>
<td><strong>Clock</strong>*/Image1/Image2/Image3*</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Select</strong></td>
<td>*</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Import</strong></td>
<td>Imports an image file for a new wallpaper.</td>
<td>*</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Delete</strong></td>
<td>Deletes an image file for a wallpaper.</td>
<td>*</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Color Theme</strong></td>
<td>Changes the background color of the audio/information screen.</td>
<td><strong>Blue</strong>*/Red/Amber/Gray</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Language</strong></td>
<td>Changes the display language.</td>
<td><strong>English</strong>*/Français/Español</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Clock Format</strong></td>
<td>Selects the digital clock display from 12h to 24h.</td>
<td><strong>12h</strong>*/24h</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*1:Default Setting
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setup Group</th>
<th>Customizable Features</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Selectable Settings</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Phone Setup</td>
<td>Add New Device</td>
<td>Pairs a new phone to HFL.</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Connect a Phone</td>
<td>Pairs a new phone or connects a paired phone to HFL.</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bluetooth Setup</td>
<td>Connect an Audio Device</td>
<td>Connects a Bluetooth® Audio device to HFL.</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Disconnect All Devices</td>
<td>Disconnects a paired phone from HFL.</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Delete Device</td>
<td>Deletes a paired phone.</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Pass-Key</td>
<td>Changes a pairing code.</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Speed Dial</td>
<td>Edits, adds or deletes a speed dial entry.</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Ringtone</td>
<td>Selects the ring tone.</td>
<td>Mobile Phone*1/Fixed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Caller ID Info</td>
<td>Prioritizes the caller’s name or phone number as the caller ID.</td>
<td>Name Priority*1/Number Priority</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>System Clear</td>
<td>Cancels/Resets all customized items in the Phone Setup group as default.</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*1:Default Setting
Customized Features

How to customize
With the power mode in ON, select Settings, then select a setting item.

When you customize settings, make sure that the vehicle is at a complete stop and shift to [P].

To customize other features, select Settings.

List of customizable options P. 455
Customization flow

Select Settings.

- System
  - System Sounds
  - Navigation Guidance*

- Touch Sensitivity
- Subscriptions
- Language
- Factory Data Reset
- About

* Not available on all models

- Date & Time
  - Set Date & Time
  - Automatic Date & Time
    - Set Date
    - Set Time

- Set Time Zone
  - Automatic Time Zone
    - Select time zone

- Select Time Format

- System Volumes
Customized Features

Advanced Options

App Manager
- Recent Location Request from Apps
- Location Setting
- Interruptions

Interruption Mode
- Events and reminders
- Calls
- Messages
- Calls/messages From
Customized Features

Connections

- Bluetooth
  - + Connect New Device
  - Saved Devices
- Wi-Fi
  - Change Mode
  - Connected Devices
- Android Auto
- Apple CarPlay
- CabinControl
  - Options
  - (Device list)
- NFC*

* Not available on all models
Customized Features

Driving Position Setup
- Seat Position Movement at Entry/Exit
- Memory Position Link

Meter Setup
- Adjust Outside Temp Display
- Trip A Reset Timing
- Trip B Reset Timing
- Reverse Shift Position Beep
- Auto Idle Stop Display
- Adjust Alarm Volume
- Turn by Turn Display
- Fuel Efficiency Backlight

Power Tailgate Setup
- Power Tailgate Keyless Open Mode
- Power Tailgate Open by Outer Handle
- Hands Free Access Power Tailgate

Keyless Access Setup
- Door Unlock Mode
- Keyless Access Light Flash
- Keyless Access Beep
- Remote Start System On/Off
- Walk Away Auto Lock

* Not available on all models
Customized Features

- Driver Assist System Setup
  - Forward Collision Warning Distance
  - ACC Forward Vehicle Detect Beep
  - Road Departure Mitigation Setting
  - Lane Keeping Assist Suspend Beep
  - Blind Spot Information

- Door Setup
  - Auto Door Lock
  - Auto Door Unlock
  - Key and Remote Unlock Mode
  - Keyless Lock Answer Back
  - Security Relock Timer
  - Power Slide Door Keyless Open Mode

- Lighting Setup
  - Interior Light Dimming Time
  - Headlight Auto Off Timer
  - Auto Light Sensitivity

- Wireless Charger

- Maintenance Information
  - Oil Life

* Not available on all models
Customized Features

Features:
- Camera
- Rear Camera
  - Default Camera View
  - Guidelines
  - Cross Traffic Monitor
  - LaneWatch
    - Show with Turn Signal
    - Show Reference Line
- Display
  - Brightness
  - Contrast
  - Black Level
- Sound
  - Bass / Treble
  - Center / Subwoofer Volume
  - Balance / Fader
  - Audio Zones
  - Speed Volume Compensation
  - DTS Neural Surround
- Notifications

* Not available on all models
### List of customizable options

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setup Group</th>
<th>Customizable Features</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Selectable Settings</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>System</strong></td>
<td><strong>Date &amp; Time</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Set Date &amp; Time</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Automatic Date &amp; Time</strong></td>
<td>Selects ON to have the GPS automatically adjust the clock. Select OFF to cancel this function.</td>
<td><strong>ON</strong>*/OFF**</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Set Date</strong></td>
<td>Adjusts date.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Set Time</strong></td>
<td>Adjusts clock.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Automatic Time Zone</strong>*</td>
<td>Sets the navigation system to automatically adjust the clock when driving through different time zones.</td>
<td><strong>ON</strong>*/OFF**</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Select time zone</strong></td>
<td>Changes the time zone manually.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Select Time Format</strong></td>
<td>Selects the digital clock display from 12H to 24H.</td>
<td><strong>12H</strong>*/24H**</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*1: Default Setting

* Not available on all models
## Customized Features

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setup Group</th>
<th>Customizable Features</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Selectable Settings</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>System Volumes</td>
<td><strong>System Sounds</strong></td>
<td>Changes the system sounds volume.</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Navigation Guidance</strong></td>
<td>Changes the navigation guidance volume.</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Touch Sensitivity</td>
<td><strong>Touch Sensitivity</strong></td>
<td>Sets the sensitivity of the touch panel screen.</td>
<td><strong>High/Low</strong>&lt;sup&gt;*&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subscriptions</td>
<td><strong>HondaLink Subscription Status</strong></td>
<td>Lists subscriptions and subscription status for HondaLink®.</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Language</td>
<td></td>
<td>Changes the display language.</td>
<td><strong>English</strong> (United States)&lt;sup&gt;*&lt;/sup&gt;/<strong>English</strong> (United Kingdom)/<strong>Korean/French/Spanish/Arabic</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Factory Data Reset</td>
<td><strong>Factory Data Reset</strong></td>
<td>Resets all the settings to their factory default.</td>
<td><strong>Continue/Cancel</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>About</td>
<td></td>
<td>Displays the Android setting items.</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*1: Default Setting

* Not available on all models
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setup Group</th>
<th>Customizable Features</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Selectable Settings</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>System</td>
<td>App Manager</td>
<td>Displays the Android system memory and apps information.</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Recent Location Request from Apps</td>
<td>Displays the recent location requests from apps.</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Location Setting</td>
<td>Selects OFF not to allow apps including the navigation system* to access the vehicle’s location.</td>
<td>ON*/OFF</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Inter-ruptions</td>
<td>Sets the interruption mode for allowing to notify when calls and notifications arrive.</td>
<td>Always interrupt*/Don’t interrupt/Allow only priority interruptions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Events and reminders</td>
<td>Sets priority interruptions of events and reminders.</td>
<td>ON*/OFF</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Calls</td>
<td>Sets priority interruptions of calls.</td>
<td>ON/OFF*1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Messages</td>
<td>Sets priority interruptions of messages.</td>
<td>ON/OFF*1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Calls/messages from</td>
<td>Sets priority interruptions of from who.</td>
<td>Anyone*/Contacts only/Starred contacts only</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*1: Default Setting

* Not available on all models
## Customized Features

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setup Group</th>
<th>Customizable Features</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Selectable Settings</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Bluetooth</strong></td>
<td>+ Connect New Device</td>
<td>Pairs a new phone to HFL.</td>
<td>Phone Setup P. 500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Saved Devices</td>
<td>Connects, disconnects, or deletes a paired phone.</td>
<td>Phone Setup P. 500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Wi-Fi</strong></td>
<td>Change Mode</td>
<td>Changes the Wi-Fi mode.</td>
<td>Network* / HotSpot / OFF</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Available Networks/Connected Devices</td>
<td>Displays the available network(s) or current connected device(s).</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Android Auto</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td>Sets up the Android Auto connection.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Apple CarPlay</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td>Sets up the Apple CarPlay connection.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>CabinControl</strong></td>
<td>Options</td>
<td>Turns the Honda CabinControl function on and off.</td>
<td>ON*/OFF</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cabin-Control</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Connection Information</td>
<td>Displays the Honda CabinControl connection information.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(Device list)</td>
<td>Selects functions or deletes a device.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>NFC</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td>Turns the NFC function on and off.</td>
<td>ON*/OFF</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*1: Default Setting

* Not available on all models
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setup Group</th>
<th>Customizable Features</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Selectable Settings</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Driving Position Setup</td>
<td>Seat Position Movement at Entry/ Exit</td>
<td>Moves the seat rearward when you get in/get out of the vehicle. Changes the setting for this feature.</td>
<td>ON*/OFF</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Memory Position Link</td>
<td>Turns the driving position memory system on and off.</td>
<td>ON*/OFF</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vehicle</td>
<td>Adjust Outside Temp Display</td>
<td>Adjusts the temperature reading by a few degrees.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Trip A Reset Timing</td>
<td>Changes the setting of how to reset trip meter A and average fuel economy A.</td>
<td>With Refuel/IGN Off/Manually Reset*1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Trip B Reset Timing</td>
<td>Changes the setting of how to reset trip meter B and average fuel economy B.</td>
<td>With Refuel/IGN Off/Manually Reset*1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Reverse Shift Position Beep</td>
<td>Turns the reverse alert tone on and off.</td>
<td>ON*/OFF</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Auto Idle Stop Display*</td>
<td>Selects whether the Auto Idle Stop display comes on or not.</td>
<td>ON*/OFF</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Adjust Alarm Volume</td>
<td>Changes the alarm volume, such as the buzzers, warnings, turn signal sound, and so on.</td>
<td>High/Mid*/Low</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*1: Default Setting

* Not available on all models
### Customized Features

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setup Group</th>
<th>Customizable Features</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Selectable Settings</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Meter Setup</td>
<td><strong>Turn by Turn Display</strong></td>
<td>Selects whether the turn-by-turn display comes on during the route guidance.</td>
<td>ON*/OFF</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Fuel Efficiency Backlight</strong></td>
<td>Turns the ambient meter feature on and off.</td>
<td>ON*/OFF</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Power Tailgate Setup</td>
<td><strong>Power Tailgate Keyless Open Mode</strong></td>
<td>Changes the keyless setting for when the power tailgate opens.</td>
<td>Anytime*/When Unlocked</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Power Tailgate Open by Outer Handle</strong></td>
<td>Changes the setting to open power tailgate by tailgate outer handle.</td>
<td>Off (Manual only)/On (Power/Manual)*1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Hands Free Access Power Tailgate</strong></td>
<td>Changes the setting to open power tailgate by a swift forward in and out kicking motion under the rear bumper.</td>
<td>ON*/OFF</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Keyless Access Setup</td>
<td><strong>Door Unlock Mode</strong></td>
<td>Changes which doors unlock when you grab the driver’s door handle.</td>
<td>Driver Door or Tailgate*/All Doors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Keyless Access Light Flash</strong></td>
<td>Causes some exterior lights to flash when you unlock/lock the doors.</td>
<td>ON*/OFF</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Keyless Access Beep</strong></td>
<td>Causes the beeper to sound when you unlock/lock the doors.</td>
<td>ON*/OFF</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*1: Default Setting

* Not available on all models
### Customized Features

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setup Group</th>
<th>Customizable Features</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Selectable Settings</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Keyless Access Setup</td>
<td>Remote Start System On/Off</td>
<td>Turns the remote engine start feature on and off.</td>
<td>ON(^1)/OFF</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Walk Away Auto Lock</td>
<td>Changes the settings for the automatic locking the doors when you walk away from the vehicle while carrying the remote.</td>
<td>Enable/Disable(^1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vehicle</td>
<td>Forward Collision Warning Distance</td>
<td>Changes at which distance CMBS™ alerts.</td>
<td>Long/Normal(^1)/Short</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Driver Assist System Setup</td>
<td>ACC Forward Vehicle Detect Beep</td>
<td>Causes the system to beep when the system detects a vehicle, or when the vehicle goes out of the ACC range.</td>
<td>ON/OFF(^1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Road Departure Mitigation Setting</td>
<td>Changes the setting for the road departure mitigation system.</td>
<td>Normal(^1)/Wide/Warning Only</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Lane Keeping Assist Suspend Beep</td>
<td>Causes the system to beep when the LKAS is suspended.</td>
<td>ON/OFF(^1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Blind Spot Information*</td>
<td>Changes the setting for the blind spot information.</td>
<td>Audible and Visual Alert(^1)/Visual Alert/OFF</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\(^1\): Default Setting  

* Not available on all models
### Customized Features

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setup Group</th>
<th>Customizable Features</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Selectable Settings</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Vehicle</strong></td>
<td><strong>Auto Door Lock</strong></td>
<td>Changes the setting for the automatic locking feature.</td>
<td>With Vehicle Speed*1/Shift from P/OFF</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Door Setup</strong></td>
<td><strong>Auto Door Unlock</strong></td>
<td>Changes the setting for when the doors unlock automatically.</td>
<td>All Doors with Driver's Door Opens*1/All Doors with Shift to P/All Doors with IGN Off/OFF</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Key and Remote Unlock Mode</strong></td>
<td>Sets up either the driver's door or all doors to unlock on the first push of the remote or built-in key.</td>
<td></td>
<td>Driver Door*1/All Doors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Keyless Lock Answer Back</strong></td>
<td>LOCK/UNLOCK- The exterior lights flash. LOCK (2nd push)- The beeper sounds.</td>
<td></td>
<td>ON*1/OFF</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Security Relock Timer</strong></td>
<td>Changes the time it takes for the doors to relock and the security system to set after you unlock the vehicle without opening any door.</td>
<td></td>
<td>90 sec/60 sec/30 sec*1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Power Slide Door Keyless Open Mode</strong></td>
<td>Changes the keyless setting for when the power sliding door opens.</td>
<td></td>
<td>Anytime*1/When Unlocked</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*1: Default Setting
### Customized Features

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setup Group</th>
<th>Customizable Features</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Selectable Settings</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Vehicle</strong></td>
<td><strong>Lighting Setup</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Interior Light Dimming Time</strong></td>
<td>Changes the length of time the interior lights stay on after you close the doors.</td>
<td>60 sec/30 sec*/15 sec</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Headlight Auto Off Timer</strong></td>
<td>Changes the length of time the exterior lights stay on after you close the driver’s door.</td>
<td>60 sec/30 sec*/15 sec*/0 sec</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Auto Light Sensitivity</strong></td>
<td>Changes the timing for the headlights to come on.</td>
<td>Max/High/Mid*/Low/Min</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Wireless Charger</strong>*</td>
<td></td>
<td>Turns the wireless charger feature on and off.</td>
<td>ON*/OFF</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Maintenance Information</strong></td>
<td><strong>Oil Life</strong></td>
<td>Resets the engine oil life display when you have performed the maintenance service.</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*1: Default Setting

* Not available on all models
### Customized Features

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setup Group</th>
<th>Customizable Features</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Selectable Settings</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Rear Camera</td>
<td>Default Camera View</td>
<td>Changes the camera view mode when the rear camera monitor is turned on.</td>
<td>Last Used*/Normal View/Wide View</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Camera</td>
<td>Guidelines</td>
<td>Selects whether the guidelines come on the rear camera monitor.</td>
<td>Dynamic/Fixed/Both*/OFF</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cross Traffic Monitor*</td>
<td>Turns the cross traffic monitor on and off.</td>
<td>ON*/OFF</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Show with Turn Signal</td>
<td>Selects whether the LaneWatch display comes on when you move the turn signal lever to indicate a right turn.</td>
<td>ON*/OFF</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Show Reference Line</td>
<td>Selects whether the reference lines come on the LaneWatch monitor.</td>
<td>ON*/OFF</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Display</td>
<td>Brightness</td>
<td>Adjusts the settings of the audio/information screen.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Contrast</td>
<td></td>
<td>Display Setup P. 313</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Black Level</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*1:Default Setting

---

*Not available on all models*
## Customized Features

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setup Group</th>
<th>Customizable Features</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Selectable Settings</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sound</td>
<td>Bass / Treble</td>
<td>Adjusts the settings of the audio speakers' sound.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Center / Subwoofer</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Volume</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Balance / Fader</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Audio Zones*</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Speed Volume</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Compensation</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>DTS Neural Surround*</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Notifications
Changes the notification settings for apps.

*1: Default Setting

* Not available on all models
Customized Features ► Defaulting All the Settings

Models with Display Audio

Defaulting All the Settings

Reset all the menu and customized settings as the factory defaults.

1. Select .
2. Select Settings.
3. Select System.
4. Select Factory Data Reset.
   ▶ A confirmation message appears on the screen.
5. Select Continue to reset the settings.
6. Select Continue again to reset the settings.
   ▶ The system will reboot.

Models with Display Audio

Defaulting All the Settings

When you transfer the vehicle to a third party, reset all settings to default and delete all personal data.

If you perform Factory Data Reset, it will reset the preinstalled apps to their factory default.

If you perform Factory Data Reset, you cannot use the HondaLink® because it becomes off line.

HondaLink® P. 349
HomeLink® Universal Transceiver®

The HomeLink® Universal Transceiver can be programmed to operate up to three remote controlled devices around your home, such as garage doors, lighting, or home security systems.

**Important Safety Precautions**

Refer to the safety information that came with your garage door opener to test that the safety features are functioning properly. If you do not have the safety information, contact the manufacturer.

Before programming HomeLink, make sure that people and objects are out of the way of the garage or gate to prevent potential injury or damage.

When programming a garage door opener, park just outside the garage door’s path.

*Not available on all models*
If it is necessary to erase a previously entered learned code:

- Press and hold the I and III HomeLink buttons for about 10 seconds, until the green indicator blinks. Release the buttons, and proceed to step 1.
- If you are training the second or third button, go directly to step 1.

The instructions on the next page should work for most gate or garage openers, but may not work for all. For detailed instructions about your specific remote opener, visit [http://www.homelink.com](http://www.homelink.com) or call (800) 355-3515.
### Training HomeLink

#### Reprogramming a Button

If you want to retrain a programmed button for a new device, you do not have to erase all button memory. You can replace the existing memory code using this procedure:

1. Press and hold the desired HomeLink button until the HomeLink indicator begins to slowly flash orange. This should take about 20 seconds.

2. Release the HomeLink button and position the remote transmitter you wish to link 1 - 3 inches (3 - 8 cm) from the HomeLink button you want to program, then follow steps 3 - 6 under “programming a button.”

#### Erasing Button Memory

To erase programming from the buttons, press and hold the two outside HomeLink buttons until the HomeLink indicator changes from orange to rapidly flashing green. This should take about 10 seconds. You should erase all programming before selling the vehicle.

#### Operating

To operate, simple press and release the programmed HomeLink button. Activation will now occur for the trained device.

#### Questions

For questions or comments, visit [www.HomeLink.com](http://www.HomeLink.com), [www.youtube.com/HomeLinkGentex](http://www.youtube.com/HomeLinkGentex), or by calling the HomeLink Hotline (North America only) at (800) 355-3515.

---

#### Programming a Button

1. Position the remote transmitter you wish to link 1 to 3 inches (3 - 8 cm) from the HomeLink® button you want to program.

2. Press and release the desired HomeLink button. Is the HomeLink indicator (LED) **slowly flashing orange**?

   - **NO**

   3a. Hold the button on the remote transmitter. Does HomeLink indicator (LED) change from **slowly flashing orange** to **rapidly flashing green** or **continuously on green**? The process should take less than 60 seconds.

   - **YES**

   4. Press and hold the programmed HomeLink button for about a second. Does the device (garage door opener) work?

      - **YES**

      5. Press and hold the HomeLink button again.

         **HomeLink LED is continuously on green.**

      - **NO**

      5a. The remote has a rolling code. Press the “learn” button on the remote-controlled device (e.g. garage door opener).

      5b. Within 30 secs, press and hold the programmed HomeLink button for 2 secs.

      - **NO**

   6. Press and hold the HomeLink button again. The remote-controlled device should operate.

      **Training Complete**

   - **YES**

   3b. **Canadian Garage Door Opener**

      A. Press and release the HomeLink button. Press, hold and release the button on the remote every 2 secs. Does the HomeLink indicator (LED) change from **slowly flashing orange** to **rapidly flashing or continuously on green**? The process should take less than 60 seconds.

---

**HomeLink**® is a registered trademark of Gentex Corporation.
Bluetooth® HandsFreeLink®

Using HFL

HFL Buttons

- **(Pick-up) button**: Press to go directly to the Phone screen or to answer an incoming call.
- **(Hang-up/Back) button**: Press to end a call or to cancel a command.
- **(Talk) button**: Press to call a number with a stored voice tag.
- **(Phone) button**: Press to go directly to the Phone screen.
- **Selector knob**: Rotate to select an item on the screen, then press .

Models with color audio system

Bluetooth® HandsFreeLink® (HFL) allows you to place and receive phone calls using your vehicle’s audio system, without handling your cell phone.

Using HFL

Place your phone where you can get good reception.

To use HFL, you need a Bluetooth®-compatible cell phone. For a list of compatible phones, pairing procedures, and special feature capabilities:
- **U.S.**: Visit automobiles.honda.com/handsfreelink/ or call 1-888-528-7876.
- **Canada**: Visit www.handsfreelink.ca, or call 1-888-528-7876.

Voice control tips
- Aim the vents away from the ceiling and close the windows, as noise coming from them may interfere with the microphone.
- Press and release the button when you want to call a number using a stored voice tag. Speak clearly and naturally after a beep.
- If the microphone picks up voices other than yours, the command may be misinterpreted.
- To change the volume level, use the audio system’s volume knob or the remote audio controls on the steering wheel.

State or local laws may prohibit the operation of handheld electronic devices while operating a vehicle.
The audio/information screen notifies you when there is an incoming call.

Certain manual functions are disabled or inoperable while the vehicle is in motion. You cannot select a grayed-out option until the vehicle is stopped.

Only previously stored speed dial entries can be called using voice commands while the vehicle is in motion.

If you receive a call while using the audio system, the system resumes its operation after ending the call.

Up to 20 speed dial entries can be stored. If there is no entry in the system, Speed Dial is disabled.

Up to 20 call histories can be stored. If there is no call history, Call History is disabled.

Bluetooth® Wireless Technology
The Bluetooth® word mark and logos are registered trademarks owned by Bluetooth SIG, Inc., and any use of such marks by Honda Motor Co., Ltd., is under license. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.

Limitations for Manual Operation

HFL Limitations
An incoming call on HFL will interrupt the audio system when it is playing. It will resume when the call is ended.

The information that appears on the audio/information screen varies between phone models.

You can change the system language.
HFL Menus

The power mode must be in ACCESSORY or ON to use the system.

To use HFL, you must first pair your Bluetooth-compatible cell phone to the system while the vehicle is parked.

Some functions are limited while driving. A message appears on the screen when the vehicle is moving and the operation is canceled.

Select a phone number from the call history to store as a speed dial number.

Select a phone number from the phonebook to store as a speed dial number.

Enter a phone number to store as a speed dial number.

*1: Appears only when a phone is connected to HFL.
Features

Redial*1: Redial the last number dialed in the phone’s history.

Phone Setup → Bluetooth Setup → Add New Device: Pair a phone to the system.

Connect a Phone: Connect a phone to the system.

Connect an Audio Device: Connect a Bluetooth® Audio device to the system.

Disconnect All Devices: Disconnect a paired device from the system.

Delete Device: Delete a previously paired device.

Pass-Key: Change a pairing code.

*1: Appears only when a phone is connected to HFL.
Bluetooth® HandsFreeLink® HFL Menus

Features

**HFL Menus**

- **Call History**: Select a phone number from the call history to store as a speed dial number.
- **Phonebook**: Select a phone number from the phonebook to store as a speed dial number.
- **Phone Number**: Enter a phone number to store as a speed dial number.

**Speed Dial**

- **Add New**: Select a phone number from the call history to store as a speed dial number.
- **Phonebook**: Select a phone number from the phonebook to store as a speed dial number.
- **Phone Number**: Enter a phone number to store as a speed dial number.

**Existing entry list**

- **Change Speed Dial**: Change a previously stored speed dial number.
- **Delete Speed Dial**: Delete a previously stored speed dial number.
- **Store Voice Tag**: Create a voice tag for a speed dial number.
- **Change Voice Tag**: Change a voice tag for a speed dial number.
- **Delete Voice Tag**: Delete a voice tag for a speed dial number.

*1: Appears only when a phone is connected to HFL.
Features

Ringtone ➔ Mobile Phone
Select the ring tone stored in the connected cell phone.

Fixed
Select the ring tone stored in HFL.

Caller ID Info ➔ Name Priority
Prioritize the caller's name as the caller ID.

Number Priority
Prioritize the caller's phone number as the caller ID.

System Clear
Clear the system of all paired phones, phonebook entries, and security codes.
To pair a cell phone (when there is no phone paired to the system)
1. Press the button or the button.
2. Rotate to select Yes, then press .
3. Make sure your phone is in search or discoverable mode, then press .
   - HFL automatically searches for a Bluetooth® device.
4. When your phone appears on the list, select it by pressing .
   - If your phone does not appear, select Phone Not Found? and search for Bluetooth® devices using your phone. From your phone, select HandsFreeLink.
5. The system gives you a pairing code on the audio/information screen.
   - Confirm if the pairing code on the screen and your phone match.
   - This may vary by phone.
6. A notification appears on the screen if pairing is successful.

Phone Setup

Phone Pairing Tips:
- You cannot pair your phone while the vehicle is moving.
- Up to six phones can be paired.
- Your phone’s battery may drain faster when it is connected to HFL.
- If your phone is not ready for pairing or not found by the system within three minutes, the system will time out and return to idle.

Once you have paired a phone, you can see it displayed on the screen with one or two icons on the right side. These icons indicate the following:
- : The phone can be used with HFL.
- : The phone is compatible with Bluetooth® Audio.
To pair a cell phone (when a phone has already been paired to the system)

1. Press the button or the button.  
   If a prompt appears asking to connect to a phone, select No and proceed with step 2.
2. Rotate to select Phone Setup, then press .
3. Rotate to select Bluetooth Setup, then press .
4. Rotate to select Add New Device, then press .
5. Make sure your phone is in search or discoverable mode, then press \( \text{Bluetooth}^\circ \text{HandsFreeLink}^\circ \). HFL automatically searches for a Bluetooth device.

6. When your phone appears on the list, select it by pressing \( \text{Bluetooth}^\circ \). If your phone does not appear, select Phone Not Found? and search for Bluetooth devices using your phone. From your phone, select HandsFreeLink.

7. The system gives you a pairing code on the audio/information screen. Confirm if the pairing code on the screen and your phone match. This may vary by a phone.
To change the currently paired phone
1. Press the button or the button.
2. Rotate to select Phone Setup, then press .
3. Rotate to select Bluetooth Setup, then press .
4. Rotate to select Connect a Phone, then press .
   The screen changes to a device list.
5. Rotate to select a desired device name, then press .
   HFL disconnects the connected phone and starts searching for another paired phone.
To change the pairing code setting
1. Press the button or the button.
2. Rotate to select Phone Setup, then press .
3. Rotate to select Bluetooth Setup, then press .
4. Rotate to select Pass-Key, then press .
5. Input a new pairing code, then press .
### To delete a paired phone

1. Press the `button or the ` button.
2. Rotate  to select Phone Setup, then press .
3. Rotate  to select Bluetooth Setup, then press .
4. Rotate  to select Delete Device, then press .
   - The screen changes to a device list.
5. Rotate  to select a phone you want to delete, then press .
6. A confirmation message appears on the screen. Rotate  to select Yes, then press .
Features

Ring Tone
You can change the ring tone setting.

1. Press the button or the button.
2. Rotate to select Phone Setup, then press .
3. Rotate to select Ringtone, then press .
4. Rotate to select Mobile Phone or Fixed, then press .

Caller’s ID Information
You can select a caller’s information to be displayed when you have an incoming call.

1. Press the button or the button.
2. Rotate to select Phone Setup, then press .
3. Rotate to select Caller ID Info, then press .
4. Rotate to select a mode you want, then press .

Ring Tone
Mobile Phone: For certain connected phones, the ring tone stored in the phone sounds from the speakers.
Fixed: The fixed ring tone sounds from the speakers.

Caller’s ID Information
Name Priority: A caller’s name is displayed if it is stored in the phonebook.
Number Priority: A caller’s phone number is displayed.
To Clear the System

All speed dial entries, all imported phonebook data, all call history data, paired phones, pairing codes, caller’s ID settings, and volume settings are reset as default.

1. Press the button or the button.
2. Rotate to select Phone Setup, then press .
3. Rotate to select System Clear, then press .
4. Rotate to select Yes, then press .

5. A confirmation message appears on the screen. Rotate to select Yes, then press .


Continued
When your phone is paired, the contents of its phonebook and call history are automatically imported to HFL.

When you select a name from the list in the cellular phonebook, you can see up to three category icons. The icons indicate what types of numbers are stored for that name.

If a name has four or more numbers, ... appears instead of category icons.

On some phones, it may not be possible to import the category icons to HFL.

The phonebook is updated after every connection. Call history is updated after every connection or call.
### Speed Dial

Up to 20 speed dial numbers can be stored per phone.

To store a speed dial number:
1. Press the `button or the `button.
2. Rotate to select Speed Dial, then press .
3. Rotate to select Add New, then press .
4. Rotate to select a place to choose a number from, then press .

   - From Call History:
     - Select a number from the call history.
   - From Phonebook:
     - Select a number from the connected cell phone’s imported phonebook.
   - From Phone Number:
     - Input the number manually.

5. When the speed dial is successfully stored, you are asked to create a voice tag for the number. Rotate to select Yes or No, then press .
6. Using the button, follow the prompts to say the name for the speed dial entry.

---

**Features**

You can use the audio preset buttons during a call to store a speed dial number:
1. Press and hold the desired audio preset button during a call.
2. The contact information for the active call will be stored for the corresponding speed dial.

When a voice tag is stored, you can press the button and call the number using voice commands.
To edit a speed dial
1. Press the [ ] button or the [ ] button.
2. Rotate [ ] to select Phone Setup, then press [ ].
3. Rotate [ ] to select Speed Dial, then press [ ].
4. Select an existing speed dial entry.
5. Rotate [ ] to select Change Speed Dial, then press [ ].
6. Select a new speed dial number, then press [ ].

To delete a speed dial number
1. Press the [ ] button or the [ ] button.
2. Rotate [ ] to select Phone Setup, then press [ ].
3. Rotate [ ] to select Speed Dial, then press [ ].
4. Select an existing speed dial entry.
5. Rotate [ ] to select Delete Speed Dial, then press [ ].
   ▶ A confirmation message appears on the screen. Rotate [ ] to select Yes, then press [ ].
To add a voice tag to a stored speed dial number
1. Press the  button or the  button.
2. Rotate  to select Phone Setup, then press .
3. Rotate  to select Speed Dial, then press .
4. Select an existing speed dial entry.
5. Rotate  to select Store Voice Tag, then press .
   A confirmation message appears on the screen. Rotate  to select Yes, then press .
6. Using the  button, follow the prompts to complete the voice tag.

Avoid using duplicate voice tags.
Avoid using “home” as a voice tag.
It is easier for HFL to recognize a longer name. For example, use “John Smith” instead of “John.”
Features

### To change a voice tag
1. Press the button or the button.
2. Rotate to select Phone Setup, then press .
3. Rotate to select Speed Dial, then press .
4. Select an existing speed dial entry.
5. Rotate to select Change Voice Tag, then press .
   - A confirmation message appears on the screen. Rotate to select Yes, then press .
6. Using the button, follow the prompts to complete the voice tag.

### To delete a voice tag
1. Press the button or the button.
2. Rotate to select Phone Setup, then press .
3. Rotate to select Speed Dial, then press .
4. Select an existing speed dial entry.
5. Rotate to select Delete Voice Tag, then press .
   - A confirmation message appears on the screen. Rotate to select Yes, then press .
Making a Call

You can make calls by inputting any phone number, or by using the imported phonebook, call history, speed dial entries, or redial.

Voice-tagged speed dial entries can be dialed by voice from any screen. Press the button and follow the prompts.

Once a call is connected, you can hear the voice of the person you are calling through the audio speakers.
To make a call using the imported phonebook
When your phone is paired, the contents of its phonebook are automatically imported to HFL.
1. Press the button or the button.
2. Rotate to select Phonebook, then press .
3. The phonebook is stored alphabetically.
   Rotate to select the initial, then press .
4. Rotate to select a name, then press .
5. Rotate to select a number, then press .
   ➤Dialing starts automatically.

To make a call using a phone number
1. Press the button or the button.
2. Rotate to select Dial, then press .
3. Rotate to select a number, then press .
4. Rotate to select then press .
   ➤Dialing starts automatically.
■ To make a call using redial
1. Press the [ ] button or the [ ] button.
2. Rotate [ ] to select Redial, then press [ ].
   ► Dialing starts automatically.

■ To make a call using the call history
Call history is stored by Dialed Calls, Received Calls, and Missed Calls.
1. Press the [ ] button or the [ ] button.
2. Rotate [ ] to select Call History, then press [ ].
3. Rotate [ ] to select Dialed Calls, Received Calls, or Missed Calls, then press [ ].
4. Rotate [ ] to select a number, then press [ ].
   ► Dialing starts automatically.

To make a call using redial
Press and hold the [ ] button to redial the last number dialed in your phone’s call history.

The call history appears only when a phone is connected to HFL, and displays the last 20 dialed, received, or missed calls. (Appears only when a phone is connected to the system.)
To make a call using a speed dial entry

1. Press the [ ] button or the [ ] button.
2. Rotate [ ] to select Speed Dial, then press [ ].
3. Rotate [ ] to select a number, then press [ ].
   ▶ Dialing starts automatically.

To make a call using a speed dial entry

- On the Phone screen, the first six speed dials on the list can be directly selected by pressing the corresponding audio preset buttons (1-6).

- Select Others to view another paired phone’s speed dial list.

- When a voice tag is stored, press the [ ] button and call the number using voice commands.

   Speed Dial P. 485

- Voice-tagged speed dial entries can be dialed by voice from any screen. Press the [ ] button and follow the prompts.
When there is an incoming call, an audible notification sounds and the *Incoming Call* screen appears. Press the button to answer the call. Press the button to decline or end the call.

**Call Waiting**

Press the button to put the current call on hold to answer the incoming call. Press the button again to return to the current call. Select **Ignore** to ignore the incoming call if you do not want to answer it. Press the button if you want to hang up the current call.

You can select the icons on the audio/information screen instead of the and buttons. Rotate to select the icon, then press .
Options During a Call

The following options are available during a call.

Swap Call: Put the current call on hold to answer the incoming call.
Mute: Mute your voice.
Transfer Call: Transfer a call from HFL to your phone.
Dial Tones: Send numbers during a call. This is useful when you call a menu-driven phone system.

Rotate 🔄 to select the option, then press 🎫.
▶️ The check box is checked when Mute is selected. Select Mute again to turn it off.

Dial Tones: Available on some phones.
Bluetooth® HandsFreeLink®

Models with Display Audio

Bluetooth® HandsFreeLink® (HFL) allows you to place and receive phone calls using your vehicle’s audio system, without handling your cell phone.

Using HFL

HFL Buttons

Place your phone where you can get good reception.

To use HFL, you need a Bluetooth®-compatible cell phone. For a list of compatible phones, pairing procedures, and special feature capabilities, ask a dealer or your Honda dealer.

To use the system, the Bluetooth® setting must be ON.

Voice control tips

- Aim the vents away from the ceiling and close the windows, as noise coming from them may interfere with the microphones.
- Press the (Talk) button when you want to call a number using a phonebook name or a number. Speak clearly and naturally after a beep.
- If the microphones pick up voices other than yours, the command may be misinterpreted.
- To change the volume level, select the audio system’s VOL (Volume) or use the remote audio controls on the steering wheel.

If there is no speed dial entry in the system, the pop-up notification appears on the screen.

If there is no call history, the call history is disabled.

Continued
Features

Bluetooth® HandsFreeLink®

Using HFL

(Pick-up) button: Press to go directly to the phone screen of the driver information interface, or to answer an incoming call.

(Hang-up) button: Press to end a call.

(Back) button: Press to go back to the previous screen, or cancel a command.

(Talk) button: Press to access Voice Portal.

buttons: Press to select an item displayed on the phone screen of the driver information interface.

ENTER button: Press to call a number listed in the selected item on the phone screen of the driver information interface.

(Home) button: Press to go back to the home screen of the driver information interface.

To go to the phone screen of the driver information interface:
1. Press the (home) button on the steering wheel.
2. Select Phone.
   ▶ You can select Favorite Contacts or Recent Calls.

Bluetooth® Wireless Technology
The Bluetooth® word mark and logos are registered trademarks owned by Bluetooth SIG, Inc., and any use of such marks by Honda Motor Co., Ltd., is under license. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.

HFL Limitations
An incoming call on HFL will interrupt the audio system when it is playing. It will resume when the call is ended.
**HFL Status Display**

The audio/information screen notifies you when there is an incoming call.

![HFL Status Display Diagram]

- **Bluetooth Indicator**
  Appears when your phone is connected to HFL.
- **HFL Mode**
- **Caller's Name**
- **Caller's Number**
- **Signal Strength**
- **Battery Level Status**

**Limitations for Manual Operation**

Certain manual functions are disabled or inoperable while the vehicle is in motion. You cannot select a grayed-out option until the vehicle is stopped.

Only previously stored phonebook names or numbers can be called using voice commands while the vehicle is in motion.

- **Favorite Contacts** P. 505

The information that appears on the audio/information screen varies between phone models.

You can change the system language.

- **How to customize** P. 448
HFL Menus

The power mode must be in ACCESSORY or ON to use the system.

### Phone settings screen

1. Select
2. Select Phone.
3. Select Settings.

#### HFL Menus

To use HFL, you must first pair your Bluetooth-compatible cell phone to the system while the vehicle is parked.

Some functions are limited while driving.

- **Change Connected Phone**
  - Pair a new phone to the system.
  - **Connect New Device**
  - **(Existing entry list)**
  - Connect, disconnect, or delete a paired device.

- **Auto Sync Phone**
  - Set phonebook and call history data to be automatically imported when a phone is paired to HFL.

- **Auto Phone Call Transfer**
  - Set calls to automatically transfer from your phone to HFL when you enter the vehicle.

- **Ringtone**
  - Select the ring tone.

- **HondaLink Assist**
  - Turn HondaLink® Assist on and off.
■ Phone menu screen

1. Select 📞
2. Select Phone.

- **Recent Calls**
  - **All**: Display the last outgoing, incoming and missed calls.
  - **Dialed**: Display the last outgoing calls.
  - **Missed**: Display the last missed calls.
  - **Received**: Display the last incoming calls.

- **Favorite Contacts**
  - **(Existing entry list)**: Dial the selected number in the speed dial list.

- **Contacts**: Display the paired phone’s phonebook.

- **Keypad**: Enter a phone number to dial.

Continued
Phone Setup

**Bluetooth® setup**
You can turn Bluetooth® function on and off.
1. Select Bluetooth.
2. Select Settings.
3. Select Connections.
4. Select Bluetooth.
5. Select Options.
6. Select Bluetooth, then ON.
To pair a cell phone (when there is no phone paired to the system)

1. Select 📞.
2. Select Phone.
3. Select Connect Phone.
4. Make sure your phone is in search or discoverable mode, then select + Connect New Device.
   - HFL automatically searches for a Bluetooth® device.
5. Select your phone when it appears on the list.
   - If your phone still does not appear, search for Bluetooth® devices using your phone.
   - From your phone, search for HandsFree Link.
6. The system gives you a pairing code on the audio/information screen.
   - Confirm if the pairing code on the screen and your phone match.
   - This may vary by phone.
7. Select desired functions and then select Connect.
   - A confirmation message appears on the screen. Select Continue or Connect without Internet.

Phone Setup

Your Bluetooth-compatible phone must be paired to the system before you can make and receive hands-free calls.

Phone Pairing Tips:
- You cannot pair your phone while the vehicle is moving.
- Up to six phones can be paired.
- Your phone’s battery may drain faster when it is paired to the system.
- If your phone is not ready for pairing or not found by the system within three minutes, the system will time out and return to idle.

Once you have paired a phone, you can see it displayed on the screen with one or more icons on the right side. These icons indicate the following:

- The phone is compatible with Bluetooth® Audio.
- The phone can be used with HFL.
- The phone can be used with the internet tethering.

If there is an active connection to Apple CarPlay or Android Auto, pairing of additional Bluetooth compatible devices is unavailable and + Connect New Device is grayed out from the Bluetooth screen.
To change the currently paired phone
1. Go to the phone settings screen.  
   - **Phone settings screen** P. 498
2. Select Change Connected Phone.
3. Select a phone to connect.
   - HFL disconnects the connected phone and starts searching for another paired phone.
4. Select , or
5. Select Apply.

To delete a paired phone
1. Go to the phone settings screen.  
   - **Phone settings screen** P. 498
2. Select Change Connected Phone.
3. Select a phone you want to delete.
4. Select Delete Device.
5. A confirmation message appears on the screen. Select Delete.

To change the currently paired phone
If no other phones are found or paired when trying to switch to another phone, HFL will inform you that the original phone is connected again.

To pair other phones, select + Connect New Device from the **Bluetooth** screen.
**Ring Tone**

You can change the ring tone setting.

1. Go to the phone settings screen. 
   - Phone settings screen P. 498
2. Select Ringtone.
3. Select Vehicle or Phone.

**Automatic Transferring**

If you get into the vehicle while you are on the phone, the call can be automatically transferred to HFL.

1. Go to the phone settings screen.
   - Phone settings screen P. 498
2. Select Auto Phone Call Transfer.
3. Select ON or OFF.
When Automatic Phone Sync is set to On:
When your phone is paired, the contents of its phonebook and call history are automatically imported to the system.

Changing the Automatic Phone Sync setting
1. Go to the phone settings screen.
2. Select Auto Sync Phone.
3. Select ON or OFF.

Automatic Import of Cellular Phonebook and Call History
When you select a name from the list in the cellular phonebook, you can see a category icon. The icons indicate what types of numbers are stored for that name.

On some phones, it may not be possible to import the category icons to the system.

The phonebook is updated after every connection. Call history is updated after every connection or call.
To store a speed dial number:

1. Go to the phone menu screen.
   - Phone menu screen P. 499
2. Select the Recent Calls, Contacts, or Keypad screen.
3. Select the star icon.
   - A notification appears on the screen if the speed dial is successfully stored.
   - To remove the speed dial, select the star icon again.
To edit a speed dial
1. Go to the phone menu screen.
   jabi Phone menu screen P. 499
2. Select Favorite Contacts.
3. Select Edit on the speed dial entry you
   want to edit.
4. Select a setting you want.

To delete a speed dial
1. Go to the phone menu screen.
   jabi Phone menu screen P. 499
2. Select Favorite Contacts.
3. Select Edit on the speed dial entry you
   want to delete.
4. Select Remove Contact.
5. A confirmation message appears on the
   screen. Select Continue.
### Making a Call

You can make calls by inputting any phone number, or by using the imported phonebook, call history, or speed dial entries.

#### Making a Call

Once a call is connected, you can hear the voice of the person you are calling through the audio speakers.

While there is an active connection with Apple CarPlay, phone calls cannot be made with HandsFreeLink® and are only made from Apple CarPlay.

Continued
To make a call using the imported phonebook
1. Go to the phone menu screen.
   Phone menu screen P. 499
2. Select Contacts.
3. Select a name.
   You can sort by First Name or Last Name. Select the icon on the upper right of the screen.
4. Select a number.
   Dialing starts automatically.

To make a call using a phone number
1. Go to the phone menu screen.
   Phone menu screen P. 499
2. Select Keypad.
3. Select a number.
   Use the keyboard on the touch screen for entering numbers.
4. Select Call.
   Dialing starts automatically.
■ To make a call using the call history
Call history is stored by All, Dialed, Missed, and Received.
1. Go to the phone menu screen.
   - Phone menu screen P. 499
2. Select Recent Calls.
   - You can sort by All, Dialed, Missed, or Received. Select the icon on the upper right of the screen.
3. Select a number.
   - Dialing starts automatically.

To make a call using a speed dial entry
1. Go to the phone menu screen.
   - Phone menu screen P. 499
2. Select Favorite Contacts.
   - You can change the order of speed dial entries by selecting Reorder.
3. Select a number.
   - Dialing starts automatically.

The call history appears only when a phone is connected to the system.
Receiving a Call

When there is an incoming call, an audible notification sounds (if activated) and the Incoming Call... screen appears.

Press the button to answer the call. Press the button to decline or end the call.

Options During a Call

The following options are available during a call.
Mute: Mute your voice.
Use Handheld: Transfer a call from the system to your phone.
Keypad: Send numbers during a call. This is useful when you call a menu-driven phone system.

The available options are shown on the lower half of the screen.

Select the option.

The mute icon appears when Mute is selected. Select Mute again to turn it off.
To Set Up Text Message Options

■ To turn on or off the text message notice
1. Select 📨.
2. Select Messages.
3. Select Settings.
4. Select Notifications.
5. Select ON or OFF.

■ To Set Up Text Message Options
To use the text message function, it may be necessary to set up on your phone.

To turn on or off the text message notice
ON: A pop-up notification comes on every time you receive a new message.
OFF: The message you receive is stored in the system without notification.
Receiving a Text Message

HFL can display newly received text messages as well as the last 20 messages received on a linked cell phone. Each received message can be read aloud and replied to using a fixed common phrase.

1. A pop-up appears and notifies you of a new text message.
2. Select Open to display the message. The text message is displayed.
3. Select Play to listen to the message. To discontinue the message read-out, select Stop.

Receiving a Text Message

The system does not display any received messages while you are driving. You can only hear them read aloud.

The system can only receive messages that are sent a text (SMS) messages. The message sent using the data services will not be displayed in the list.

With some phones, you may be able to display up to 20 of the last text messages received.

State or local laws may limit your use of the HFL text message feature. Only use the text message feature when conditions allow you to do so safely.
### Selecting a Phone

You can select one from the Bluetooth® device list to be active and receive notifications.

1. Select `Messages`.
2. Select `Change Connected Phone`.
3. Select `Settings`.
4. Select `Change Connected Phone`.
5. Change a desired phone.

---

To change the currently paired phone

P. 502

---

You can only receive notifications from one phone at a time.
1. Select 📨.
2. Select Messages.
   ▶ Select a phone if necessary.
3. Select a message.
   ▶ The text message is displayed.

- Displaying Messages

The 📨 (blue) icon appears next to an unread message.

If you delete a message on the phone, the message will also be deleted from the system. If you send a message from the system, the message goes to your phone’s outbox.

To see the previous or next message, select 🔷 Prev or Next ➤ on the message screen.
■ Read or Stop reading a message
1. Go to the text message screen.
2. Select Play.
   ▶ The system starts reading the message aloud.
3. Select Pause to stop reading.
   Select Play again to start reading the message.

■ Reply to a message
1. Go to the text message screen.
2. Select Reply.
3. Select the reply message.
   ▶ The pop-up menu appears on the screen.
4. Select Send to send the message.
   ▶ Message sent appears on the screen when the reply message was successfully sent.

**Reply to a message**

The available fixed reply messages are as follows:
- Talk to you later, I'm driving.
- I'm on my way.
- I'm running late.
- OK
- Yes
- No

You can add a reply message by selecting + Create New Message.

To edit a reply message P. 516

Only certain phones receive and send messages when paired and connected. For a list of compatible phones:
- U.S.: Visit automobiles.honda.com/handsfreelink/, or call 1-888-528-7876.
- Canada: Visit www.handsfreelink.ca, or call 1-888-528-7876.
■ To edit a reply message
1. Select .
2. Select Messages.
3. Select Settings.
4. Select Edit System Replies.
5. Select the reply message you want to edit or + Create New Message.
   ▶ The on-screen keyboard screen is displayed.
6. Enter a reply message, and then select Save.

■ To delete a reply message
1. Select ．
2. Select Messages.
3. Select Settings.
4. Select Delete System Replies.
5. Select  on the reply message you want to delete.
   ▶ The pop-up menu appears on the screen.
6. Select Delete.

You can change the order of reply messages by selecting Reorder.
■ Making a call to a sender
1. Go to the text message screen.
2. Select Call.
In Case of Emergency

Automatic collision notification

If your vehicle’s airbags deploy or if the unit detects that the vehicle is severely impacted, your vehicle automatically will attempt to connect to the HondaLink® operator. If connected, information about your vehicle, its location, and its condition can be sent to the operator*1; you also can speak to the operator when connected.

IMPORTANT: For vehicles equipped with HondaLink® Assist, owner activation constitutes authorization for Honda to collect information from your vehicle needed to provide the service, and agreement to the Terms of Use at www.hondalink.com/TermsAndConditions. In a crash, HondaLink® Assist will attempt to notify emergency services but NEITHER HONDA NOR ITS SERVICE PROVIDERS GUARANTEE THAT SUCH NOTIFICATION WILL OCCUR.

Honda reserves the right to terminate HondaLink® Assist services at any time or for any reason, and in the future may not be able to provide services due to changes in, or obsolescence of, technology integral to the service or changes in governmental regulation.

*1: Depending on your phone and adequate cellular coverage, your vehicle’s location may not be sent to the operator.
To enable notification

1. Go to the phone settings screen. [Phone settings screen] P. 498
2. Select HondaLink Assist.
3. Select ON or OFF.

Setting options:
- **ON**: Notification is available.
- **OFF**: Disable the feature.
Manual operator connection*

If you need to talk to the HondaLink® operator in a situation where no airbag has deployed, you can manually connect to them by pressing the ASSIST button with the power mode in ACCESSORY or ON.

1. Open the cover attached to the ceiling console.
2. Press the ASSIST button.
   - You are connected to the HondaLink® operator.

* Not available on all models
Your audio system allows you to monitor a view of the second and third row seat’s passengers on the audio/information screen.

**How to use**

1. Select 🎤
2. Select CabinWatch.
   ▶ To zoom the desired position, double tap, pinch out, or drag there on the audio/information screen.
   ▶ To return to the normal display, double tap again or pinch in.

You can customize the following items by selecting Settings on the CabinWatch screen:
- **Show At System Start**: Selects whether CabinWatch is displayed every time you start the engine.
- **Default View Mode**: You can change the screen setting every time you turn on CabinWatch.

You can switch to the CabinTalk screen by selecting CabinTalk on the CabinWatch screen.

The CabinWatch camera is equipped near the overhead screen. The camera can also monitor at the nighttime with the IR lights.

For CabinWatch to work properly:
- Do not attach an object, sticker or film to the area around the camera.
- Do not touch the camera lens.
- In some low light conditions the IR lights may impact color of the camera image.

*Not available on all models*
CabinTalk™*

Your audio system allows you or the front passenger voices to be broadcast to the second and third row seat’s passengers using the rear speakers and/or headphones.

### How to use

1. Select CabineTalk.

   - **Models with center speaker**
     - Select Speakers to broadcast to the rear speakers.
     - Select Headphones to broadcast to headphones.
     - Select Mic is On to mute your voice.

2. **CabinTalk**

   You can also switch to the CabinTalk screen by selecting CabinTalk on the CabinWatch screen* or CabinTalk on the front control panel for the Blu-ray/DVD rear entertainment system.

   - CabinWatch™* P. 521
   - Front Control Panel Operation P. 407

   **Models with center speaker**

   When Speakers is selected, you can adjust the speaker volume by turning the volume knob.

---

*Not available on all models*
This chapter discusses driving, refueling, and information on items such as accessories.

**Before Driving**
- Driving Preparation .................................. 524
- Maximum Load Limit........................ 527

**Towing a Trailer**
- Towing Preparation......................... 530
- Driving Safely with a Trailer............. 534
- Towing Your Vehicle...................... 535

**When Driving**
- Starting the Engine ......................... 536
- Precautions While Driving........... 542
- Automatic Transmission ................. 543
- Shifting........................................... 544
- Auto Idle Stop*................................. 552
- ECON Button............................. 557

- Intelligent Traction Management .... 558
- Cruise Control* .............................. 559
- Front Sensor Camera*.................. 562
- Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)*........ 564
- Road Departure Mitigation (RDM) System* .... 576
- Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)* .... 581
- Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA*), aka Electronic Stability Control (ESC), System..... 589
- Agile Handling Assist ...................... 591
- Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) with Tire Fill Assist .................. 592
- Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) - Required Federal Explanation ..... 594
- Blind spot information (BSI) System* .... 596
- LaneWatch™*................................ 598

**Braking**
- Brake System.................................. 600
- Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)........... 606
- Brake Assist System ....................... 607
- Collision Mitigation Braking System™ (CMBS™)*.......................... 608

**Parking Your Vehicle**
- When Stopped .................................. 617
- Parking Sensor System* ................. 619
- Cross Traffic Monitor* ................. 624

**Multi-View Rear Camera** .......................... 628

**Refueling**
- Fuel Information................................ 630
- How to Refuel ................................. 631
- Fuel Economy and CO₂ Emissions.... 633

* Not available on all models
Before Driving

Driving Preparation

Check the following items before you start driving.

■ Exterior Checks

• Make sure there are no obstructions on the windows, door mirrors, exterior lights, or other parts of the vehicle.
  ► Remove any frost, snow, or ice.
  ► Remove any snow on the roof, as this can slip down and obstruct your field of vision while driving. If frozen solid, remove ice once it has softened.
  ► When removing ice from around the wheels, be sure not to damage the wheel or wheel components.
• Make sure the hood is securely closed.
  ► If the hood opens while driving, your front view will be blocked.
• Make sure the tires are in good condition.
  ► Check air pressures, and check for damage and excessive wear.
  ☑ Checking and Maintaining Tires P. 673
• Make sure there are no people or objects behind or around the vehicle.
  ► There are blind spots from the inside.

Notice

When doors are frozen shut, use warm water around the door edges to melt any ice. Do not try to force them open, as this can damage the rubber trim around the doors. When done, wipe dry to avoid further freezing.

Do not pour warm water into the key cylinder. You will be unable to insert the key if the water freezes in the hole.

Heat from the engine and exhaust can ignite flammable materials left under the hood, causing a fire. If you’ve parked your vehicle for an extended period, inspect and remove any debris that may have collected, such as dried grass and leaves that have fallen or have been carried in for use as a nest by a small animal. Also check under the hood for leftover flammable materials after you or someone else has performed maintenance on your vehicle.
Before Driving
Driving Preparation

- Store or secure all items on board properly.
  - Carrying too much cargo, or improperly storing it, can affect your vehicle’s handling, stability, stopping distance, and tires, and make it unsafe.
    - Maximum Load Limit P. 527
- Do not pile items higher than the seat height.
  - They can block your view and may be thrown forward in the event of sudden braking.
- Do not place anything in the front seat footwells. Make sure to secure the floor mat.
  - An object or unsecured floor mat can interfere with your brake and accelerator pedal operation while driving.
- If you have any animals on board, do not let them move around in the vehicle.
  - They may interfere with driving and a crash could occur.
- Securely close and lock all doors and the tailgate.
  - Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Inside P. 154
- Adjust your seating position properly.
  - Adjust the head restraint, too.
    - Adjusting the Seats P. 209
    - Adjusting the Front and Second Row Outer and Third Row Outer Head Restraints Positions P. 212
- Adjust the mirrors and steering wheel properly for your driving.
  - Adjust them while sitting in the proper driving position.
    - Adjusting the Mirrors P. 206
    - Adjusting the Steering Wheel P. 205

- Interior Checks

The headlight aim is set by the factory, and does not need to be adjusted. However, if you regularly carry heavy items in the cargo area or tow a trailer, have the aiming readjusted at a dealer or by a qualified technician.
Before Driving

Driving Preparation

- Be sure items placed on the floor behind the front seats cannot roll under the seats.
  - They can interfere with the driver’s ability to operate the pedals, the operation of the seats, or the operation of the sensors under the seats.
- Everyone in the vehicle must fasten their seat belt.
  - Fastening a Seat Belt P. 41
- Make sure that the indicators in the instrument panel come on when you start the vehicle, and go off soon after.
  - Always have a dealer check the vehicle if a problem is indicated.
  - Indicators P. 84
Maximum Load Limit

Models without second row center seat:
The maximum load for your vehicle is 1,173 lbs (532 kg).

Models with second row center seat:
The maximum load for your vehicle is 1,340 lbs (608 kg).

All models:
See the Tire and Loading Information label attached to the driver’s doorjamb.

This figure includes the total weight of all occupants, cargo, and accessories, and the tongue load if you are towing a trailer.

Steps for Determining Correct Load Limit -

(1) Locate the statement “The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed XXX kg or XXX lbs.” on your vehicle’s placard.

(2) Determine the combined weight of the driver and passengers that will be riding in your vehicle.

(3) Subtract the combined weight of the driver and passengers from XXX kg or XXX lbs.

WARNING

Overloading or improper loading can affect handling and stability and cause a crash in which you can be hurt or killed.

Follow all load limits and other loading guidelines in this manual.

Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR):
The maximum allowable weight of the vehicle, all occupants, all accessories, all cargo, and the tongue load.

Specifications P. 738

Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR):
The maximum allowable weight of the vehicle axle.

Specifications P. 738

Label Example

TIRE AND LOADING INFORMATION
SEATING CAPACITY : TOTAL X ; FRONT X ; REAR X

The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed XXX kg or XXX lbs.

TIRE SIZE COLD TIRE PRESSURE SEE OWNER’S MANUAL FOR ADDITIONAL INFORMATION
FRONT XXX/XXXX XXX XXXXXPA.XXXPS1
REAR XXX/XXXX XXX XXXXXPA.XXXPS1
SPARE XXX/XXXX XXX XXXXXPA.XXXPS1

Continued
Before Driving

Maximum Load Limit

(4) The resulting figure equals the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity. For example, if the “XXX” amount equals 1,400 lbs. and there will be five 150 lb. passengers in your vehicle, the amount of available cargo and luggage load capacity is 650 lbs.

\[(1,400 - 750 \times 5 \times 150) = 650 \text{ lbs.}\]

(5) Determine the combined weight of luggage and cargo being loaded on the vehicle. That weight may not safely exceed the available cargo and luggage load capacity calculated in step 4.

(6) If your vehicle will be towing a trailer, load from your trailer will be transferred to your vehicle. Consult this manual to determine how this reduces the available cargo and luggage load capacity of your vehicle.
In addition, the total weight of the vehicle, all occupants, accessories, cargo, and trailer tongue load must not exceed the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR) or the Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR). Both are on a label on the driver’s doorjamb.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Load Limits Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Example 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>![Vehicle Icon]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Max Load</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1,340 lbs (608 kg)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Passenger Weight</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>150 lbs x 2 = 300 lbs (68 kg x 2 = 136 kg)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cargo Weight</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1,040 lbs (472 kg)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>![Vehicle Icon]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Max Load</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1,340 lbs (608 kg)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Passenger Weight</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>150 lbs x 5 = 750 lbs (68 kg x 5 = 340 kg)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cargo Weight</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>590 lbs (268 kg)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Towing a Trailer

### Towing Preparation

#### Towing Load Limits

Your vehicle can tow a trailer if you carefully observe the load limits, use the proper equipment, and follow the towing guidelines. Check the load limits before driving.

**Total trailer weight**

Do not exceed the maximum allowable weight of the trailer, cargo, and everything in or on it shown in the table. Towing loads in excess of this can seriously affect vehicle handling and performance and can damage the engine and drivetrain.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Number of occupants</th>
<th>Except ELITE and TOURING grade models</th>
<th>ELITE and TOURING grade models</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>3,000 lbs (1,360 kg)</td>
<td>3,500 lbs (1,587 kg)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>3,000 lbs (1,360 kg)</td>
<td>3,350 lbs (1,520 kg)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>3,000 lbs (1,360 kg)</td>
<td>3,150 lbs (1,429 kg)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>3,000 lbs (1,360 kg)</td>
<td>3,000 lbs (1,360 kg)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>2,000 lbs (907 kg)</td>
<td>2,000 lbs (907 kg)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>800 lbs (363 kg)</td>
<td>800 lbs (363 kg)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>Towing not recommended</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Each weight limit is calculated based on the following conditions:
- Occupants fill seats from the front of the vehicle to the back
- Each occupant weighs 150 lbs (68 kg)
- Each occupant has 17 lbs (8 kg) of cargo in the cargo area.
Any additional weight, cargo or accessories reduce the maximum trailer weight and maximum tongue load.

**WARNING**

Exceeding any load limit or improperly loading your vehicle and trailer can cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.

Check the loading of your vehicle and trailer carefully before starting to drive.

Check if all loads are within limits at a public scale. If a public scale is not available, add the estimated weight of your cargo load to the weight of your trailer (as quoted by the manufacturer), and then measure the tongue load with an appropriate scale or tongue gauge or estimate it based on cargo distribution. Refer to the trailer owner’s manual for additional information.

**Break-in Period**

Avoid towing a trailer during your vehicle’s first 600 miles (1,000 km).

Never exceed the gross weight ratings.

**Gross weight information**

[Vehicle Specifications](#) P. 738
■ Tongue load
The weight of the tongue with a fully loaded trailer on the hitch should be approximately 10% of the total trailer weight.

- Excessive tongue load reduces front tire traction and steering control. Too little tongue load can make the trailer unstable and cause it to sway.

■ Towing Equipment and Accessories
Towing equipment varies by the size of your trailer, how much load you are towing, and where you are towing.

■ Hitches
The hitch must be of an approved type and properly bolted to the underbody.

■ Weight distribution hitches
Your vehicle is designed to tow without the need for a load distributing hitch. If you wish to use one, please consult your trailer maker for proper installation and set-up. Improper set-up could degrade the handling, stability, and braking performance of your vehicle.

Towing Equipment and Accessories
Make sure that all equipment is properly installed and maintained, and that it meets federal, state, province/territory, and local regulations.

Consult your trailer maker for proper installation and setup of the equipment. Improper installation and setup can affect the handling, stability, and braking performance of your vehicle.

Consult your trailer sales or rental agency if any other items are recommended or required for your towing situation.

The lighting and wiring of trailers can vary by type and brand. If a connector is required, it should only be installed by a qualified technician.
Towing a Trailer

Towing Preparation

**Safety chains**
Always use safety chains when you tow a trailer. Leave enough slack to allow the trailer to turn corners easily, but do not allow the chains to drag on the ground.

**Trailer brakes**
Recommended for any trailer with a total weight of 1,000 lbs (450 kg) or more: There are two common types of trailer brakes: surge and electric. Surge brakes are common for boat trailers, since the brakes will get wet. If you choose electric brakes, be sure they are electronically actuated. Do not attempt to attach trailer brakes to your vehicle’s hydraulic system, as it will lower braking effectiveness and create a potential hazard.

**Trailer light**
Trailer lights and equipment must comply with federal, state, province/territory, and local regulations. Check with your local trailer sales or rental agency for the requirements in the area where you plan to tow.

We recommend that you have a dealer install a Honda wiring harness and converter. They are designed for your vehicle.

---

**Towing Equipment and Accessories**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Trailer packages and products:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• Ball mount, hitch plug, hitch pin etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Wiring harness kit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Trailer hitch kit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Are available at a dealer.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Trailer light**

The trailer lighting connector is located behind the left side panel in the cargo area. Even if you are planning to use the non-Honda trailer lighting harness and converter, ask a dealer for the correct connector and pins.
■ Sway control
This device can be used if your trailer tends to sway. Your trailer maker can tell you what kind of sway control you need and how to install it. Improper installation could degrade the handling and stability of your vehicle.

■ Trailer mirrors
Many states, provinces and territories require special exterior mirrors when towing a trailer. Install special mirrors whenever you cannot clearly see behind you, or if the trailer creates a blind spot.
Driving Safely with a Trailer

Things You Need To Know Before Towing a Trailer

- Have the trailer properly serviced and keep it in good condition.
- Make sure that all the weights and load in the vehicle and trailer are within limits.
  
  Towing Load Limits P. 530
- Securely attach the hitch, safety chains, and other necessary parts to the trailer.
- Securely store all the items in and on the trailer so that they do not shift while driving.
- Check if the lights and brakes on the trailer are working properly.
- Check the pressure of the trailer tires, including the spare.

Models with Auto Idle Stop

- Turn off the Auto Idle Stop system using the Auto Idle Stop OFF button. The trailer weight can affect your vehicle’s brake effectiveness if Auto Idle Stop is activated on a hill while towing a trailer.

Towing Speeds and Gears

- Drive slower than normal.
- Obey posted speed limits for vehicles with trailers.
- Use the [D] position when towing a trailer on level roads.

Turning and Braking

- Turn more slowly and with a wider turning arc than normal.
- Allow more time and distance for braking.
- Do not brake or turn suddenly.
Driving in Hilly Terrain

- Monitor your temperature gauge. If it nears the red (Hot) mark, turn off the climate control system and reduce speed. Pull to the side of the road safely to cool down the engine if necessary.
- Shift to the S position if the transmission shifts frequently.

Towing Your Vehicle

Your vehicle is not designed to be towed behind a motor home. If your vehicle needs to be towed in an emergency, refer to the emergency towing information.

Emergency Towing P. 729
When Driving

Starting the Engine

1. Make sure the parking brake is applied. 
   The parking brake and brake system indicator comes on for 15 seconds when you press the electric parking brake switch.

2. Depress the brake pedal.

3. Press the ENGINE START/STOP button without depressing the accelerator pedal. The engine will crank until it starts.

Starting the Engine

Keep your foot firmly on the brake pedal when starting the engine. The engine is harder to start in cold weather and in thinner air found at altitudes above 8,000 feet (2,400 meters).

When starting the engine in cold weather, turn off all electrical accessories such as the lights, climate control system, and rear defogger in order to reduce battery drain.

If you live in a region where winter is extremely cold, an engine block heater will improve starting and warming of the engine. Consult a dealer for details.

If the exhaust system sounds abnormal or you can smell exhaust gas inside the vehicle, have your vehicle checked by a dealer. There may be a problem with the engine or exhaust system.

Bring the remote close to the ENGINE START/STOP button if the battery in the remote is weak.

If the Remote Battery is Weak P. 709
The engine may not start if the remote is subjected to strong radio waves.

Do not hold the ENGINE START/STOP button to start the engine.
If the engine does not start, wait at least 30 seconds before trying again.
When Driving

Starting the Engine

1. Put the transmission into [P].
2. Press the ENGINE START/STOP button.

Stopping the Engine

You can turn the engine off when the vehicle is completely stopped.

1. Put the transmission into [P].
2. Press the ENGINE START/STOP button.

Starting the Engine

The immobilizer system protects your vehicle from theft.

If an improperly coded device is used, the engine’s fuel system is disabled.

Immobilizer System P. 179
When Driving
Starting the Engine

Remote Engine Start with Vehicle Feedback*

You can remotely start the engine using the \( \text{\textcircled{1}} \) button on the remote.

To start the engine

Press the \( \text{\textcircled{1}} \) button, then press and hold the \( \text{\textcircled{1}} \) button.
Some exterior lights flash once.

LED: Blinks when any button is pressed.

Some exterior lights flash six times if the engine runs successfully.

When started remotely, the engine automatically shuts off after 10 minutes of idling and/or the brake pedal and ENGINE START/STOP button have not been pressed simultaneously.

To extend the run time for another 10 minutes during the first run, press the \( \text{\textcircled{1}} \) button, then press and hold the \( \text{\textcircled{1}} \) button.

Some exterior lights will not flash if the engine runs unsuccessfully.

Some exterior lights flash six times if a 10-minute extension request was transmitted successfully.

* Not available on all models
When Driving

Starting the Engine

■ To stop the engine

Press and hold the [ ] button for one second.

The exterior lights will not flash when the remote is out of the smart entry system range.

The engine will not stop.

Go within the range, and try again.

The exterior lights flash once if the engine stops successfully.

Remote Engine Start with Vehicle Feedback*

- Another registered remote is in the vehicle.
- There is any antenna failure.
- Door is unlocked with the built-in key.
- The engine oil pressure is low.
- The engine coolant temperature is extremely high.
- The telematics unit malfunctions.
- The security system alarm is not set.

The engine may stop while it is running if:
- You do not start the vehicle within 10 minutes of starting the engine with the remote.
- The engine is stopped by using the remote.
- The security system alarm is not set.
- Door is unlocked with the built-in key.
- The hood is open, or any door, or the tailgate is unlocked.
- Any door is open.
- The transmission is in a position other than P.
- The engine coolant temperature is extremely high.
- The battery is low.
- The engine oil pressure is low.
- The Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) comes on if there is a problem with the emissions control systems.

* Not available on all models
Remote Engine Start with Vehicle Feedback *

While the engine is running, the vehicle will automatically precondition inside the vehicle.

When it is warm outside:
- The climate control system is activated in recirculation mode.
- The seat ventilation is activated*.

When it is cold outside:
- The defroster is activated at a moderately warm temperature.
- The rear defogger and door mirror heaters are activated*.
- The seat heaters and heated steering wheel are activated*.

Heated Steering Wheel * P. 241
Front Seat Heaters and Seat Ventilation * P. 243

* Not available on all models
Starting to Drive

When the engine was started using the \( \text{\textbullet} \) button on the remote*

1. Depress the brake pedal and press the ENGINE START/STOP button simultaneously.

When the engine was started in any case

2. Keeping your right foot on the brake pedal, press the DS button. Select R when reversing.

3. With the parking brake applied, release the brake pedal and gently depress the accelerator pedal.

  - Make sure the parking brake and brake system indicator goes off.
  - Parking Brake P. 600
  - If the Transmission System Indicator Blinks along with the Warning Message P. 721

Hill start assist system

Hill start assist keeps the brake engaged briefly to help prevent the vehicle from rolling on inclines as you move your foot from the brake pedal to the accelerator.

Change the gear position to D or S when facing uphill, or R when facing downhill, then release the brake pedal.

The brakes remain engaged briefly as you release the brake pedal.

* Not available on all models

Starting to Drive

When the engine was started using the \( \text{\textbullet} \) button on the remote*

1. The engine stops when the gear position is changed from P before the ENGINE START/STOP button is pressed. Follow the step 1 when starting to drive.

2. You can also release the parking brake by pulling the electric parking brake switch while depressing the brake pedal.

3. When facing downhill, you can start your vehicle more smoothly by manually releasing it with the electric parking brake switch than by releasing it with the accelerator pedal.

Hill start assist system

Hill start assist may not prevent the vehicle from rolling downhill on a very steep or slippery slope, and will not operate on small inclines.

Hill start assist is not a replacement for the parking brake.

Hill start assist will operate even when VSA® is switched off.
When Driving

Precautions While Driving

In Rain
Avoid driving in deep water and on flooded roads. This can damage the engine or driveline, or cause electrical component failure.

Other Precautions
If there is a strong impact with something under the vehicle, stop in a safe location. Check the underside of the vehicle for damage or any fluid leaks.

NOTICE
Do not change the gear position while pressing the accelerator pedal. You could damage the transmission.

NOTICE
If you repeatedly turn the steering wheel at an extremely low speed, or hold the steering wheel in the full left or right position for a while, the electric power steering (EPS) system heats up. The system goes into a protective mode, and limits its performance. The steering wheel becomes harder and harder to operate. Once the system cools down, the EPS system is restored. Repeated operation under these conditions can eventually damage the system.

If the power mode is set to ACCESSORY while driving, the engine will shut down and all steering and brake power assist functions will stop, making it difficult to control the vehicle.

Do not change the gear position to [N], as you will lose engine braking (and acceleration) performance.

During the first 600 miles (1,000 km) of operation, avoid sudden acceleration or full throttle operation so as not to damage the engine or powertrain.

Avoid hard braking for the first 200 miles (300 km). You should also follow this when the brake pads are replaced.
Automatic Transmission

■ Creeping

The engine runs at a higher idle speed and creeping increases. Keep the brake pedal firmly depressed when stopped.

■ Kickdown

Quickly depressing the accelerator pedal while driving uphill may cause the transmission to drop to a lower gear, unexpectedly increasing vehicle speed. Depress the accelerator pedal carefully, especially on slippery roads and curves.
When Driving

Shifting

Change the gear position in accordance with your driving needs.

■ Shift button positions

Park
- Used when parking or starting the engine
- Transmission is locked

Reverse
- Used when reversing

Neutral
- Transmission is not locked

Drive/S Position
- Each time you press the D/S button, the mode switches between Drive and S Position mode.
- Used for:
  - Drive
    - Except ELITE and TOURING grade models
    - Normal driving (gears change between 1st and 9th automatically)
    - ELITE and TOURING grade models
    - Normal driving (gears change between 1st and 10th automatically)
  - All models
    - Temporarily driving in the sequential mode
  - S Position
    - Except ELITE and TOURING grade models
    - Automatically changing gears between 1st and 7th (7th gear is used only at high speed)
    - ELITE and TOURING grade models
    - Automatically changing gears between 1st and 8th (8th gear is used only at high speed)
  - All models
    - Driving in the sequential mode

WARNING

The vehicle can roll away if left unattended without confirming that Park is engaged.

A vehicle that rolls away could cause a crash resulting in serious injury or death.

Always keep your foot on the brake pedal until you have confirmed that [P] is shown on the gear position indicator.

To prevent malfunction and unintended engagement:
- Do not spill any liquids on or around shift buttons.
- Do not place or drop any objects on or around shift buttons.
- Do not let passengers or children operate the shift buttons.

The beeper sounds when you depress the accelerator pedal with the gear position in [N].
Change the gear position to [D] or [R] with the brake pedal depressed.

When shifting gears in extremely low temperatures (−22°F/−30°C), there may be a short delay before the shift is indicated in the display. Always confirm you are in the correct gear before driving.
When Driving

Shifting

■ P (park) button

Park your vehicle in a safe place with the power mode in ON, then apply the brakes and press the P button to put the transmission in Park. The indicators on the sides of the P button come on.
When Driving

Shift Operation

NOTICE
When you change D to R and visa versa, depress the brake pedal to come to a complete stop, then select the intended gear position while maintaining brake pressure.

Use the gear position indicator and the shift button indicator to check the gear position before selecting a shift button.

If the indicator of the currently selected gear position, or all the gear position indicators are blinking simultaneously, there is a problem with the transmission.

Avoid sudden acceleration and have the transmission checked by a dealer as soon as possible.

The fuel supply may be cut off if you drive at engine speeds in or over the tachometer’s red zone (engine speed limit). If this happens, you may experience a slight jolt.

When the engine speed is increased while the transmission is in N, P or R, the fuel supply may be cut off even without the engine speed entering the tachometer’s red zone.

The beeper sounds once when you change to R.

Models with color audio system

Vehicle Customization P. 133

Models with Display Audio

Customized Features P. 442
In freezing or sub-freezing conditions, the gear selection response may be slow. Always depress the brake pedal before changing the gear position to P, and confirm that P is shown on the gear position indicator before releasing the brake.

**When opening the driver’s door**
If you open the driver’s door under the following conditions, the gear position automatically changes to P:
- The vehicle is stationary with the engine running, or moving at 1 mph (2 km/h) or slower.
- The transmission is in other than P.
- You have unfastened the driver side seat belt.
  - If you manually change the gear position from P with the brake pedal depressed, the gear position will automatically return to P once you release the brake pedal.

**When turning off the power mode**
If you turn the engine off while the vehicle is stationary, and the transmission is in other than P, the gear position automatically changes to P.

---

**When opening the driver’s door**
You should always select P before opening the driver’s door. Make sure to park the vehicle in a safe place.

**When Stopped** P. 617
If you want to drive the vehicle after the gear position has automatically changed to P under the described conditions, close the door, fasten the seat belt, depress the brake pedal, then change the gear position.

If you leave the vehicle, turn off the engine and lock the doors.
If you want to keep the transmission in **N** position [car wash mode]

With the engine running:
1. Press and hold the brake pedal.
2. Select **N**，then release the button to display (Neutral) **N** hold mode on the driver information interface.
3. Press and hold **N** again for two seconds.
   - This puts the vehicle in car wash mode which must be used when your vehicle is pulled through a conveyor type automatic car wash where you or an attendant do not remain in the vehicle.

If the **ENGINE STOP/START** button is pressed after car wash mode has been activated, the power mode will change to ACCESSORY and a message will be displayed on the driver information interface.
   - For 15 minutes the gear position remains in **N** with the power mode in ACCESSORY. After that, the position automatically changes to **P** and the power mode changes to OFF.
   - Manually changing to **P** cancels ACCESSORY mode. The **P** indicator comes on and the power mode changes to OFF. You must always shift to **P** when car wash mode is no longer needed.

**NOTICE**

When transmission is too hot, carwash mode may not be available. Let the engine idle and cool down transmission.

---

**ELITE and TOURING grade models**

The transmission may not stay in **N** position while the following indicator is on:
- Transmission system indicator.
- Malfunction indicator lamp.
- Charging system indicator.
### Restriction on selecting a gear position

You cannot select a gear position under certain circumstances that may lead to unexpected crashes or damage.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>When the transmission is in:</th>
<th>1. Under the circumstances of that:</th>
<th>2. You cannot select:</th>
<th>3. The gear position remains in/changes to:</th>
<th>How to change the gear position</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>P</strong></td>
<td>The brake pedal is not depressed.</td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>P</strong></td>
<td>Release the accelerator pedal and depress the brake pedal.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The accelerator pedal is depressed.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>N</strong></td>
<td>The vehicle is moving at low speed without the brake pedal depressed.</td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>N</strong></td>
<td>Stop your vehicle in a safe place, depress the brake pedal, and select the appropriate gear position.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The vehicle is moving at low speed with the accelerator pedal depressed.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>N, D or S</strong></td>
<td>The vehicle is moving forward.</td>
<td><strong>R</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>R or N</strong></td>
<td>The vehicle is moving backward.</td>
<td><strong>D, S</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>R N, D or S</strong></td>
<td>The vehicle is moving.</td>
<td><strong>P</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Continued**
When Driving

Shifting

Sequential Mode

Use the paddle shifters to change between 1st and 9th* or 10th* gears without removing your hands from the steering wheel. The transmission will switch to the sequential mode.

- **When the transmission is in D:**
  The vehicle will go into the sequential mode momentarily, and the sequential mode gear selection indicator will come on.

  **ELITE and TOURING grade models**
  When the vehicle goes into the sequential mode by [-] paddle shifter and the lower gear is available, the transmission properly selects single or double gear change.

  Once you start traveling at a constant speed, the sequential mode will automatically switch off, and the sequential mode gear selection indicator will go off.

  Hold the [+] paddle shifter for two seconds to return to normal drive.

- **When the transmission is in S:**
  The vehicle will go into the sequential mode, and the M (sequential mode) indicator and sequential mode gear selection indicator will come on.

  If the vehicle speed increases and the engine speed reaches near the tachometer’s red zone, the transmission automatically shifts up to the next gear.

  You can cancel this mode by holding the [+] paddle shifter for two seconds. When the sequential mode is canceled, the sequential mode indicator and sequential mode gear selection indicator go off.

* Not available on all models
Sequential Mode Operation

Each paddle shift operation makes a single gear change. To change gears continuously, release the paddle shifter before pulling it again for the next gear.

If the sequential mode gear selection indicator blinks when you try to shift up or down, this means your vehicle speed is not in its allowable gear range or the protection of transmission system is necessary. Slightly accelerate to shift up and decelerate to shift down while the indicator is blinking.

Sequential Mode Gear Selection Indicator

- Paddle Shifter (Shift down)
- Paddle Shifter (Shift up)

Downshifting when pulling the paddle shifter.
(Changes to a lower gear)

Upshifting when pulling the paddle shifter.
(Changes to a higher gear)
Auto Idle Stop*

To help maximize fuel economy, the engine automatically stops when the vehicle comes to a stop, depending on environmental and vehicle operating conditions. The indicator (green) comes on.

The engine then restarts once the vehicle is about to move again, or depending on environmental and vehicle conditions, and the indicator (green) goes off.

A message associated with Auto Idle Stop appears on the driver information interface.

- **The Engine Automatically Restarts When:** P. 555
- **Indicators** P. 84
- **Customized Features** P. 442

If the driver's door is opened while the indicator comes on, a buzzer sounds to notify you that the Auto Idle Stop function is in operation.

**Auto Idle Stop System ON/OFF**

To turn the Auto Idle Stop system off, press this button. The Auto Idle Stop system stops.

The Auto Idle Stop system stops and the indicator (amber) will come on.

The Auto Idle Stop system is turned on every time you start the engine, even if you turned it off the last time you drove the vehicle.

---

* Not available on all models

---

**Auto Idle Stop**

The 12-volt battery installed in this vehicle is specifically designed for a model with Auto Idle Stop. Using a 12-volt battery other than this specified type may shorten the battery life, and prevent Auto Idle Stop from activating. If you need to replace the battery, make sure to select the specified type. Ask a dealer for more details.

The duration of the Auto Idle Stop operation:

- **Increase** in the ECON mode, compared to when the ECON mode is off, with climate control in use.

Auto Idle Stop may activate less frequently in such conditions as a traffic jam.
When Driving

Auto Idle Stop*

The vehicle stops with the gear position in D and the brake pedal depressed.

Auto Idle Stop does not activate when:
• The Auto Idle Stop OFF button is pressed.
• The driver’s seat belt is not fastened.
• The engine coolant temperature is low or high.
• The transmission fluid temperature is low or high.
• The vehicle comes to a stop again before the vehicle speed reaches 3 mph (5 km/h) after the engine starts.
• Stopped on a steep incline.
• The transmission is in a position other than D.
• The engine is started with the hood open.
  ▶ Turn off the engine. Close the hood before you restart the engine to activate Auto Idle Stop.
• The battery charge is low.
• The internal temperature of the battery is 14°F (~10°C) or less.
• The climate control system is in use, and the outside temperature is below –4°F (~20°C) or over 104°F (40°C).
• The climate control system is in use, and the temperature is set to Hi or Lo.
• ⚠️ is on (indicator on).
• When the rear fan is set to maximum speed.
  ▶ Auto Idle Stop may not activate under other conditions when the rear climate control system is in use.
• When the Intelligent Traction Management is set to Snow.

Do not open the hood while the Auto Idle Stop function is activated. If the hood is opened, the engine will not restart automatically.

In this case, restart the engine with the ENGINE START/STOP button.
   ❌ Starting the Engine P. 536

Pressing the ENGINE START/STOP button changes the power mode to ACCESSORY even while Auto Idle Stop is in operation. Once in ACCESSORY, the engine no longer restarts automatically. Follow the standard procedure to start the engine.
   ❌ Starting the Engine P. 536

Continued
When Driving

Auto Idle Stop may not activate when:

- The vehicle is stopped by braking suddenly.
- The steering wheel is operated.
- The fan speed is high.
- Altitude is high.
- The vehicle is repeatedly accelerated and decelerated at a low speed.
- The climate control system is in use, and there is a significant difference between the set temperature and the actual interior temperature.
- Humidity in the interior is high.
- The rear fan is set to maximum speed.

Auto Idle Stop may not activate under other conditions when the rear climate control system is in use.
When Driving

Auto Idle Stop

The Engine Automatically Restarts When:

- The brake pedal is released (without the automatic brake hold system activated).
- The accelerator pedal is depressed (with the automatic brake hold system activated).

Automatic Brake Hold P. 604

The engine restarts even if the brake pedal is depressed*1 when:

- The Auto Idle Stop OFF button is pressed.
- When a steering wheel is operated.
- The transmission is put into [R], [S], and [P], or taken out of [N] and put into [D].
- The pressure on the brake pedal is reduced and the vehicle starts moving while stopped on an incline.
- The pressure on the brake pedal is repeatedly applied and released slightly during a stop.
- The battery charge becomes low.
- The accelerator pedal is depressed.
- The driver's seat belt is unlatched.
- [H] is on (indicator on).
- The climate control system is in use, and the difference between the set temperature and actual interior temperature becomes significant.
- The climate control system is being used to dehumidify the interior.
- The rear fan is set to maximum speed.
  - Auto Idle Stop may not activate under other conditions when the rear climate control system is in use.
- When the Intelligent Traction Management is set to Snow.

The engine restarts even if the brake pedal is depressed*1 when:

- With the automatic brake hold system activated, you can release the brake pedal during Auto Idle Stop is in operation.

*1: With the automatic brake hold system activated, the device may temporarily be turned off when the engine restarts.
When Driving

Auto Idle Stop *

- The engine restarts even if the automatic brake hold system is activated when:
  - The automatic brake hold system is canceled and the electric parking brake is applied automatically.
  - The automatic brake hold system has a problem.

Starting Assist Brake Function

Briefly keeps the brake applied after releasing the brake pedal to restart the engine. This can keep your vehicle from unexpectedly moving while on an incline.
**ECON Button**

The **ECON** button turns the ECON mode on and off. The ECON mode helps you improve your fuel economy by adjusting the performance of the engine, air conditioning system, and cruise control.

While in ECON mode, the climate control system has greater temperature fluctuations.
Intelligent Traction Management

The Intelligent Traction Management optimizes vehicle performance to help you drive on various surfaces. The system has available modes to select from: Normal and Snow.

Press the SNOW button to select the appropriate mode. The mode you select appears on the driver information interface. When the vehicle is turned off and restarted, Intelligent Traction Management mode will revert to Normal.
Cruise Control*

Maintains a constant vehicle speed without having to keep your foot on the accelerator. Use cruise control on freeways or open roads where you can travel at a constant speed with little acceleration or deceleration.

When to use

■ Vehicle speed for cruise control:
  Desired speed in a range above roughly 25 mph (40 km/h) ~

■ Gear positions for cruise control:
  In D or S

Always keep sufficient distance between you and the vehicle in front of you.

How to use

CRUISE MAIN is on in the instrument panel. 
Cruise control is ready to use.

■ Press the CRUISE button on the steering wheel.

* Not available on all models

WARNING

Improper use of the cruise control can lead to a crash.

Use the cruise control only when traveling on open highways in good weather.

It may not be possible to maintain a constant speed when driving uphill or downhill.

When not using cruise control:
Turn off cruise control by pressing the CRUISE button.

While in the ECON mode, it may take relatively more time to accelerate to maintain the set speed.

Cruise control is not available when the snow mode is in operation.

Continued
When Driving

Cruise Control

To Set the Vehicle Speed

On when cruise control begins

Take your foot off the pedal and press the –/SET button when you reach the desired speed. The moment you release the –/SET button, the set speed is fixed, and cruise control begins. The CRUISE CONTROL appears on the driver information interface.

During cruise control, Straight Driving Assist Function is activated. This control function is an EPS function and it helps reduce the steering effort to keep the steering angle on a straight road with cants.
When Driving

Cruise Control

■ To Adjust the Vehicle Speed
Increase or decrease the vehicle speed using the RES/+ or –/SET button on the steering wheel.

- Each time you press the button, the vehicle speed is increased or decreased by about 1 mph (1.6 km/h).
- If you keep the button pressed, the vehicle speed increases or decreases until you release it. This speed is then set.

■ To Cancel
To cancel cruise control, do any of the following:
- Press the CANCEL button.
- Press the CRUISE button.
- Depress the brake pedal.
  The CRUISE CONTROL indicator goes off.

To Adjust the Vehicle Speed
You can set the vehicle speed using the –/SET button on the steering wheel when adjusting the speed with the accelerator and brake pedals.

To Cancel
Resuming the prior set speed:
After cruise control has been canceled, you can still resume the prior set speed by pressing the RES/+ button while driving at a speed of at least 25 mph (40 km/h) or more.

You cannot set or resume in the following situations:
- When vehicle speed is less than 25 mph (40 km/h)
- When the CRUISE button is turned off

At vehicle speeds of 22 mph (35 km/h) or less, cruise control is canceled automatically.
When Driving

Front Sensor Camera*

The camera, used in systems such as LKAS, RDM, ACC, Auto High-Beam, and CMBS™, is designed to detect an object that triggers any of the systems to operate its functions.

Camera Location and Handling Tips

This camera is located behind the rearview mirror.

To help reduce the likelihood that high interior temperatures will cause the camera’s sensing system to shut off, when parking, find a shady area or face the front of the vehicle away from the sun. If you use a reflective sun shade, do not allow it to cover the camera housing. Covering the camera can concentrate heat on it.

Never apply a film or attach any objects to the windshield, the hood, or the front grill that could obstruct the camera’s field of vision and cause the system to operate abnormally. Scratches, nicks, and other damage to the windshield within the camera’s field of vision can cause the system to operate abnormally. If this occurs, we recommend that you replace the windshield with a genuine Honda replacement windshield. Making even minor repairs within the camera’s field of vision or installing an aftermarket replacement windshield may also cause the system to operate abnormally. After replacing the windshield, have a dealer recalibrate the camera. Proper calibration of the camera is necessary for the system to operate properly.

Do not place an object on the top of the instrument panel. It may reflect onto the windshield and prevent the system from detecting lane lines properly.
When Driving Front Sensor Camera

If the **Some Driver Assist Systems Cannot Operate: Camera Temperature Too High** message appears:

- Use the climate control system to cool down the interior and, if necessary, also use defroster mode with the airflow directed towards the camera.
- Start driving the vehicle to lower the windshield temperature, which cools down the area around the camera.

If the **Some Driver Assist Systems Cannot Operate: Clean Front Windshield** message appears:

- Park your vehicle in a safe place, and clean the windshield. If the message does not disappear after you have cleaned the windshield and driven for a while, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

* Not available on all models
Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)*

Helps maintain a constant vehicle speed and a set following-interval behind a vehicle detected ahead of yours, without you having to keep your foot on the brake or the accelerator.

When to use

- The camera is located behind the rearview mirror.
- The radar sensor is inside the front grille.

- Vehicle speed for adaptive cruise control: Desired speed in a range above roughly 25 mph (40 km/h) ~
- Gear positions for adaptive cruise control: In D or S

**WARNING**

Improper use of ACC can lead to a crash.

Use ACC only when driving on expressways or freeways and in good weather conditions.

**WARNING**

ACC has limited braking capability.

When your vehicle speed drops below 22 mph (35 km/h), ACC will automatically cancel and no longer will apply your vehicle's brakes.

Always be prepared to apply the brake pedal when conditions require.

ACC can not be activated if Intelligent Traction Management setting is snow.

* Not available on all models
When Driving

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)*

Important Reminder
As with any system, there are limits to ACC. Use the brake pedal whenever necessary, and always keep a safe interval between your vehicle and other vehicles.

You can read about handling information for the camera equipped with this system.

Front Sensor Camera* P. 562

The radar sensor for ACC is shared with the Collision Mitigation Braking System™ (CMBS™).

Collision Mitigation Braking System™ (CMBS™)* P. 608

How to activate the system

Press the MAIN button on the steering wheel.

ACC is on in the driver information interface. Adaptive cruise control is ready to use.

* Not available on all models
When Driving

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)*

To Set the Vehicle Speed

- Take your foot off the pedal and press down the \(-/\text{SET}\) button when you reach the desired speed. The moment you release the button, the set speed is fixed, and ACC begins.

When ACC starts operating, the vehicle icon, interval bars and set speed appear on the driver information interface.

- ACC may not work properly under certain conditions. See ACC Conditions and Limitations on P. 569.

2. ACC Conditions and Limitations

When not using ACC: Turn off adaptive cruise by pressing the \(\text{MAIN}\) button. This also will turn off the Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS).

When the \(\text{MAIN}\) button is pressed, both ACC and the Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) are either turned on or off.

Do not use ACC under the following conditions:
- On roads with heavy traffic or while driving in continuous stop and go traffic.
- On roads with sharp turns.
- On roads with steep downhill sections, as the set vehicle speed can be exceeded by coasting. In such cases, ACC will not apply the brakes to maintain the set speed.
- On roads with toll collection facilities or other objects between lanes of traffic, or in parking areas, or facilities with drive through access.

* Not available on all models
**When Driving**

**Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)**

**When in Operation**

- **There is a vehicle ahead**
  ACC monitors if a vehicle ahead of you enters the ACC range. If a vehicle is detected doing so, the ACC system maintains or decelerates your vehicle’s set speed in order to keep the vehicle’s set following-interval from the vehicle ahead.

  - **To Set or Change Following-interval** P. 571

  ![ ACC Range: 394 ft. (120 m) ]

  When a vehicle whose speed is slower than your set speed is detected in front of you, your vehicle starts to slow down.

  ![ A vehicle icon appears on the driver information interface. ]

  Even if the interval between your vehicle and the vehicle detected ahead is short, ACC may start accelerating your vehicle under the following circumstances:
  - The vehicle ahead of you is going at almost the same speed as, or faster than, your vehicle.
  - A vehicle that cuts in front of you is going faster than your vehicle, gradually increasing the interval between the vehicles.

- **When in Operation**
  If the vehicle ahead of you slows down abruptly, or if another vehicle cuts in front of you, the beeper sounds, a message appears on the driver information interface. Depress the brake pedal, and keep an appropriate interval from the vehicle ahead.

  ![ BRAKE Beep ]

  ![ When in Operation ]
When Driving

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)*

There is no vehicle ahead

Your vehicle maintains the set speed without having to keep your foot on the brake or accelerator pedal.

If there previously was a vehicle detected ahead that kept your vehicle from traveling at the set speed, ACC accelerates your vehicle to the set speed, and then maintains it.

When you depress the accelerator pedal

You can temporarily increase the vehicle speed. In this case, there is no audible or visual alert even if a vehicle is in the ACC range.

ACC stays on unless you cancel it. Once you release the accelerator pedal, the system resumes an appropriate speed for keeping the following-interval while a vehicle ahead is within the ACC range.

When in Operation

You can also set the system to beep when a vehicle in front of you comes in and goes out of the ACC detecting range. Change the ACC Forward Vehicle Detect Beep setting.

Customized Features P. 442

Limitations

You may need to use the brake to maintain a safe interval when using ACC. Additionally, ACC may not work properly under certain conditions.

ACC Conditions and Limitations P. 569
When Driving

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)*

ACC Conditions and Limitations

The system may automatically shut off and the ACC indicator will come on under certain conditions. Some examples of these conditions are listed below. Other conditions may reduce some of the ACC functions.

Front Sensor Camera* P. 562

Environmental conditions
Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).

Roadway conditions
Driving on a snowy or wet roadway (obscured lane marking, vehicle tracks, reflected lights, road spray, high contrast).

Vehicle conditions
- The outside of the windshield is blocked by dirt, mud, leaves, wet snow, etc.
- An abnormal tire or wheel condition (wrong sized, varied size or construction, improperly inflated, compact spare tire, etc.).
- The camera temperature gets too high.
- The parking brake is applied.
- When the front grille is dirty.
- The vehicle is tilted due to a heavy load or suspension modifications.
- When tire chains are installed.

* Not available on all models

ACC Conditions and Limitations

Always keep the radar sensor cover clean.

Never use chemical solvents or polishing powder for cleaning the sensor cover. Clean it with water or a mild detergent.

Do not put a sticker on the radar sensor cover or replace the radar sensor cover.

If you need the radar sensor to be repaired, or removed, or the radar sensor cover is strongly impacted, turn off the system by pressing the MAIN button and take your vehicle to a dealer.

Have your vehicle checked by a dealer if you find any unusual behavior of the system (e.g., the warning message appears too frequently).

If the front of the vehicle is impacted in any of the following situations, the radar sensor may not work properly. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer:
- The vehicle mounted onto a bump, curb, chock, embankment, etc.
- You drive the vehicle where the water is deep.
- Your vehicle has a frontal collision.

* Not available on all models
Detection limitations

- A vehicle or pedestrian suddenly crosses in front of you.
- The interval between your vehicle and the vehicle or pedestrian ahead of you is too short.
- A vehicle or pedestrian cuts in front of you at a slow speed, and it brakes suddenly.
- When you accelerate rapidly and approach the vehicle or pedestrian ahead of you at high speed.
- The vehicle ahead of you is a motorcycle, bicycle, mobility scooter, or other small vehicle.
- When there are animals in front of your vehicle.
- When you drive on a curved or winding or undulating road that makes it difficult for the sensor to properly detect a vehicle or a pedestrian in front of you.
- The speed difference between your vehicle and a vehicle or pedestrian in front of you is significantly large.
- An oncoming vehicle suddenly comes in front of you.
- Your vehicle abruptly crosses over in front of an oncoming vehicle.
- When driving through a narrow iron bridge.
- When the vehicle ahead of you brakes suddenly.
- When the vehicle ahead of you has a unique shape.
- When your vehicle or the vehicle ahead of you is driving on one edge of the lane.
To Adjust the Vehicle Speed

Increase or decrease the vehicle speed using the RES/+ or –/SET buttons on the steering wheel.

- Each time you press the button, the vehicle speed is increased or decreased by about 1 mph or 1 km/h accordingly.
- If you keep the button pressed, the vehicle speed increases or decreases by about 5 mph or 5 km/h accordingly.

To Set or Change Following-interval

Press the (interval) button to change the ACC following-interval. Each time you press the button, the following-interval (the interval behind a vehicle detected ahead of you) setting cycles through short, middle, long, and extra long following-intervals.

To Adjust the Vehicle Speed

If a vehicle detected ahead is going at a speed slower than your increased set speed, ACC may not accelerate your vehicle. This is to maintain the set interval between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead.

You can switch the displayed set speed measurements on the driver information interface between mph and km/h.

Tips: Units P. 128

You can set the vehicle speed using the –/SET button on the steering wheel when adjusting the speed with the accelerator and brake pedals.
When Driving

Determine the most appropriate following-interval setting based on your specific driving conditions. Be sure to adhere to any following-interval requirements set by local regulation.

The higher your vehicle’s following-speed is, the longer the short, middle, long or extra long following-interval becomes. See the following examples for your reference.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Vehicle Interval</th>
<th>When the Set Speed is:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>50 mph (80 km/h)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Short</td>
<td>83 feet 25 meters 1.1 sec</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Middle</td>
<td>110 feet 33 meters 1.5 sec</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Long</td>
<td>154 feet 47 meters 2.1 sec</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Extra Long</td>
<td>204 feet 62 meters 2.8 sec</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
When Driving

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)*

■ To Cancel

To cancel ACC, do any of the following:
- Press the CANCEL button.
- Press the MAIN button.
- Depress the brake pedal.

■ Automatic cancellation

The beeper sounds and a message appears on the driver information interface when ACC is automatically canceled. Any of these conditions may cause the ACC to automatically cancel:
- Bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).
- When the radar sensor inside the front grille gets dirty.
- The vehicle ahead of you cannot be detected.
- An abnormal tire condition is detected, or the tires are skidding.
- Driving on a mountainous road, or driving off road for extended periods.
- Abrupt steering wheel movement.
- When the ABS or VSA® or CMBS™ is activated.
- When the ABS or VSA® system indicator comes on.
- When you manually apply the parking brake.
- When the detected vehicle within the ACC range is too close to your vehicle.
- The camera behind the rearview mirror, or the area around the camera, including the windshield, gets dirty.

To Cancel

Resuming the prior set speed: After you have canceled ACC, you can resume the prior set speed while it is still displayed. Press the RES/+ button when driving at a speed of at least 25 mph (40 km/h) or more.

The set speed cannot be set or resumed when ACC has been turned off using the MAIN button. Press the MAIN button to activate the system, then set the desired speed.

Automatic cancellation

Even though ACC has been automatically canceled, you can still resume the prior set speed. Wait until the condition that caused ACC to cancel improves, then press the RES/+ button.
When Driving

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)

Press and hold the (interval) button for one second. Cruise Mode Selected appears on the driver information interface for two seconds, and then the mode switches to Cruise. To switch back to ACC, press and hold the (interval) button again for one second. ACC Mode Selected appears on the driver information interface for two seconds.

When to use
Desired speed in a range above roughly 25 mph (40 km/h) ~.

To Switch ACC to Cruise Control

Always be aware which mode you are in. When you are driving in Cruise mode, the system will not assist you to maintain a following interval from a vehicle ahead of you.

You can switch the displayed set speed measurements on the driver information interface between mph and km/h.

Units P. 128

To Set the Vehicle Speed

Take your foot off the pedal and press the –/SET button when you reach the desired speed.

The moment you release the –/SET button, the set speed is fixed, and cruise control begins. The CRUISE CONTROL indicator comes on.

To Adjust the Vehicle Speed

Each time you press the RES/+ or –/SET button, the vehicle speed is increased or decreased by about 1 mph (1.6 km/h).

If you keep the RES/+ or –/SET button pressed, the vehicle speed increases or decreases until you release it. This speed is then set.
When Driving

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)

To Cancel

To cancel cruise control, do any of the following:

• Press the CANCEL button.
• Press the MAIN button.
• Depress the brake pedal.

The CRUISE CONTROL indicator goes off.

Resuming the prior set speed:

After cruise control has been canceled, you can still resume the prior set speed by pressing the RES/+ button while driving at a speed of at least 25 mph (40 km/h) or more.

You cannot set or resume in the following situations:

• When vehicle speed is less than 25 mph (40 km/h)
• When the MAIN button is turned off.

At vehicle speeds of 22 mph (35 km/h) or less, cruise control canceled automatically.
Road Departure Mitigation (RDM) System*

Alerts and helps to assist you when the system detects a possibility of your vehicle unintentionally crossing over detected lane markings and/or leaving the roadway altogether.

How the System Works

The front camera behind the rearview mirror monitors left and right lane markings (in white or yellow). If your vehicle is getting too close to detected lane markings without a turn signal activated, the system, in addition to a visual alert, applies steering torque and alerts you with rapid vibrations on the steering wheel, to help you remain within the detected lane.

- Customized Features P. 442

As a visual alert, the Lane Departure message appears on the driver information interface.

If the system determines that its steering input is insufficient to keep your vehicle on the roadway, it may apply braking.

- Braking is applied only when the lane markings are solid continuous lines.

The system cancels assisting operations when you turn the steering wheel to avoid crossing over detected lane markings.

If the system operates several times without detecting driver response, the system beeps to alert you.

Road Departure Mitigation (RDM) System*

Important Safety Reminder

Like all assistance systems, the RDM system has limitations. Over-reliance on the RDM system may result in a collision. It is always your responsibility to keep the vehicle within your driving lane.

The RDM system only alerts you when lane drift is detected without a turn signal in use. The RDM system may not detect all lane markings or lane or roadway departures; accuracy will vary based on weather, speed and lane marker condition. It is always your responsibility to safely operate the vehicle and avoid collisions.

You can read about handling information for the camera equipped with this system.

- Front Sensor Camera* P. 562

The RDM system may not work properly or may work improperly under the certain conditions:

- RDM Conditions and Limitations P. 579

There are times when you may not notice RDM functions due to your operation of the vehicle, or road surface conditions.

* Not available on all models
Continued

When Driving Road Departure Mitigation (RDM) System*

How the System Activates

The system becomes ready to start searching for lane markings when all the following conditions are met:

- The vehicle is traveling between about 45 and 90 mph (72 and 145 km/h).
- The vehicle is on a straight or slightly curved road.
- The turn signals are off.
- The brake pedal is not depressed.
- The wipers are not in continuous operation.
- The vehicle is not accelerating or braking, and the steering wheel is not being turned.
- The system makes a determination that the driver is not actively accelerating, braking or steering.

How the System Activates

The RDM system may automatically shut off and the indicator comes and stays on.

Indicators P. 84

RDM system function can be impacted when the vehicle is:

- Not driven within a traffic lane.
- Driven on the inside edge of a curve, or outside of a lane.
- Driven in a narrow lane.
When Driving

Road Departure Mitigation (RDM) System

Press the RDM button to turn the system on and off.

The indicator in the button comes on and the message appears on the driver information interface when the system is on.

When you have selected Warning Only from the customized options using the audio/information screen, the system does not operate the steering wheel and braking.


■ RDM Conditions and Limitations

The system may not properly detect lane markings and the position of your vehicle under certain conditions. Some examples of these conditions are listed below.

■ Environmental conditions
  • Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).
  • Sudden changes between light and dark, such as an entrance or exit of a tunnel.
  • There is little contrast between lane lines and the roadway surface.
  • Driving into low sunlight (e.g., at dawn or dusk).
  • Strong light is reflected onto the roadway.
  • Driving in the shadows of trees, buildings, etc.
  • Shadows of adjacent objects are parallel to lane markings.
  • Roadway objects or structures are misinterpreted as lane markers.
  • Reflections on the interior of the windshield.
  • Driving at night or in a dark condition such as a tunnel.
When Driving

Road Departure Mitigation (RDM) System

■ Roadway conditions
  • Driving on a snowy or wet roadway (obscured lane marking, vehicle tracks, reflected lights, road spray, high contrast).
  • Driving on a road with temporary lane markings.
  • Faint, multiple, or varied lane markings are visible on the roadway due to road repairs or old lane markings.
  • The roadway has merging, split, or crossing lines (e.g., such as at an intersection or crosswalk).
  • The lane markings are extremely narrow, wide, or changing.
  • The vehicle in front of you is driving near the lane lines.
  • The road is hilly or the vehicle is approaching the crest of a hill.
  • Driving on rough or unpaved roads, or over bumpy surfaces.
  • When objects on the road (curb, guard rail, pylons, etc.) are recognized as white lines (or yellow lines).
  • Driving on roads with double lines.

■ Vehicle conditions
  • Headlight lenses are dirty or the headlights are not properly adjusted.
  • The outside of the windshield is streaked or blocked by dirt, mud, leaves, wet snow, etc.
  • The inside of the windshield is fogged.
  • The camera temperature gets too high.
  • An abnormal tire or wheel condition (wrong sized, varied size or construction, improperly inflated, compact spare tire, etc.).
  • The vehicle is tilted due to a heavy load or suspension modifications.
  • When tire chains are installed.
Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)*

Provides steering input to help keep the vehicle in the middle of a detected lane and provides tactile and visual alerts if the vehicle is detected drifting out of its lane.

**Steering input assist**

The system applies torque to the steering to keep the vehicle between the left and right lane lines. The applied torque becomes stronger as the vehicle gets closer to either of the lane lines.

![LKAS camera](image)

- **LKAS camera**
  - Monitors the lane lines

- **Tactile and visual alerts**
  - Rapid vibrations on the steering wheel and a warning display alert you that the vehicle is drifting out of a detected lane.

When you operate the turn signals to change lanes, the system is suspended, and resumes after the signals are off.

- If you make a lane change without operating the turn signals, the LKAS alerts activate, and torque is applied to the steering.

**Important Safety Reminders**

The LKAS is for your convenience only. It is not a substitute for your vehicle control. The system does not work if you take your hands off the steering wheel or fail to steer the vehicle.

- **Driver Information Interface Warning and Information Messages** P. 102

Do not place objects on the instrument panel. Objects may reflect on the front windshield and prevent correct detection of the traffic lanes.

The LKAS only alerts you when lane drift is detected without a turn signal in use. The LKAS may not detect all lane markings or lane departures; accuracy will vary based on weather, speed, and lane marker condition. It is always your responsibility to safely operate the vehicle and avoid collisions.

The LKAS is convenient when it is used on freeways.

The LKAS may not work properly or may work improperly under the certain conditions:

- **LKAS Conditions and Limitations** P. 587

You can read about handling information for the camera equipped with this system:

- **Front Sensor Camera** P. 562

When it fails to detect lanes, the system will temporarily be canceled. When lane is detected, system will recover automatically.

* Not available on all models
When Driving

Lane Keep Support Function

Provides assistance to keep the vehicle in the center of the lane. When the vehicle nears a white or yellow line, steering force of the electric power steering will become stronger.

Lane Departure Warning Function

When the vehicle enters the warning area, the LKAS alerts you with slight steering wheel vibration as well as a warning display.

Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)*

The LKAS may not function as designed while driving in frequent stop and go traffic, or on roads with sharp curves.

When the vehicle enters the warning area, lane departure warning is provided by steering wheel vibration and display.

* Not available on all models
When the System can be Used

The system can be used when the following conditions are met.
• The lane in which you are driving has detectable lane markers on both sides, and your vehicle is in the center of the lane.
• The vehicle speed is between 45 and 90 mph (72 and 145 km/h).
• You are driving on a straight or slightly curved road.
• The turn signals are off.
• The brake pedal is not depressed.
• The wipers are not in continuous operation.

How to activate the system

1. Press the MAIN button.
   ▶ The LKAS indicator comes on in the driver information interface.
   The system is ready to use.

2. Press the LKAS button.
   ▶ Lane outlines appear on the driver information interface.
   The system is activated.

* Not available on all models
When Driving & Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)

3. Keep your vehicle near the center of the lane while driving.
   - The dotted outer lines change to solid ones once the system starts operating after detecting the left and right lane markings.

To Cancel

To cancel the LKAS:
Press the MAIN or LKAS button.

The LKAS is turned off every time you stop the engine, even if you turned it on the last time you drove the vehicle.

Pressing the MAIN button also turns ACC on and off.
When Driving

Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)

The system operation is suspended if you:

- Set the wipers to continuous operation.
  - Turning the wipers off resumes the LKAS.
- Decrease the vehicle speed to about 40 mph (64 km/h) or less.
  - Increasing the vehicle speed to about 45 mph (72 km/h) or more resumes the LKAS.
- Depress the brake pedal.
  - The LKAS resumes and starts detecting the lane lines again once you release the brake pedal.

Models with automatic intermittent wipers

- Set the wiper switch to AUTO and the wipers operate continuously.
  - The LKAS resumes when the wipers stop or operate intermittently.

Continued
When Driving
Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)

The LKAS may automatically be suspended when:
- The system fails to detect lane lines.
- The steering wheel is quickly turned.
- You fail to steer the vehicle.
- Driving through a sharp curve.
- Driving at a speed in excess of approximately 90 mph (145 km/h).

Once these conditions no longer exist, the LKAS automatically resumes.

The LKAS may automatically be canceled when:
- The camera temperature gets extremely high.
- The camera behind the rearview mirror, or the area around the camera, including the windshield, gets dirty.
- The ABS or VSA® system engages.

The beeper sounds if the LKAS is automatically canceled.
■ LKAS Conditions and Limitations

The system may not detect lane markings and therefore may not keep the vehicle in the middle of a lane under certain conditions, including the following:

■ Environmental conditions
  • Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).
  • Sudden changes between light and dark, such as an entrance or exit of a tunnel.
  • There is little contrast between lane lines and the roadway surface.
  • Driving into low sunlight (e.g., at dawn or dusk).
  • Strong light is reflected onto the roadway.
  • Driving in the shadows of trees, buildings, etc.
  • Shadows of adjacent objects are parallel to lane markings.
  • Roadway objects or structures are misinterpreted as lane markers.
  • Reflections on the interior of the windshield.
  • Driving at night or in a dark condition such as a tunnel.
When Driving
Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)

Roadway conditions
- Driving on a snowy or wet roadway (obscured lane marking, vehicle tracks, reflected lights, road spray, high contrast).
- Driving on a road with temporary lane markings.
- Faint, multiple, or varied lane markings are visible on the roadway due to road repairs or old lane markings.
- The roadway has merging, split, or crossing lines (e.g., such as at an intersection or crosswalk).
- The lane markings are extremely narrow, wide, or changing.
- The vehicle in front of you is driving near the lane lines.
- The road is hilly or the vehicle is approaching the crest of a hill.
- Driving on rough or unpaved roads, or over bumpy surfaces.
- When objects on the road (curb, guard rail, pylons, etc.) are recognized as white lines (or yellow lines).
- Driving on roads with double lines.

Vehicle conditions
- Headlight lenses are dirty or the headlights are not properly adjusted.
- The outside of the windshield is streaked or blocked by dirt, mud, leaves, wet snow, etc.
- The inside of the windshield is fogged.
- The camera temperature gets too high.
- An abnormal tire or wheel condition (wrong sized, varied size or construction, improperly inflated, compact spare tire, etc.).
- The vehicle is tilted due to a heavy load or suspension modifications.
When Driving

Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA®), aka Electronic Stability Control (ESC), System

VSA® helps to stabilize the vehicle during cornering if the vehicle turns more or less than what was intended. It also assists in maintaining traction on slippery surfaces. It does so by regulating engine output and selectively applying the brakes.

■ VSA® Operation

When VSA® activates, you may notice that the engine does not respond to the accelerator. You may also notice some noise from the hydraulic system. You will also see the indicator blink.

The VSA® may not function properly if tire type and size are mixed. Make sure to use the same size and type of tire, and the air pressures as specified.

When the VSA® system indicator comes on and stays on while driving, there may be a problem with the system. While this may not interfere with normal driving, have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

VSA® cannot enhance stability in all driving situations and does not control the entire braking system. You still need to drive and corner at speeds appropriate for the conditions and always leave a sufficient margin of safety.

The main function of the VSA® system is generally known as Electronic Stability Control (ESC). The system also includes a traction control function.

Continued
When Driving

Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA®), aka Electronic Stability Control (ESC), System

■ VSA® On and Off

This button is on the driver side control panel. To partially disable VSA® functionality/features, press and hold it until you hear a beep.

Your vehicle will have normal braking and cornering ability, but traction control function will be less effective.

To restore VSA® functionality/features, press the  (VSA® OFF) button until you hear a beep.

VSA® is turned on every time you start the engine, even if you turned it off the last time you drove the vehicle.

Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA®), aka Electronic Stability Control (ESC), System

In certain unusual conditions when your vehicle gets stuck in shallow mud or fresh snow, it may be easier to free it with the VSA® temporarily switched off.

When the  button is pressed, the traction control function becomes less effective. This allows for the wheels to spin more freely at low speed. You should only attempt to free your vehicle with the VSA® off if you are not able to free it when the VSA® is on.

Immediately after freeing your vehicle, be sure to switch VSA® on again. We do not recommend driving your vehicle with the VSA® system switched off.

You may hear a motor sound coming from the engine compartment while system checks are being performed immediately after starting the engine or while driving. This is normal.
Agile Handling Assist

Lightly brakes each of the front and rear wheels, as needed, when you turn the steering wheel, and helps support the vehicle’s stability and performance during cornering.

Agile Handling Assist

The agile handling assist cannot enhance stability in all driving situations. You still need to drive and corner at speeds appropriate for the conditions and always leave a sufficient margin of safety.

When the VSA® system indicator comes on and stays on while driving, the agile handling assist does not activate.

You may hear a sound coming from the engine compartment while the agile handling assist is activated. This is normal.
When Driving Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) with Tire Fill Assist

Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) with Tire Fill Assist

Monitors the tire pressure while you are driving. If your vehicle’s tire pressure becomes significantly low, the Low Tire Pressure/TPMS indicator comes on and a message appears on the driver information interface.

Conditions such as low ambient temperature and altitude change directly affect tire pressure and can trigger the Low Tire Pressure/TPMS indicator to come on.

If the Low Tire Pressure/TPMS Indicator Comes On or Blinks P. 720

Tire pressure checked and inflated in:
- Warm weather can become under-inflated in colder weather.
- Cold weather can become over-inflated in warmer weather.

The Low Tire Pressure/TPMS indicator will not come on as a result of over inflation.

The TPMS audibly and visually informs you of changes in tire pressure of the individual tire that you are adjusting using audible and visual indications.

If a change in tire pressure has been significant, the system beeps and the hazard lights flash continuously for five seconds when the specified tire pressure is reached. Stop filling the tire.
When Driving

Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) with Tire Fill Assist

To select the tire pressure monitor, please follow the following steps using the buttons on the steering wheel.

1. Set the power mode to ON.
2. Press the (home) button.
3. Press the / button repeatedly until Maintenance appears.
4. Press the ENTER button and select Tire Pressure by pressing the / button.
5. Press the ENTER button and the tire pressure appears on the driver information interface.

The pressure for each tire is displayed in psi.

Tire Pressures Low is displayed when a tire has significantly low pressure. The specific tire is displayed on the screen.

The pressure displayed on the driver information interface can be slightly different from the actual pressure as measured by a gauge. If there is a significant difference between the two values, or if the Low Tire Pressure/TPMS indicator and the message on the driver information interface do not go off after you have inflated the tire to the specified pressure, have the system checked by a dealer.

Tire Pressure Monitor Problem may appear if you drive with the compact spare tire, or there is a problem with the TPMS.
Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) - Required Federal Explanation

Each tire, including the spare (if provided), should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label.

(If your vehicle has tires of a different size than the size indicated on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label, you should determine the proper tire inflation pressure for those tires.)

As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) that illuminates a low tire pressure telltale

![低圧警告](image)

when one or more of your tires is significantly under-inflated.

Accordingly, when the low tire pressure telltale illuminates, you should stop and check your tires as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure.

Driving on a significantly under-inflated tire causes the tire to overheat and can lead to tire failure. Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life, and may affect the vehicle’s handling and stopping ability.
When Driving Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) - Required Federal Explanation

Please note that the TPMS is not a substitute for proper tire maintenance, and it is the driver’s responsibility to maintain correct tire pressure, even if under-inflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tire pressure telltale.

Your vehicle has also been equipped with a TPMS malfunction indicator to indicate when the system is not operating properly. The TPMS malfunction indicator is combined with the low tire pressure telltale. When the system detects a malfunction, the telltale will flash for approximately one minute and then remain continuously illuminated. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle start-ups as long as the malfunction exists.

When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tire pressure as intended.

TPMS malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tires or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS from functioning properly.

Always check the TPMS malfunction telltale after replacing one or more tires or wheels on your vehicle to ensure that the replacement or alternate tires and wheels allow the TPMS to continue to function properly.
Blind spot information (BSI) System*

Is designed to detect vehicles in specified alert zones adjacent to your vehicle, particularly in harder to see areas commonly known as “blind spots.” When the system detects vehicles approaching from behind in adjacent lanes, the appropriate indicator comes on for a few seconds, providing assistance when you change lanes.

■ How the system works

- The transmission is in D or S.
- Your vehicle speed is between 20 mph (32 km/h) and 100 mph (160 km/h)

Alert zone range
A: Approx. 1.6 ft. (0.5 m)
B: Approx. 10 ft. (3 m)
C: Approx. 10 ft. (3 m)

Radar Sensors: underneath the rear bumper corners

Alert Zone

A
B
C

* Not available on all models

WARNING

Failure to visually confirm that it is safe to change lanes before doing so may result in a crash and serious injury or death. Do not rely only on the blind spot information system when changing lanes. Always look in your mirrors, to either side of your vehicle, and behind you for other vehicles before changing lanes.

Important Safety Reminder

Like all assistance systems, BSI has limitations. Over reliance on BSI may result in a collision.

The system is for your convenience only. Even if an object is within the alert zone, the following situations may occur.
- The BSI alert indicator may not come on due to obstruction (splashes, etc.) even without the Blind Spot Info Not Available driver information interface appearing.
- The BSI alert indicator may come on even with the message appearing.

The BSI alert indicator may not come on under the following conditions:
- A vehicle does not stay in the alert zone for more than two seconds.
- A vehicle is parked in a side lane.
- The speed difference between your vehicle and the vehicle you are passing is greater than 6 mph (10 km/h).
- An object not detected by the radar sensors approaches or passes your vehicle.
- A vehicle running in the adjacent lane is a motorcycle or other small vehicle.
When Driving

Blind spot information (BSI) System

* Not available on all models

When the system detects a vehicle

BSI Alert Indicator: Located near the outside door mirror on both sides.

Comes on when:

• A vehicle enters the alert zone from behind to overtake you with a speed difference of no more than 31 mph (50 km/h) from your vehicle.
• You pass a vehicle with a speed difference of no more than 12 mph (20 km/h).

Blinks and the beeper sounds when:

You move the turn signal lever in the direction of the detected vehicle. The beeper sounds three times.

Blind spot information (BSI) System *

You can turn off the audible alert, or all the BSI alert using the audio/information screen.

Customized Features P. 442

Turn the system off when towing a trailer. The system may not work properly for the following reasons:

• The added mass tilts the vehicle and changes the radar coverage.
• The trailer itself can be detected by the radar sensors, causing the BSI alert indicators to come on.

BSI may be adversely affected when:

• Objects (guard rails, poles, trees, etc.,) are detected.
• An object that does not reflect radio waves well, such as a motorcycle, is in the alert zone.
• Driving on a curved road.
• A vehicle is moving from a far lane to the adjacent lane.
• The system picks up external electrical interference.
• The rear bumper or the sensors have been improperly repaired or the rear bumper has been deformed.
• The orientation of the sensors has been changed.
• In bad weather (Heavy rain, snow, and fog).

For proper BSI operation:

• Always keep the rear bumper corner area clean.
• Do not cover the rear bumper corner area with labels or stickers of any kind.
• Take your vehicle to a dealer if you need the rear bumper corner area or the radar sensors to be repaired, or the rear bumper corner area is strongly impacted.

The system does not operate when in R.
LaneWatch is an assistance system that allows you to check the passenger side rear areas displayed on the audio/information screen when the turn signal is activated to the passenger’s side. A camera in the passenger side door mirror monitors these areas and allows you to check for vehicles, in addition to your visual check and use of the passenger door mirror. You can also keep the system on for your convenience while driving.

### Canadian models

**LaneWatch™**

LaneWatch is an assistance system that allows you to check the passenger side rear areas displayed on the audio/information screen when the turn signal is activated to the passenger’s side. A camera in the passenger side door mirror monitors these areas and allows you to check for vehicles, in addition to your visual check and use of the passenger door mirror. You can also keep the system on for your convenience while driving.

1. **Move the turn signal lever to the passenger side.**
2. **Press the LaneWatch button.**
3. The passenger side view display appears on the audio/information screen.

The system activates when you:

- The turn signal lever is moved to the passenger side.
- The LaneWatch button is pressed.

The passenger side view display appears on the audio/information screen.

The system deactivates when you:

- Pull the turn signal lever back.
- Press the LaneWatch button again.

### Important Safety Reminder

**WARNING**

Failure to visually confirm that it is safe to change lanes before doing so may result in a crash and serious injury or death.

Do not rely only on LaneWatch while driving.

Always look in your mirrors, to either side of your vehicle, and behind you for other vehicles before changing lanes.

**Important Safety Reminder**

Like all assistance systems, LaneWatch has limitations. Over reliance on LaneWatch may result in a collision.

The LaneWatch function can be affected by weather, lighting (including headlights and low sun angle), ambient darkness, camera condition, and loading.

The LaneWatch may not provide the intended display of traffic to the side and rear under the following conditions:

- Your vehicle’s suspension has been altered, changing the height of the vehicle.
- Your tires are over or under inflated.
- Your tires or wheels are of varied size or construction.

* Not available on all models
When Driving

Customizing the LaneWatch settings
You can customize the following items using the audio/information screen.

- **Show with Turn Signal**: Selects whether LaneWatch monitor comes on when you operate the turn signal light lever.
- **Show Reference Line**: Selects whether the reference lines appear on the LaneWatch monitor.

Customized Features P. 442

Reference Lines
Three lines that appear on the screen can give an idea of how far the vehicles or objects on the screen are from your vehicle, respectively. If an object is near line 1 (in red), it indicates that it is close to your vehicle whereas an object near line 3 farther away.

LaneWatch™*
The LaneWatch camera view is restricted. Its unique lens makes objects on the screen slightly look different from what they are.

LaneWatch display does not come on when the transmission is in R.

For proper LaneWatch operation:
- The camera is located in the passenger side door mirror. Always keep this area clean. If the camera lens is covered with dirt or moisture, use a soft, moist cloth to keep the lens clean and free of debris.
- Do not cover the camera lens with labels or stickers of any kind.
- Do not touch the camera lens.

Reference Lines
The area around the reference line 1 (red) is very close to your vehicle. As always, make sure to visually confirm the safety of a lane change before changing lanes.

The distance between your vehicle and lines 1, 2 and 3 on the screen vary depending on road conditions and vehicle loading. For example, the reference lines on the screen may seem to appear closer than the actual distances when the rear of your vehicle is more heavily loaded.

Consult a dealer if:
- The passenger side door mirror, or area around it is severely impacted, resulting in changing the camera angle.
- The LaneWatch display does not come on at all.

* Not available on all models
Braking

Brake System

■ Parking Brake

Use the parking brake to keep the vehicle stationary when parked. When the parking brake is applied, you can manually or automatically release it.

■ To apply

Press the electric parking brake switch.

► The parking brake and brake system indicator comes on.

You may hear the electric parking brake system motor operating from the rear wheel area when you apply or release the parking brake, or set the power mode to OFF. This is normal.

The brake pedal may slightly move due to the electric parking brake system operation when you apply or release the parking brake. This is normal.

You cannot apply or release the parking brake if the battery goes dead.

► Jump Starting P. 711

If you press and hold the electric parking brake switch while driving the brakes on all four wheels are applied (by the VSA® system) until the vehicle comes to a stop (at which point the electric parking brake is applied) or the switch is released.
To release
1. Depress the brake pedal fully.
2. Pull the electric parking brake switch up gently and securely.
   ► The parking brake and brake system indicator goes off.

Manually releasing the parking brake using the switch helps your vehicle start slowly and smoothly when facing down hill on steep hills.

Parking Brake
In the following situations, the parking brake automatically operates.
- When the vehicle stops with the automatic brake hold system activated for more than 10 minutes.
- When the driver’s seat belt is unfastened while your vehicle is stopped and brake hold system is applied.
- When the engine is turned off while brake hold system is applied.
- When there is a problem with the Brake Hold System while Brake Hold is applied.
Braking

Brake System

To release automatically
Depressing the accelerator pedal releases the parking brake. Use the accelerator pedal to release the brake when you are starting the vehicle facing uphill, or in a traffic jam.

Gently depress the accelerator pedal. When on a hill, it may require more accelerator input to release.

The parking brake and brake system indicator goes off.

The parking brake automatically releases as you depress the accelerator pedal when:
- You are wearing the driver’s seat belt.
- The engine is running.
- The transmission is not in P or N.

Parking Brake

If the parking brake cannot be released automatically, release it manually.

The parking brake cannot be released automatically while the following indicators are on:
- Malfunction indicator lamp
- Transmission system indicator

The parking brake may not be released automatically while the following indicators are on:
- Parking brake and brake system indicator
- VSA® system indicator
- ABS indicator
- Supplemental restraint system indicator
Foot Brake

Your vehicle is equipped with disc brakes at all four wheels. A vacuum power assist helps reduce the effort needed on the brake pedal. The brake assist system increases the stopping force when you depress the brake pedal hard in an emergency situation. The anti-lock brake system (ABS) helps you retain steering control when braking very hard.

- Brake Assist System P. 607
- Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) P. 606

Check the brakes after driving through deep water, or if there is a buildup of road surface water. If necessary, dry the brakes by lightly depressing the pedal several times.

If you hear a continuous metallic friction sound when applying the brakes, this is caused by the brake wear indicator rubbing on the brake rotor and indicates that the brake pads need to be replaced. Have the vehicle checked by a dealer. If you hear only an occasional squeak or squeal when you initially apply the brake pedal, this may be normal and caused by high frequency vibration of the brake pads against the rotating brake disc.

Constantly using the brake pedal while going down a long hill builds up heat, which reduces the brake effectiveness. Apply engine braking by taking your foot off the accelerator pedal and downshifting to a lower gear.

Do not rest your foot on the brake pedal while driving, as it will lightly apply the brakes and cause them to lose effectiveness over time and reduce pad life. It will also confuse drivers behind you.
Braking ▶ Brake System

Automatic Brake Hold

Keeps the brake applied after releasing the brake pedal until the accelerator pedal is pressed. You can use this system while the vehicle is temporarily stopped, like at traffic lights and in heavy traffic.

- Turning on the system
  - Automatic Brake Hold Button
    - Fasten your seat belt properly, then start the engine. Press the automatic brake hold button.
    - The automatic brake hold system indicator comes on. The system is turned on.

- Activating the system
  - Brake Pedal
    - Depress the brake pedal to come to a complete stop. The transmission must be in D or N.
      - The automatic brake hold indicator comes on. Braking is kept for up to 10 minutes.
      - Release the brake pedal after the automatic brake hold indicator comes on.

- Canceling the system
  - Accelerator Pedal
    - Depress the accelerator pedal while the transmission is in D. The system is canceled and the vehicle starts to move.
    - The automatic brake hold system indicator comes on. The system continues to be on.

WARNING

Activating the automatic brake hold system on steep hills or slippery roads may still allow the vehicle to move if you remove your foot from the brake pedal.

If a vehicle unexpectedly moves, it may cause a crash resulting in serious injury or death.

Never activate the automatic brake hold system or rely on it to keep a vehicle from moving when stopped on a steep hill or slippery roads.

WARNING

Using the automatic brake hold system to park the vehicle may result in the vehicle unexpectedly moving.

If a vehicle moves unexpectedly, it may cause a crash, resulting in serious injury or death.

Never leave the vehicle when braking is temporarily kept by automatic brake hold and always park the vehicle by putting the transmission in P and applying the parking brake.
• The system automatically cancels when:
  • You depress the brake pedal and change to P or R.
  • You engage the parking brake.

• The system automatically cancels and the parking brake is applied when:
  • Braking is kept for more than 10 minutes.
  • The driver’s seat belt is unfastened.
  • The engine is turned off.
  • Brake Hold System Problem appears on the driver information interface.

• Turning off the automatic brake hold system
  While the system is on, press the automatic brake hold button again.
  The automatic brake hold system indicator goes off.

  If you want to turn off automatic brake hold while the system is in operation, press the automatic brake hold button with the brake pedal depressed.

• Automatic Brake Hold
  While the system is activated, you can turn off the engine or park the vehicle through the same procedure as you normally do.

  • When Stopped P. 617

  Whether the system is on, or the system is activated, the automatic brake hold turns off once the engine is off.

• Turning off the automatic brake hold system
  Make sure to turn off the automatic brake hold system before using an automated car wash.

  You may hear an operating noise if the vehicle moves while the automatic brake hold system is in operation. The system generates sound while holding the vehicle and it moves.
Braking

Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)

ABS

Helps prevent the wheels from locking up, and helps you retain steering control by pumping the brakes rapidly, much faster than you.

The electronic brake distribution (EBD) system, which is part of the ABS, also balances the front-to-rear braking distribution according to vehicle loading.

You should never pump the brake pedal. Let the ABS work for you by always keeping firm, steady pressure on the brake pedal. This is sometimes referred to as “stomp and steer.”

ABS operation

The brake pedal may pulsate slightly when the ABS is working. Keep holding the pedal firmly down. On dry pavement, you will need to press on the brake pedal very hard before the ABS activates. However, you may feel the ABS activate immediately if you are trying to stop on snow or ice.

ABS may activate when you depress the brake pedal when driving on:
- Wet or snow covered roads.
- Roads paved with stone.
- Roads with uneven surfaces, such as potholes, cracks, manholes, etc.

When the vehicle speed goes under 6 mph (10 km/h), the ABS stops.

NOTICE

The ABS may not function correctly if you use a tire of the wrong size or type.

If the ABS indicator comes on while driving, there may be a problem with the system. While normal braking will not be affected, there is a possibility that the ABS will not operating. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

The ABS is not designed for the purpose of reducing the time or distance it takes for a vehicle to stop: It is designed to limit brake lockup which can lead to skidding and loss of steering control.

In the following cases, your vehicle may need more distance to stop than a vehicle without the ABS:
- You are driving on rough or uneven road surfaces, such as gravel or snow.
- The tires are equipped with snow chains.

The following may be observed with the ABS system:
- Motor sounds coming from the engine compartment when the brakes are applied, or when system checks are being performed after the engine has been started and while vehicle is accelerates.
- Brake pedal and/or the vehicle body vibration when ABS activates.
These vibrations and sounds are normal to ABS systems and are no cause for concern.
Brake Assist System

Designed to assist the driver by generating greater braking force when you depress the brake pedal hard during emergency braking.

■ Brake assist system operation
Press the brake pedal firmly for more powerful braking.

When brake assist operates, the pedal may wiggle slightly and an operating noise may be heard. This is normal. Keep holding the brake pedal firmly down.
Collision Mitigation Braking System™ (CMBS™) *

Can assist you when there is a possibility of your vehicle colliding with a vehicle or a pedestrian detected in front of yours. The CMBS™ is designed to alert you when a potential collision is determined, as well as to reduce your vehicle speed to help minimize collision severity when a collision is deemed unavoidable.

How the system works

When to use

The camera is located behind the rearview mirror.

The radar sensor is in the front grille.

The system starts monitoring the roadway ahead when your vehicle speed is about 3 mph (5 km/h) and there is a vehicle in front of you.

The CMBS™ activates when:
- The speed difference between your vehicle and a vehicle or pedestrian detected in front of you becomes about 3 mph (5 km/h) and over with a chance of a collision.
- Your vehicle speed is about 62 mph (100 km/h) or less and there is a chance of a collision with an oncoming detected vehicle or a pedestrian in front of you.

Important Safety Reminder

The CMBS™ is designed to reduce the severity of an unavoidable collision. It does not prevent a collision nor stop the vehicle automatically. It is still your responsibility to operate the brake pedal and steering wheel appropriately according to the driving conditions.

The CMBS™ may not activate or may not detect a vehicle in front of your vehicle under certain conditions:

CMBS™ Conditions and Limitations P. 612

You can read about handling information for the camera equipped with this system.

Front Sensor Camera* P. 562

Be careful not to have the radar sensor cover strongly impacted.

How the system works

Rapid vibrations on the steering wheel alert you when the your vehicle speed is between 19 and 62 mph (30 and 100 km/h) with an oncoming vehicle detected in front of you.

When the CMBS™ activates, it may automatically apply the brake. It will be canceled when your vehicle stops or a potential collision is not determined.

* Not available on all models
When the system activates

The system provides visual, audible and tactile alerts of a possible collision, and stops if the collision is avoided.
- Take appropriate action to prevent a collision (apply the brakes, change lanes, etc.)

At system’s earliest collision alert stage, you can change the distance (Long/Normal/Short) between vehicles at which alerts will come on through audio/information screen setting options.

List of customizable options P. 455

Vibration alert on the steering wheel

When a potential collision to an oncoming detected vehicle is determined, the system alerts you with rapid vibration on the steering wheel, in addition to visual and audible alerts.
- Take appropriate action to prevent a collision (apply the brakes, operate the steering wheel, etc.).

Driving

When the system activates

The camera in the CMBS™ is also designed to detect pedestrians. However, this pedestrian detection feature may not activate or may not detect a pedestrian in front of your vehicle under certain conditions. Refer to the ones indicating the pedestrian detection limitations from the list.

CMBS™ Conditions and Limitations P. 612

Vibration alert on the steering wheel

Vibration alert function is disabled when the electric power steering (EPS) system indicator comes on.

Electric Power Steering (EPS) System Indicator P. 91
Collision Alert Stages

The system has three alert stages for a possible collision. However, depending on circumstances, the CMBS™ may not go through all of the stages before initiating the last stage.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Distance between vehicles</th>
<th>CMBS™</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The sensors detect a vehicle</td>
<td>Audible &amp; Visual WARNINGS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage one</td>
<td>There is a risk of a collision with the vehicle ahead of you.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage two</td>
<td>The risk of a collision has increased, time to respond is reduced.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage three</td>
<td>The CMBS™ determines that a collision is unavoidable.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Press and hold the button until the beeper sounds to switch the system on or off.

When the CMBS™ is off:
- The CMBS™ indicator in the instrument panel comes on.
- A message on the driver information interface reminds you that the system is off.

The CMBS™ is turned on every time you start the engine, even if you turned it off the last time you drove the vehicle.
Braking Collision Mitigation Braking System™ (CMBS™) *

CMBS™ Conditions and Limitations

The system may automatically shut off and the CMBS™ indicator will come on under certain conditions. Some examples of these conditions are listed below. Other conditions may reduce some of the CMBS™ functions.

Environmental conditions
- Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).
- Sudden changes between light and dark, such as an entrance or exit of a tunnel.
- There is little contrast between objects and the background.
- Driving into low sunlight (e.g., at dawn or dusk).
- Strong light is reflected onto the roadway.
- Driving in the shadows of trees, buildings, etc.
- Roadway objects or structures are misinterpreted as vehicles and pedestrians.
- Reflections on the interior of the windshield.
- Driving at night or in a dark condition such as a tunnel.

Roadway conditions
- Driving on a snowy or wet roadway (obscured lane marking, vehicle tracks, reflected lights, road spray, high contrast).
- The road is hilly or the vehicle is approaching the crest of a hill.
- Driving on curvy, winding, or undulating roads.

CMBS™ Conditions and Limitations

Do not paint, or apply any coverings or paint to the radar sensor area. This can impact CMBS™ operation.

Have your vehicle checked by a dealer if you find any unusual behavior of the system (e.g., the warning message appears too frequently).

If the front of the vehicle is impacted in any of the following situations, the radar sensor may not work properly. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer:
- The vehicle mounted onto a bump, curb, chock, embankment, etc.
- You drive the vehicle where the water is deep.
- Your vehicle has a frontal collision.

If you need the radar sensor to be repaired, or removed, or the radar sensor cover is strongly impacted, turn off the system by pressing the CMBS™ OFF button and take your vehicle to a dealer.

* Not available on all models
Vehicle conditions

- Headlight lenses are dirty or the headlights are not properly adjusted.
- The outside of the windshield is blocked by dirt, mud, leaves, wet snow, etc.
- The inside of the windshield is fogged.
- An abnormal tire or wheel condition (wrong sized, varied size or construction, improperly inflated, compact spare tire, etc.).
- When tire chains are installed.
- The vehicle is tilted due to a heavy load or suspension modifications.
- The camera temperature gets too high.
- Driving with the parking brake applied.
- When the radar sensor in the front grille gets dirty.
Braking
Collision Mitigation Braking System™ (CMBS™) *

**Detection limitations**

- A vehicle or pedestrian suddenly crosses in front of you.
- The distance between your vehicle and the vehicle or pedestrian ahead of you is too short.
- A vehicle cuts in front of you at a slow speed, and it brakes suddenly.
- When you accelerate rapidly and approach the vehicle or pedestrian ahead of you at high speed.
- The vehicle ahead of you is a motorcycle, bicycle, mobility scooter or other small vehicle.
- When there are animals in front of your vehicle.
- When you drive on a curved, winding or undulating road that makes it difficult for the sensor to properly detect a vehicle in front of you.
- The speed difference between your vehicle and a vehicle or pedestrian in front of you is significantly large.
- An oncoming vehicle suddenly comes in front of you.
- Another vehicle suddenly comes in front of you at an intersection, etc.
- Your vehicle abruptly crosses over in front of an oncoming vehicle.
- When driving through a narrow iron bridge.
- When the lead vehicle suddenly slows down.

**Limitations applicable to pedestrian detection only**

- When there is a group of people in front of your vehicle walking together side by side.
- Surrounding conditions or belongings of the pedestrian alter the pedestrian's shape, preventing the system from recognizing that the person is a pedestrian.
- When the pedestrian is shorter than about 3.3 feet (1 meter) or taller than about 6.6 feet (2 meters) in height.
- When a pedestrian blends in with the background.
- When a pedestrian is bent over or squatting, or when their hands are raised or they are running.
- When several pedestrians are walking ahead in a group.
- When the camera cannot correctly identify that a pedestrian is present due to an unusual shape (holding luggage, body position, size).
■ Automatic shutoff
CMBSTM may automatically shut itself off and the CMBSTM indicator comes and stays on when:
- The temperature inside the system is high.
- You drive off-road or on a mountain road, or curved and winding road for an extended period.
- An abnormal tire condition is detected (wrong tire size, flat tire, etc.).
- The camera behind the rearview mirror, or the area around the camera, including the windshield, gets dirty.
Once the conditions that caused CMBSTM to shut off improve or are addressed (e.g., cleaning), the system comes back on.
Braking

Collision Mitigation Braking System™ (CMBS™) *

With Little Chance of a Collision

The CMBS™ may activate even when you are aware of a vehicle ahead of you, or when there is no vehicle ahead. Some examples of this are:

- **When passing**
  Your vehicle approaches another vehicle ahead of you and you change lanes to pass.

- **At an intersection**
  Your vehicle approaches or passes another vehicle that is making a left or right turn.

- **On a curve**
  When driving through curves, your vehicle comes to a point where an oncoming vehicle is right in front of you.

- **Through a low bridge at high speed**
  You drive under a low or narrow bridge at high speed.

- **Speed bumps, road work sites, train tracks, roadside objects, etc.**
  You drive over speed bumps, steel road plates, etc., or your vehicle approaches train tracks or roadside objects [such as a traffic sign and guard rail] on a curve or, when parking, stationary vehicles and walls.

For the CMBS™ to work properly:

- Always keep the radar sensor cover clean.

- Never use chemical solvents or polishing powder for cleaning the sensor cover. Clean it with water or a mild detergent.
Parking Your Vehicle

When Stopped

1. Depress the brake pedal firmly.
2. With the brake pedal depressed, press the electric parking brake switch slowly, but fully.
3. Change the gear position to [P].
4. Turn off the engine.
   The parking brake and brake system indicator goes off in about 15 seconds.

Do not park your vehicle near flammable objects, such as dry grass, oil, or timber.
Heat from the exhaust can cause a fire.

The following can damage the transmission:
• Depressing the accelerator and brake pedals simultaneously.
• Changing into [P] before the vehicle stops completely.

In extremely cold temperatures, the parking brake may freeze up if applied. If such temperatures are expected, do not apply the parking brake but, if parking on a slope, either turn the front wheels so they will contact the curb if the vehicle rolls down the slope or block the wheels to keep the vehicle from moving. If you do not take either precaution, the vehicle may roll unexpectedly, leading to a crash.
Always confirm the electric parking brake is set, particularly if you are parked on an incline.

**WARNING**

The vehicle can roll away if left unattended without confirming that Park is engaged.

A vehicle that rolls away could cause a crash resulting in serious injury or death.

Always keep your foot on the brake pedal until you have confirmed that [P] is shown on the gear position indicator.

When facing uphill, do not hold the vehicle by depressing the accelerator pedal. Doing so may cause the items to malfunction or a fire inside the vehicle.
Parking Sensor System*

The corner and center sensors monitor obstacles near your vehicle. The beeper and audio/information screen let you know the approximate distance between your vehicle and the obstacle.

**The sensor location and range**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Front Corner Sensors</th>
<th>Rear Corner Sensors</th>
<th>Rear Center Sensors</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Within about 24 in (60 cm) or less</td>
<td>Within about 43 in (110 cm) or less</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Even when the system is on, always confirm if there is no obstacle near your vehicle before parking.

The system may not work properly when:
- The sensors are covered with snow, ice, mud or dirt, etc.
- The vehicle is on uneven surface, such as grass, bumpy road, or a hill.
- The vehicle has been out in hot or cold weather.
- The system is affected by devices that emit ultrasonic waves.
- Driving in bad weather.

The system may not sense:
- Thin or low objects.
- Sonic-absorptive materials, such as snow, cotton, or sponge.
- Objects directly under the bumper.

Do not put any accessories on or around the sensors.

---

* Not available on all models

*Continued*
Parking sensor system on and off

With the power mode in ON, press the parking sensor system button to turn on or off the system. The indicator in the button comes on when the system is on.

The rear center and corner sensors start to detect an obstacle when the transmission is in **R**, and the vehicle speed is less than 5 mph (8 km/h).

The front corner sensors start to detect an obstacle when the transmission is not in **P**, and the vehicle speed is less than 5 mph (8 km/h).
Screen Operation

You can switch between split view off and split view on by touching the split screen tab.

Screen Operation

The split screen tab disappears, and the split view returns to the last camera view mode under the following conditions:
• If the parking sensor system is turned off.
• If there is a malfunction in the system.
### When the distance between your vehicle and obstacles behind becomes shorter

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Length of the intermittent beep</th>
<th>Distance between the Bumper and Obstacle</th>
<th>Indicator</th>
<th>Audio/information screen</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Corner Sensors</td>
<td>Center Sensors</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Moderate</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>Rear: About 43-24 in (110-60 cm)</td>
<td>Blinks in Yellow*1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Short</td>
<td>About 24-18 in (60-45 cm)</td>
<td>About 24-18 in (60-45 cm)</td>
<td>Blinks in Amber</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Very short</td>
<td>About 18-14 in (45-35 cm)</td>
<td>About 18-14 in (45-35 cm)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Continuous</td>
<td>About 14 in (35 cm) or less</td>
<td>About 14 in (35 cm) or less</td>
<td>Blinks in Red</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*1: At this stage, only the center sensors detect obstacles.
Turning off All Rear Sensors

1. Make sure that the parking sensor system is not activated. Set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF.
2. Press and hold the parking sensor system button, and set the power mode to ON.
3. Keep pressing the button for 10 seconds. Release the button when the indicator in the button blinks.
   - The beeper sounds once.
4. Press the button again. The indicator in the button goes off.
   - The beeper sounds twice. The rear sensors are now turned off.

To turn the rear sensors on again, follow the above procedure. The beeper sounds three times when the rear sensors come back on.
Cross Traffic Monitor*

Monitors the rear corner areas using the radar sensors when reversing, and alerts you if a vehicle approaching from a rear corner is detected.

The system is convenient when you are backing out of a parking space.

CAUTION

Cross Traffic Monitor cannot detect all approaching vehicles and may not detect an approaching vehicle at all.

Failure to visually confirm that it is safe to back up the vehicle before doing so may result in a collision.

Do not solely rely on the system when reversing; always also use your mirrors, and look behind and to the sides of your vehicle before reversing.

* Not available on all models
How the System Works

The system activates when:

- The power mode is in ON.
- The Cross Traffic Monitor system is turned on.
- The transmission is in [R].
- Your vehicle is moving at 3 mph (5 km/h) or lower.

When a vehicle is detected approaching from a rear corner, Cross Traffic Monitor alerts you with a buzzer and a displayed warning.

The system will not detect a vehicle that approaches from directly behind your vehicle, nor will it provide alerts about a detected vehicle when it moves directly behind your vehicle.

The system does not provide alerts for a vehicle that is moving away from your vehicle, and it may not detect or alert for pedestrians, bicycles, or stationary objects.

Cross Traffic Monitor*

Cross Traffic Monitor may not detect or may delay alerting an approaching vehicle, or may alert without an approaching vehicle under the following conditions:

- An obstacle, such as another vehicle and a wall, near your vehicle’s rear bumper, is blocking the radar sensor’s scope.
- Your vehicle is moving at the speed of about 3 mph (5 km/h) or higher.
- A vehicle is approaching at the speed other than between about 6 and 16 mph (10 and 25 km/h).
- The system picks up external interference such as other radar sensors from another vehicle or strong radio wave transmitted from a facility nearby.
- Either corner of the rear bumper is covered with snow, ice, mud or dirt.
- When there is bad weather.
- Your vehicle is on an incline.
- Your vehicle is tilted due to a heavy load in the rear.
- Your vehicle is reversing towards a wall, a pole, a vehicle, and so on.
- The rear bumper or the sensors have been improperly repaired or the rear bumper has been deformed. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

For proper operation, always keep the rear bumper corner area clean.
Do not cover the rear bumper corner area with labels or stickers of any kind.

* Not available on all models
Parking Your Vehicle

Cross Traffic Monitor*

- When the System Detects a Vehicle

An arrow icon appears on the side a vehicle is approaching on the audio/information screen.

- Cross Traffic Monitor *

The parking sensor system’s alerting buzzer overrides the Cross Traffic Monitor buzzer when the parking sensors are detecting obstacles at the closest range.

- When the System Detects a Vehicle

If the icon on the lower right changes to in amber when the transmission is in \( R \), mud snow or ice may have accumulated in the vicinity of the sensor. The system is temporarily canceled. Check the bumper corners for any obstructions, and thoroughly clean the area if necessary.

If the icon comes on when the transmission is in \( R \), there may be a problem with the Cross Traffic Monitor system. Do not use the system and have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

If the display remains the same with the gear position is in \( R \), there may be a problem with the rear camera system and the Cross Traffic Monitor system. Do not use the system and have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

* Not available on all models
Cross Traffic Monitor On and Off

You can switch on and off the system using the audio/information screen.

1. Select 
2. Select Settings.
3. Select Camera.
4. Select Rear Camera.
5. Select Cross Traffic Monitor.
6. Select ON or OFF.

The system can also be turned on and off on the audio/information screen by pressing the CTM icon.
About Your Multi-View Rear Camera

The audio/information screen can display your vehicle’s rear view. The display automatically changes to the rear view when the transmission is put into \textit{R}.

- **Multi-View Rear Camera Display Area**

  - **Guidelines**
  - **Bumper**
  - **Camera**

  - **Wide View Mode**
  - **Normal View Mode**
  - **Top Down View Mode**

- **Models with color audio system**
  - You can change the \textit{Camera Guideline On} or \textit{Off} settings.

- **Models with Display Audio**
  - You can change the \textit{Fixed}, \textit{Dynamic}, \textit{Both} and \textit{OFF} settings.

- **Driving**
  - Approx. 20 inches (50 cm)
  - Tailgate Open Range
  - Approx. 39 inches (1 m)
  - Approx. 79 inches (2 m)
  - Approx. 118 inches (3 m)

- **Approx. 20 inches (50 cm)**
  - Tailgate Open Range
  - Approx. 39 inches (1 m)
  - Approx. 79 inches (2 m)
  - Approx. 118 inches (3 m)

- **About Your Multi-View Rear Camera**
  - The rear camera view is restricted. You cannot see the corner ends of the bumper or what is underneath the bumper. Its unique lens also makes objects appear closer or farther than they actually are.

  - Visually confirm that it is safe to drive before backing up. Certain conditions (such as weather, lighting, and high temperatures) may also restrict the rear view. Do not rely on the rearview display which does not give you all information about conditions at the back of your vehicle.

  - If the camera lens is covered with dirt or moisture, use a soft, moist cloth to keep the lens clean and free of debris.

- **Fixed**: Guidelines appear when you put the transmission into \textit{R}.
- **Dynamic**: Guidelines move according to the steering wheel direction.
- **Both**: Guidelines appear when you put the transmission into \textit{R} and Guidelines move according to the steering wheel direction.
- **OFF**: Guidelines do not appear.
You can view three different camera angles on the rearview display.

**Models with color audio system**
Press the selector knob to switch the angle.

**Models with Display Audio**
Select the appropriate icon to switch the angle.

- Wide view
- Normal view
- Top down view

- If the last used viewing mode was Wide or Normal, the same mode is selected the next time you put the transmission into [R].
- If Top down view was last used before you set the power mode to OFF, Wide View mode is selected next time you set the power mode to ON and put the transmission into [R].
- If Top down view was last used more than 10 seconds after you put the transmission out of [R], Wide View mode is selected the next time you put the transmission into [R].
Fuel Information

■ Fuel recommendation

Unleaded gasoline, pump octane number 87 or higher

Use of a lower octane gasoline can cause a persistent, heavy metallic knocking noise that can lead to engine damage.

■ Top tier detergent gasoline

Because the level of detergency and additives in gasoline vary in the market, Honda endorses the use of “TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline” where available to help maintain the performance and reliability of your vehicle. TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline meets a new gasoline standard jointly established by leading automotive manufacturers to meet the needs of today’s advanced engines.

Qualifying gasoline retailers will, in most cases, identify their gasoline as having met “TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline” standards at the retail location. This fuel is guaranteed to contain the proper level of detergent additives and be free of metallic additives. The proper level of detergent additives, and absence of harmful metallic additives in gasoline, help avoid build-up of deposits in your engine and emission control system.

For further important fuel-related information for your vehicle, or on information on gasoline that does not contain MMT, visit www.hondacars.com. In Canada, visit www.honda.ca for additional information on gasoline. For more information on top tier gasoline, visit www.toptiergas.com.

■ Fuel tank capacity: 19.5 US gal (73.8 liters)
How to Refuel

Your fuel tank is not equipped with a fuel filler cap. You can insert the filler nozzle directly into the filler neck. The tank seals itself again when you pull out the filler nozzle.

1. Stop your vehicle with the service station pump on the left side of the vehicle in the rear.
2. Turn off the engine.
3. Unlock the driver’s door using the master door lock switch.
   - The fuel fill door on the outer side of the vehicle will unlock.
4. Press firmly and then release the area indicated by the arrow to release the fuel filler door.

WARNING
Gasoline is highly flammable and explosive. You can be burned or seriously injured when handling fuel.

- Stop the engine, and keep heat, sparks, and flame away.
- Handle fuel only outdoors.
- Wipe up spills immediately.

The fuel filler opening is designed to accept only service station filler nozzles for refueling. Use of smaller diameter tubes (e.g., those used to siphon fuel for other uses) or other non-service station devices can damage the area in and around the filler opening.

The filler nozzle automatically stops to leave space in the fuel tank so that fuel does not overflow as a result of changes in air temperature.

If the filler nozzle keeps turning off when the tank is not full, there may be a problem with the pump’s fuel vapor recovery system. Try filling at another pump. If this does not fix the problem, consult a dealer.
5. Place the end of the filler nozzle on the lower part of filler opening, then insert it slowly and fully.
   - Make sure that the end of the filler nozzle goes down along with the filler pipe.
   - Keep the filler nozzle level.
   - When the tank is full, the filler nozzle will click off automatically.
   - After filling, wait about five seconds before removing the filler nozzle.

6. Shut the fuel fill door by hand.

How to Refuel

Use the lock tab or the master door lock switch to unlock the fuel fill door. The vehicle doors and fuel fill door automatically relock if the remote unlock function is used. This can be deactivated by briefly opening then closing the driver’s door.

Do not continue to add fuel after the filler nozzle has automatically stopped. Additional fuel can exceed the full tank capacity.

If you have to refuel your vehicle from a portable container, use the funnel provided with your vehicle.

Refueling From a Portable Fuel Container
P. 734
Improving Fuel Economy and Reducing CO₂ Emissions

Achieving fuel economy and reducing CO₂ emissions is dependent on several factors, including driving conditions, load weight, idling time, driving habits, and vehicle condition. Depending on these and other factors, you may not achieve the rated fuel economy of this vehicle.

Maintenance and Fuel Economy

You can optimize your fuel economy with proper maintenance of your vehicle. Always maintain your vehicle in accordance with the messages displayed on the driver information interface.

- Use the recommended viscosity engine oil, displaying the API Certification Seal.
- Maintain the specified tire pressure.
- Do not load the vehicle with excess cargo.
- Keep your vehicle clean. A buildup of snow or mud on your vehicle’s underside adds weight and increases wind resistance.

In Canada, posted fuel economy numbers are established following a simulated test. For more information on how this test is performed, please visit http://oee.nrcan.gc.ca/
Maintenance

This chapter discusses basic maintenance.
Before Performing Maintenance

Inspection and Maintenance

For your safety, perform all listed inspections and maintenance to keep your vehicle in good condition. If you become aware of any abnormality (noise, smell, insufficient brake fluid, oil residue on the ground, etc.), have your vehicle inspected by a dealer. (Note, however, that service at a dealer is not mandatory to keep your warranties in effect.)

■ Types of Inspection and Maintenance

□ Daily inspections
Perform inspections before long distance trips, when washing the vehicle, or when refueling.

□ Periodic inspections
• Check the brake fluid level monthly.  
  \(\text{Brake Fluid} \ P. 656\)
• Check the tire pressure monthly. Examine the tread for wear and foreign objects.  
  \(\text{Checking and Maintaining Tires} \ P. 673\)
• Check the operation of the exterior lights monthly.  
  \(\text{Replacing Light Bulbs} \ P. 658\)
• Check the condition of the wiper blades at least every six months.  
  \(\text{Checking and Maintaining Wiper Blades} \ P. 669\)

□ Maintenance, replacement, or repair of emissions control devices and systems may be done by any automotive repair establishment or individuals using parts that are “certified” to EPA standards.

According to state and federal regulations, failure to perform maintenance on the maintenance main items marked with # will not void your emissions warranties. However, all maintenance services should be performed in accordance with the intervals indicated by the driver information interface.

□ If you want to perform complex maintenance tasks that require more skills and tools, you can purchase a subscription to the Service Express website at www.techinfo.honda.com.

If you want to perform maintenance yourself, make sure that you have the necessary tools and skills first. After performing maintenance, update the records in the separate maintenance booklet.
Safety When Performing Maintenance

Some of the most important safety precautions are given here. However, we cannot warn you of every conceivable hazard that can arise in performing maintenance. Only you can decide whether you should perform a given task.

### Maintenance Safety

- To reduce the possibility of fire or explosion, keep cigarettes, sparks, and flames away from the battery and all fuel related parts.
- Never leave rags, towels, or other flammable objects under the hood.
  - Heat from the engine and exhaust can ignite them causing a fire.
- To clean parts, use a commercially available degreaser or parts cleaner, not gasoline.
- Wear eye protection and protective clothing when working with the battery or compressed air.
- Engine exhaust contains carbon monoxide, which is poisonous and can kill you.
  - Only operate the engine if there is sufficient ventilation.

### Vehicle Safety

- The vehicle must be in a stationary condition.
  - Make sure your vehicle is parked on level ground, the parking brake is set, and the engine is off.
- Be aware that hot parts can burn you.
  - Make sure to let the engine and exhaust system cool thoroughly before touching vehicle parts.
- Be aware that moving parts can injure you.
  - Do not start the engine unless instructed, and keep your hands and limbs away from moving parts.

**Models with Auto Idle Stop**

- Do not open the hood while the Auto Idle Stop function is activated.
Parts and Fluids Used in Maintenance Service

The use of Honda genuine parts and fluids is recommended when maintaining and servicing your vehicle. Honda genuine parts are manufactured according to the same high quality standards used in Honda vehicles.
If the engine oil life is less than 15%, you will see the Maintenance Minder messages appear on the driver information interface every time you set the power mode to ON. The messages notify you when to change the engine oil, or when to bring your vehicle to a dealer for indicated maintenance services.
To Use Maintenance Minder™

Displaying the Maintenance Minder Information

Maintenance items, which should be serviced at the same time that you replace the engine oil, appear on the driver information interface. You can view them on the engine oil life screen at any time.

1. Set the power mode to ON.
2. Press the ENTER button repeatedly until home screen appears.
3. Select Maintenance by pressing the ▲▼ button repeatedly and press ENTER.
4. Select Oil Life by pressing the ▲▼ button and press ENTER.
5. The engine oil life appears on the screen.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Displayed Engine Oil Life (%)</th>
<th>Calculated Engine Oil Life (%)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>100</td>
<td>100 to 91</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>90</td>
<td>90 to 81</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>80</td>
<td>80 to 71</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>70</td>
<td>70 to 61</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60</td>
<td>60 to 51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50</td>
<td>50 to 41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40</td>
<td>40 to 31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30</td>
<td>30 to 21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>20 to 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>15 to 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>10 to 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>5 to 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

There is a list of maintenance main and sub items you can view on the driver information interface.

Maintenance Service Items P. 642
### Maintenance Minder Messages on the Driver Information Interface

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Maintenance Message</th>
<th>Oil Life Display</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
<th>Information</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Maintenance Due Soon</td>
<td>15%</td>
<td>The remaining engine oil life is 15 to 6 percent. Once you switch the display by pressing the *1/ *2, or button, this message will go off.</td>
<td>The engine oil is approaching the end of its service life, and the maintenance items should be inspected and serviced soon.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maintenance Due Now</td>
<td>5%</td>
<td>The remaining engine oil life is 5 to 1 percent. Press the *1/ *2, or button to switch to another display.</td>
<td>The engine oil has almost reached the end of its service life, and the maintenance items should be inspected and serviced as soon as possible.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maintenance Past Due</td>
<td>Negative Distance</td>
<td>The remaining engine oil life has passed its service life, and a negative distance appears after driving over 10 miles (U.S. models) or 10 km (Canadian models). Press the *1/ *2, or button to switch to another display.</td>
<td>The engine oil life has passed. The maintenance items must be inspected and serviced immediately.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*1: Models with color audio system
*2: Models with Display Audio
The system message indicator (①) comes on along with the Maintenance Minder message.
**Maintenance Minder™ To Use Maintenance Minder™**

### Maintenance Service Items

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CODE</th>
<th>Maintenance Main Items</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Replace engine oil*1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>Replace engine oil*1 and oil filter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Inspect front and rear brakes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Inspect tie rod ends, steering gearbox, and boots</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Inspect suspension components</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Inspect driveshaft boots</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Inspect brake hoses and lines (Including ABS/VSA)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Inspect all fluid levels and condition of fluids</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Inspect exhaust system#</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Inspect fuel lines and connections#</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*1: If the message Maintenance Due Now does not appear more than 12 months after the display is reset, change the engine oil every year.

*2: If you drive in dusty conditions, replace the air cleaner element every 15,000 miles (24,000 km).

*3: If you drive primarily in urban areas that have high concentrations of soot in the air from industry and from diesel-powered vehicles, replace the dust and pollen filter every 15,000 miles (24,000 km).

*4: Driving in mountainous areas at very low vehicle speeds or trailer towing results in higher transmission temperatures. This requires transmission fluid changes more frequently than recommended by the Maintenance Minder. If you regularly drive your vehicle under these conditions, have the transmission fluid changed at 60,000 miles (100,000 km) or 3 years, thereafter every 30,000 miles (50,000 km) or 2 years.

*5: If you drive regularly in very high temperatures (over 110°F, 43°C), in very low temperatures (under -20°F, -29°C), replace every 60,000 miles (100,000 km).

*6: If a Maintenance Minder message does not appear more than 36 months after the display for item 7 is reset, change the brake fluid every 3 years.

### Maintenance Service Items

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CODE</th>
<th>Maintenance Sub Items</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Rotate tires</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Replace air cleaner element*2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Replace dust and pollen filter*3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Inspect drive belt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Replace transmission fluid*4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Replace spark plugs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Replace timing belt and inspect water pump*5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Inspect valve clearance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Replace engine coolant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>Replace brake fluid*6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*2: Replace air cleaner element every 15,000 miles (24,000 km).

*3: Replace dust and pollen filter every 15,000 miles (24,000 km).

*4: Replace transmission fluid every 60,000 miles (100,000 km) or 3 years, thereafter every 30,000 miles (50,000 km) or 2 years.

*5: Replace timing belt and inspect water pump every 60,000 miles (100,000 km) or 3 years.

*6: Replace brake fluid every 3 years.
To Use Maintenance Minder™

Canadian models

**Maintenance Service Items**

- Adjust the valves during services A, 0, 9, 1, 2, or 3 if they are noisy.

### Maintenance Main Items

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CODE</th>
<th>Maintenance Main Items</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Rotate tires</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>Replace engine oil**1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**1:** If the message Maintenance Due Now does not appear more than 12 months after the display is reset, change the engine oil every year.

**Maintenance Sub Items**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CODE</th>
<th>Maintenance Sub Items</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Replace engine oil**1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Replace engine oil**1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**1:** If you drive primarily in urban areas that have high concentrations of soot in the air from industry and from diesel-powered vehicles, replace the dust and pollen filter every 24,000 km (15,000 miles).

*2: If you drive in dusty conditions, replace the air cleaner element every 24,000 km (15,000 miles).

*3: If you drive in mountainous areas at very low vehicle speeds or trailer towing results in higher transmission temperatures. This requires transmission fluid changes more frequently than recommended by the Maintenance Minder. If you regularly drive your vehicle under these conditions, have the transmission fluid changed at 100,000 km (60,000 miles) or 3 years. If you drive regularly in very high temperatures (over 43°C, 110°F), in very low temperatures (under -29°C, -20°F), or in areas with high concentrations of soot in the air from industry and from diesel-powered vehicles, replace the dust and pollen filter every 24,000 km (15,000 miles).

*4: If you drive regularly in very high temperatures (over 43°C, 110°F), replace the dust and pollen filter every 24,000 km (15,000 miles).

*5: If a Maintenance Minder message does not appear more than 36 months after the display for item 7 is reset, change the brake fluid every 3 years.

*6: If you drive in dusty conditions, change the engine oil every year.

*7: If the message Maintenance Due Now does not appear more than 12 months after the display is reset, change the brake fluid every 3 years.

*8: See information on maintenance and emissions warranty in the first column on page 747.
Resetting the Display

Reset the maintenance minder information display if you have performed the maintenance service.

1. Set the power mode to ON.
2. Display the engine oil life.
3. Press and hold the ENTER button for about 10 seconds to enter the reset mode.
4. Press ▲/▼ button to select a maintenance item to reset, or to select All Due Items (You can also select Cancel to end the process).
5. Press the ENTER button to reset the selected item.
6. Repeat from step 5 for other items you wish to reset.

NOTICE
Failure to reset the Maintenance Minder™ display after a maintenance service results in the system showing incorrect maintenance intervals, which can lead to serious mechanical problems.

The dealer will reset the Maintenance Minder™ display after completing the required maintenance service. If someone other than a dealer performs maintenance service, reset the Maintenance Minder™ display yourself.

Models with Display Audio
You can also reset the Maintenance Minder™ display using the audio/information screen.

Customized Features P. 442
Maintenance Under the Hood

Maintenance Items Under the Hood

- Brake Fluid (Black Cap)
- Washer Fluid (Blue Cap)
- Engine Coolant Reserve Tank
- Engine Oil Dipstick (Orange)
- Radiator Cap
- Battery
- Engine Oil Fill Cap
Opening the Hood

1. Park the vehicle on a level surface, and set the parking brake.
2. Pull the hood release handle under the driver’s side lower left corner of the dashboard.
   ▶ The hood will pop up slightly.
3. Pull up the hood latch lever (located under the front edge of the hood to the center) and raise the hood. Once you have raised the hood slightly, you can release the lever.
4. Remove the support rod from the clamp using the grip. Mount the support rod in the hood.

When closing, remove the support rod, and stow it in the clamp, then gently lower the hood. Remove your hand at a height of approximately 12 inches (30 cm) and let the hood close.

NOTICE
Do not open the hood when the wiper arms are raised. The hood will strike the wipers, resulting in damage to the hood and/or the wipers.

When closing the hood, check that the hood is securely latched.

If the hood latch lever moves stiffly, or if you can open the hood without lifting the lever, the latch mechanism should be cleaned and lubricated.

Models with Auto Idle Stop
Do not open the hood while the Auto Idle Stop function is activated.
Engine Compartment Cover

The component parts in the engine compartment are protected by a cover. You may need to remove the cover when you perform certain maintenance work. Pull up on the engine compartment cover, remove it from the pins.
Recommended Engine Oil

- Genuine Honda Motor Oil
- Premium-grade 0W-20 detergent oil with an API Certification Seal on the container.

Oil is a major contributor to your engine’s performance and longevity. If you drive the vehicle with insufficient or deteriorated oil, the engine may fail or be damaged.

This seal indicates the oil is energy conserving and that it meets the American Petroleum Institute’s latest requirements.

Use a Genuine Honda Motor Oil or another commercial engine oil of suitable viscosity for the ambient temperature as shown.

- Synthetic oil
  You may also use synthetic motor oil if it is labeled with the API Certification Seal and is the specified viscosity grade.

Recommended Engine Oil

Engine Oil Additives
Your vehicle does not require oil additives. In fact, they may adversely affect the engine performance and durability.
Oil Check

We recommend that you check the engine oil level every time you refuel. Park the vehicle on level ground. Wait approximately three minutes after turning the engine off before you check the oil.

1. Remove the dipstick (orange).
2. Wipe the dipstick with a clean cloth or paper towel.
3. Insert the dipstick back all the way into its hole.

4. Remove the dipstick again, and check the level. It should be between the upper and lower marks. Add oil if necessary.

If the oil level is near or below the lower mark, slowly add oil being careful not to overfill.
Adding Engine Oil

1. Unscrew and remove the engine oil fill cap.
2. Add oil slowly.
3. Reinstall the engine oil fill cap, and tighten it securely.
4. Wait for three minutes and recheck the engine oil dipstick.

**NOTICE**
Do not fill the engine oil above the upper mark. Overfilling the engine oil can result in leaks and engine damage.

If any oil spills, wipe it away immediately. Spilled oil may damage the engine compartment components.
Changing the Engine Oil and Oil Filter

You must change the engine oil and oil filter regularly in order to maintain the engine’s lubrication. The engine may be damaged if they are not changed regularly.

Change the oil and filter in accordance with the maintenance message on the driver information interface.

1. Run the engine until it reaches normal operating temperature, and then turn the engine off.
2. Open the hood and remove the engine oil fill cap.
3. Remove the drain bolt and washer from the bottom of the engine, and drain the oil into a suitable container.

**NOTICE**

You may damage the environment if you do not dispose of the oil in a suitable way. If you are changing the oil by yourself, appropriately dispose of the used oil. Put the oil in a sealed container and take it to a recycling center. Do not throw the oil away into a garbage can or onto the ground.
4. Remove the oil filter and dispose of the remaining oil.
5. Check that the filter gasket is not stuck to the engine contact surface. If it is stuck, you must detach it.
6. Wipe away dirt and dust adhering to the contact surface of the engine block, and install a new oil filter. Apply a light coat of new engine oil to the filter gasket.
7. Put a new washer on the drain bolt, then reinstall the drain bolt. Tightening torque: 29 lbf-ft (40 N-m, 4.0 kgf·m)
8. Pour the recommended engine oil into the engine. Engine oil change capacity (including filter): 5.7 US qt (5.4 L)
9. Reinstall the engine oil fill cap securely and start the engine.
10. Run the engine for a few minutes, and then check that there is no leak from the drain bolt or oil filter.
11. Stop the engine, wait for three minutes, and then check the oil level on the dipstick. If necessary, add more engine oil.

Changing the Engine Oil and Oil Filter
You will need a special wrench to replace the oil filter. You can buy this wrench from a dealer.

When installing the new oil filter, follow the instructions supplied with the oil filter.

Reinstall the engine oil fill cap. Start the engine. The low oil pressure indicator should go off within five seconds. If it does not, turn off the engine, and check your work.
This coolant is premixed with 50% antifreeze and 50% water. Do not add any straight antifreeze or water.

We recommend you check the engine coolant level every time you refuel. Check the reserve tank first. If it is completely empty, also check the coolant level in the radiator. Add the engine coolant accordingly.

**Reserve Tank**

1. Make sure the engine and radiator are cool.
2. Check the amount of coolant in the reserve tank.
   - If the coolant level is below the MIN mark, add the specified coolant until it reaches the MAX mark.
3. Inspect the cooling system for leaks.

**WARNING**

Removing the radiator cap while the engine is hot can cause the coolant to spray out, seriously scalding you.

Always let the engine and radiator cool down before removing the radiator cap.

**NOTICE**

Genuine Honda engine coolant is a 50/50 mixture of antifreeze and water that can withstand freezing at temperatures as low as about -31°F (-35°C). If your vehicle is consistently subjected to temperatures below this, the concentration of antifreeze in the coolant should be increased. Consult a dealer for details.

If Honda antifreeze/coolant is not available, you may use another major brand of non-silicate coolant as a temporary replacement. Check that it is a high quality coolant recommended for aluminum engines. Continued use of any non-Honda coolant can result in corrosion, causing the cooling system to malfunction or fail. Have the cooling system flushed and refilled with Honda antifreeze/coolant as soon as possible.

Do not add rust inhibitors or other additives to your vehicle’s cooling system. They may not be compatible with the coolant or with the engine components.
Maintenance Under the Hood

Engine Coolant

1. Make sure the engine and radiator are cool.
2. Remove the engine compartment cover.  
   Engine Compartment Cover P. 647
3. Turn the radiator cap 1/8 turn counterclockwise and relieve any pressure in the cooling system.
4. Push down and turn the radiator cap counter-clockwise to remove it.
5. The coolant level should be up to the base of the filler neck. Add coolant if it is low.
6. Put the radiator cap back on, and tighten it fully.

NOTICE
Pour the fluid slowly and carefully so you do not spill any. Clean up any spills immediately; they can damage components in the engine compartment.
Transmission Fluid

Automatic Transmission Fluid

ELITE and TOURING grade models

Specified fluid: Honda Automatic Transmission Fluid ATF-Type 2

Except ELITE and TOURING grade models

Specified fluid: Honda Automatic Transmission Fluid ATF-Type 3.1 or higher

Have a dealer check the fluid level and replace if necessary.

Do not attempt to check or change the automatic transmission fluid yourself.

ELITE and TOURING grade models

NOTICE

Honda ATF-Type 2 fluid must not be mixed with other transmission fluids.

Using a transmission fluid other than Honda ATF-Type 2 may adversely affect the operation and durability of your vehicle’s transmission, and damage the transmission.

Any damage caused by using a transmission fluid that is not equivalent to Honda ATF-Type 2 is not covered by Honda’s new vehicle limited warranty.

Except ELITE and TOURING grade models

NOTICE

Honda ATF-TYPE 3.1 (or higher) fluid must not be mixed with other transmission fluids.

Using a transmission fluid other than Honda ATF-TYPE 3.1 (or higher) may adversely affect the operation and durability of your vehicle’s transmission, and damage the transmission.

Any damage caused by using a transmission fluid that is not equivalent to Honda ATF-TYPE 3.1 (or higher) is not covered by Honda’s new vehicle limited warranty.
Brake Fluid

Specified fluid: Honda Heavy Duty Brake Fluid DOT 3

Checking the Brake Fluid

The fluid level should be between the MIN and MAX marks on the side of the reserve tank.

NOTICE
Brake fluid marked DOT 5 is not compatible with your vehicle’s braking system and can cause extensive damage.

If the specified brake fluid is not available, you should use only DOT 3 or DOT 4 fluid from a sealed container as a temporary replacement.

Using any non-Honda brake fluid can cause corrosion and decrease the longevity of the system. Have the brake system flushed and refilled with Honda Heavy Duty Brake Fluid DOT 3 as soon as possible.

If the brake fluid level is at or below the MIN mark, have a dealer inspect the vehicle for leaks or worn brake pads as soon as possible.
Refilling Window Washer Fluid

Check the amount of window washer fluid by looking at the reservoir. If the level is low, fill the washer reservoir.

Pour the washer fluid carefully. Do not overflow the reservoir.

NOTICE

Do not use engine antifreeze or a vinegar/water solution in the windshield washer reservoir. Antifreeze can damage your vehicle’s paint. A vinegar/water solution can damage the windshield washer pump.
Replacing Light Bulbs

Headlight Bulbs

When replacing, use the following bulbs.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Models with halogen headlights</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>High beam headlight: 60 W (HB3 for halogen bulb type)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Low beam headlight: 55 W (H11 for halogen bulb type)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Models with LED headlights</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>High beam headlight: LED type</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Low beam headlight: LED type</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

High Beam Headlights

- **Driver side**
  1. Remove the engine compartment cover. [Engine Compartment Cover P. 647](#)
  2. Remove the clips.
  3. Remove the air intake duct.

**NOTICE**

Halogen bulbs get very hot when lit. Oil, perspiration, or a scratch on the glass can cause the bulb to overheat and shatter.

**All models**

The headlight aim is set by the factory, and does not need to be adjusted. However, if you regularly carry heavy items in the cargo area or tow a trailer, have the aiming readjusted at a dealer or by a qualified technician.

**Models with halogen headlights**

When replacing a halogen bulb, handle it by its base, and protect the glass from contact with your skin or hard objects. If you touch the glass, clean it with denatured alcohol and a clean cloth.

**Models with LED headlights**

Headlights are LED type. Have an authorized Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.
Replacing Light Bulbs

1. Remove the engine coolant reserve tank out of its hose clip and bracket.

2. Push the tab to remove the coupler.

3. Rotate the old bulb counter-clockwise to remove.

4. Insert a new bulb into the headlight assembly and turn it clockwise.

5. Insert the coupler into the connector of the bulb.

High Beam Headlights

Remove the clip using a Phillips-head screwdriver.

Insert the clip with the center pin raised, and push until it is flat.

Push until the pin is flat.
Replacing Light Bulbs

Headlight Bulbs

1. Push the tab to remove the coupler.
2. Rotate the old bulb counter-clockwise to remove.
3. Insert a new bulb into the headlight assembly and turn it clockwise.
4. Insert the coupler into the connector of the bulb.

Models with halogen headlights

Low Beam Headlights

1. Push the tab to remove the coupler.
2. Rotate the old bulb counter-clockwise to remove.
3. Insert a new bulb into the headlight assembly and turn it clockwise.
4. Insert the coupler into the connector of the bulb.
Fog Light Bulbs*

When replacing, use the following bulbs.

- **Models with halogen headlights**
  - Fog Light: 35 W (H8 for halogen bulb type)
- **Models with LED headlights**
  - Fog Light: LED type

1. Turn the steering wheel all the way to the opposite side from the fog light being replaced.
   - **Passenger side**: Turn the steering wheel to the left.
   - **Driver side**: Turn the steering wheel to the right.
2. Remove the screws, and pull the inner fender back.
3. Push the tab to remove the coupler.
4. Rotate the old bulb counter-clockwise to remove.
5. Insert a new bulb into the fog light assembly and turn it clockwise.
6. Insert the coupler into the connector of the bulb.

**NOTICE**

Halogen bulbs get very hot when lit. Oil, perspiration, or a scratch on the glass can cause the bulb to overheat and shatter.

When replacing a halogen bulb, handle it by its plastic case, and protect the glass from contact with your skin or hard objects. If you touch the glass, clean it with denatured alcohol and a clean cloth.

Fog lights are LED type. Have an authorized Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

* Not available on all models
Replacing Light Bulbs

Parking/Daytime Running Lights

Parking/daytime running lights are LED type. Have an authorized Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

Daytime Running Lights

Daytime running light bulbs and high beam headlight bulbs are the same.

Headlight Bulbs P. 658
Front Turn Signal/Parking * Light Bulbs

When replacing, use the following bulbs.

**Front Turn Signal/Parking * Light: 28/8 W (Amber)**

1. Turn the steering wheel all the way to the opposite side from the light being replaced.
   - **Passenger side:** Turn the steering wheel to the left.
   - **Driver side:** Turn the steering wheel to the right.
2. Remove the screws, and pull the inner fender back.
3. Rotate the socket counter-clockwise and remove it.
4. Remove the old bulb and insert a new bulb.

* Not available on all models
Replacing Light Bulbs

Front Side Marker Light Bulbs

When replacing, use the following bulb.

**Front Side Marker Light: 3 CP**

1. Turn the steering wheel all the way to the opposite side from the light being replaced.  
   **Passenger side:** Turn the steering wheel to the left.  
   **Driver side:** Turn the steering wheel to the right.
2. Remove the holding clip and screw, and pull the inner fender back.
3. Rotate the socket counter-clockwise and remove it.
4. Remove the old bulb and insert a new bulb.

**Side Turn Signal/Emergency Indicator Lights**

Door mirror side turn lights are LED type. Have an authorized Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

---

* Not available on all models
Brake, Rear Turn Signal Light Bulbs, and Rear Side Marker/Taillights

When replacing, use the following bulbs.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Brake Light: 21 W</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Rear Turn Signal Light: 21 W</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rear Side Marker/Taillight: LED</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Use a Phillips-head screwdriver to remove the bolt.
2. Pull the cover out of the rear pillar.
3. Use a Phillip-head screwdriver to remove the bolts.
4. Pull on the light assembly to rotate about the grommet and remove from the rear pillar.

Rear side marker/taillights are LED type. Have an authorized Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.
Replacing Light Bulbs: Brake, Rear Turn Signal Light Bulbs, and Rear Side Marker/Taillights

5. Turn the socket counter-clockwise and remove it. Remove the old bulb.
6. Insert a new bulb and turn the socket clockwise.
7. Slide the light assembly onto the guide on the body.
8. Align the pin with the body grommet, then push in until it fully seats.
Replacing Light Bulbs

Back-Up Light Bulbs/Taillights

When replacing, use the following bulbs.

**Back-Up Light: 21 W**  
**Taillight: LED**

1. Remove the cover by prying on the edge of the cover using a flat-tip screwdriver.  
   ➤ Wrap the flat-tip screwdriver with a cloth to prevent scratches.

2. Turn the socket counter-clockwise and remove it.

3. Remove the old bulb and insert a new bulb.

Taillights are LED type. Have an authorized Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.
Replacing Light Bulbs

Rear License Plate Light
Rear license plate light is LED type. Have an authorized Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

High-Mount Brake Light
High-mount brake light is LED type. Have an authorized Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.
Checking and Maintaining Wiper Blades

Checking Wiper Blades
If the wiper blade rubber has deteriorated, it will leave streaks and the hard surfaces of the blade may scratch the window glass.

Changing the Front Wiper Blade Rubber

1. Set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF.
2. While holding the wiper switch in the MIST position, set the power mode to ON, then to VEHICLE OFF.
   ▶ Both wiper arms are set to the maintenance position as shown in the image.
3. Lift both wiper arms.

NOTICE
Avoid dropping the wiper arm onto the windshield, it may damage the wiper arm and/or the windshield.

Continued
4. Press and hold the tab, then slide the holder off the wiper arm.

5. Pull the end of the wiper blade in the direction of the arrow in the image until it is out of the holder’s end cap.

6. Pull the wiper blade in the opposite direction to slide it out of the holder.
Checking and Maintaining Wiper Blades

Changing the Rear Wiper Blade Rubber

1. Raise the wiper arm off.
2. Pivot the bottom end of the wiper blade up until it comes off from the wiper arm.

7. Insert the flat side of the new wiper blade onto the bottom part of the holder. Insert the blade all the way.
8. Install the end of the wiper blade into the cap.
9. Slide the holder onto the wiper arm until it locks.
10. Lower both wiper arms.
11. Set the power mode to ON and hold the wiper switch in the MIST position until both wiper arms return to the standard position.

NOTICE
Avoid dropping the wiper arm, it may damage the rear window.

Continued
3. Slide the blade out of the holder.

4. Remove the retainers from wiper blade and mount it to a new rubber blade.

5. Slide the new wiper blade onto the holder. Make sure it is engaged correctly, then install the wiper blade assembly onto the wiper arm.
Checking and Maintaining Tires

Checking Tires

To safely operate your vehicle, your tires must be of the proper type and size, in good condition with adequate tread, and properly inflated.

■ Inflation guidelines
Properly inflated tires provide the best combination of handling, tread life, and comfort. Refer to the driver’s doorjamb label or specifications page for the specified pressure.

Underinflated tires wear unevenly, adversely affect handling and fuel economy, and are more likely to fail from overheating.

Overinflated tires make your vehicle ride harshly, are more prone to road hazards, and wear unevenly.

Every day before you drive, look at each of the tires. If one looks lower than the others, check the pressure with a tire gauge.

At least once a month or before long trips, use a gauge to measure the pressure in all tires, including the spare. Even tires in good condition can lose 1-2 psi (10-20 kPa, 0.1-0.2 kgf/cm²) per month.

■ Inspection guidelines
Every time you check inflation, also examine the tires and valve stems. Look for:
• Bumps or bulges on the side or in the tread. Replace the tire if you find any cuts, splits, or cracks in the side of the tire. Replace it if you see fabric or cord.
• Remove any foreign objects and inspect for air leaks.
• Uneven tread wear. Have a dealer check the wheel alignment.
• Excessive tread wear.
  ➤ Wear Indicators P. 678
• Cracks or other damage around valve stem.

⚠️ WARNING
Using tires that are excessively worn or improperly inflated can cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.

Follow all instructions in this owner’s manual regarding tire inflation and maintenance.

Measure the air pressure when tires are cold. This means the vehicle has been parked for at least three hours, or driven less than 1 mile (1.6 km). If necessary, add or release air until the specified pressure is reached.

If checked when hot, tire pressure can be as much as 4–6 psi (30–40 kPa, 0.3–0.4 kgf/cm²) higher than if checked when cold.

Have a dealer check the tires if you feel a consistent vibration while driving. New tires and any that have been removed and reinstalled should be properly balanced.

Check the spare tire pressure once a month or before long trips.
Checking and Maintaining Tires

Tire and Loading Information Label

The label attached to the driver’s doorjamb provides necessary tire and loading information.

Tire Labeling

The tires that came on your vehicle have a number of markings. Those you should be aware of are described as follows.

Tire Sizes

Whenever tires are replaced, they should be replaced with tires of the same size.

The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed the weight capacity of your vehicle. To avoid overloading your vehicle, distribute the weight of the cargo evenly.

Maintenance
# Tire Identification Number (TIN)

The tire identification number (TIN) is a group of numbers and letters that look like the example in the side column. TIN is located on the sidewall of the tire.

# Glossary of Tire Terminology

**Cold Tire Pressure** – The tire air pressure when the vehicle has been parked for at least three hours or driven less than 1 mile (1.6 km).

**Load Rating** – Means the maximum load that a tire is rated to carry for a given inflation pressure.

**Maximum Inflation Pressure** – The maximum tire air pressure that the tire can hold.

**Maximum Load Rating** – Means the load rating for a tire at the maximum permissible inflation pressure for that tire.

**Recommended Inflation Pressure** – The cold tire inflation pressure recommended by the manufacturer.

**Treadwear Indicators (TWI)** – Means the projections within the principal grooves designed to give a visual indication of the degrees of wear of the tread.

### Tire Identification Number (TIN)

**DOT B97R FW6X 2209**

DOT: This indicates that the tire meets all requirements of the U.S. Department of Transportation.

B97R: Manufacturer’s identification mark.

FW6X: Tire type code.

22 09: Date of manufacture.
Checking and Maintaining Tires

DOT Tire Quality Grading (U.S. Vehicles)

The tires on your vehicle meet all U.S. Federal Safety Requirements. All tires are also graded for treadwear, traction, and temperature performance according to Department of Transportation (DOT) standards. The following explains these gradings.

- **Uniform Tire Quality Grading**
  Quality grades can be found where applicable on the tire sidewall between tread shoulder and maximum section width.

- **Treadwear**
  The treadwear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course. For example, a tire graded 150 would wear one and one-half (1 1/2) times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100. The relative performance of tires depends upon the actual conditions of their use, however, and may depart significantly from the norm due to variations in driving habits, service practices and differences in road characteristics and climate.
Checking and Maintaining Tires

**DOT Tire Quality Grading (U.S. Vehicles)**

### Traction

The traction grades, from highest to lowest, are AA, A, B, and C. Those grades represent the tire’s ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance.

### Temperature

The temperature grades are A (the highest), B, and C, representing the tire’s resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel. Sustained high temperature can cause the material of the tire to degenerate and reduce tire life, and excessive temperature can lead to sudden tire failure. The grade C corresponds to a level of performance which all passenger car tires must meet under the Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard No. 109. Grades B and A represent higher levels of performance on the laboratory test wheel than the minimum required by law.

**Warning:** The traction grade assigned to this tire is based on straight-ahead braking traction tests, and does not include acceleration, cornering, hydroplaning, or peak traction characteristics.

**Warning:** The temperature grade for this tire is established for a tire that is properly inflated and not overloaded. Excessive speed, underinflation, or excessive loading, either separately or in combination, can cause heat buildup and possible tire failure.
Checking and Maintaining Tires

Wear Indicators

The groove where the wear indicator is located is 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) shallower than elsewhere on the tire. If the tread has worn so that the indicator is exposed, replace the tire.

Worn out tires have poor traction on wet roads.

Tire Service Life

The life of your tires is dependent on many factors, including driving habits, road conditions, vehicle loading, inflation pressure, maintenance history, speed, and environmental conditions (even when the tires are not in use).

In addition to regular inspections and inflation pressure maintenance, it is recommended that you have annual inspections performed once the tires reach five years old. All tires, including the spare, should be removed from service after 10 years from the date of manufacture, regardless of their condition or state of wear.
Tire and Wheel Replacement

Replace your tires with radials of the same size, load range, speed rating, and maximum cold tire pressure rating (as shown on the tire’s sidewall). Using tires of a different size or construction can cause certain vehicle systems such as the ABS and Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA®) system to work incorrectly.

It is best to replace all four tires at the same time. If that isn’t possible, replace the front or rear tires in pairs.

If you replace a wheel, only use TPMS specified wheels approved for your vehicle. Make sure that the wheel’s specifications match those of the original wheels.

⚠️ WARNING

Installing improper tires on your vehicle can affect handling and stability. This can cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.

Always use the size and type of tires recommended in this owner’s manual.
Tire Rotation

Rotating tires according to the maintenance messages on the driver information interface helps to distribute wear more evenly and increase tire life.

- **Tires without rotation marks**
  
  Rotate the tires as shown here.

- **Tires with rotation marks**
  
  Rotate the tires as shown here.

Tires with directional tread patterns should only be rotated front to back (not from one side to the other). Directional tires should be mounted with the rotation indication mark facing forward, as shown below.
Winter Tires

If driving on snowy or frozen roads, mount all season marked M+S tires, snow tires, or tire chains; reduce speed; and maintain sufficient distance between vehicles when driving.

Be particularly careful when operating the steering wheel or brakes to prevent skidding.

Use tire chains, snow tires, or all season tires when necessary or according to the law.

When mounting, refer to the following points.

For winter tires:
• Select the size and load ranges that are the same as the original tires.
• Mount the tires to all four wheels.

For tire chains:
• Install them on the front tires only.
• Because your vehicle has limited tire clearance, we strongly recommend using the chains listed below:

  Models with 235/60R18 tires
  Peerless Auto-Trac 231905
  Models with 235/55R19 tires
  Peerless Auto-Trac 232405
• Follow the chain manufacturer’s instruction when installing. Mount them as tightly as you can.
• Check that the chains do not touch the brake lines or suspension.
• Drive slowly.

WARNING
Using the wrong chains, or not properly installing chains, can damage the brake lines and cause a crash in which you can be seriously injured or killed.

Follow all instructions in this owner's manual regarding the selection and use of tire chains.

NOTICE
Traction devices that are the wrong size or improperly installed can damage your vehicle’s brake lines, suspension, body, and wheels. Stop driving if they are hitting any part of the vehicle.

When tire chains are mounted, follow the chain manufacturer’s instructions regarding vehicle operational limits.

If your vehicle is equipped with summer tires, be aware that these tires are not designed for winter driving conditions. For more information, contact a dealer.
Battery

Checking the Battery

The condition of the battery is monitored by a sensor located on the negative terminal of the battery. If there is a problem with this sensor, the driver information interface will display a warning message. If this happens, have your vehicle inspected by a dealer.

Check the battery terminals for corrosion monthly.

To access the battery terminals:
1. Remove the engine compartment cover.
   - Engine Compartment Cover P. 647
2. Remove the clips using a Phillips-head screwdriver, then remove the air intake duct.
   - High Beam Headlights P. 658

If your vehicle’s battery is disconnected or goes dead:
- The audio system is disabled.
  - Reactivating the audio system P. 263
- The clock resets.
  - Clock P. 142
- Canadian models only
  The immobilizer system needs to be reset.
  - Immobilizer System Indicator P. 93

**WARNING:**

- Battery post, terminals, and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds.
- Wash your hands after handling.

When conducting any battery maintenance, wear protective clothing and a face shield, or have a skilled technician do it.

When you find corrosion, clean the battery terminals by applying a baking powder and water solution. Clean terminals with a damp towel. Cloth/towel dry the battery. Coat the terminals with grease to help prevent future corrosion.

When replacing the battery, the replacement must be of the same specifications. Consult a dealer for more information.
Charging the Battery

Disconnect both battery cables to prevent damaging your vehicle’s electrical system. Always disconnect the negative (–) cable first, and reconnect it last.

Charging the AGM Battery

AGM labeled batteries like those installed in your vehicle require a compatible charger to be properly charged. Damage to the battery can result if the battery is charged improperly or with the wrong equipment. For more information on how to charge your vehicle’s AGM battery, consult a dealer.
Remote Transmitter Care

Replacing the Button Battery

If the indicator does not come on when the button is pressed, replace the battery.

1. Remove the built-in key.

Battery type: CR2032

2. Remove the upper half of the cover by carefully prying on the edge with a coin.
   - Remove carefully to avoid losing the buttons.
   - Wrap a coin with a cloth to prevent scratching the remote.

3. Make sure to replace the battery with the correct polarity.

NOTICE

An improperly disposed of battery can damage the environment. Always confirm local regulations for battery disposal.

Replacement batteries are commercially available or at a dealer.
Remote Control and Wireless Headphone Care*

Replacing the Battery

**Remote Control**

If it takes several pushes on the remote control buttons to operate the Blu-ray/DVD rear entertainment system, replace the batteries.

**Battery type: AAA**

1. Remove the cover.
2. Make sure to replace the batteries with the correct polarity.

**NOTICE**

An improperly disposed of battery can damage the environment. Always confirm local regulations for battery disposal.

Replacement batteries are commercially available or at a dealer.

Make sure to replace the two batteries at once.

* Not available on all models
Replacing the Battery

1. Remove the screw.
2. Open the cover.
3. Make sure to replace the batteries with the correct polarity.

Battery type: AAA

Remote Control and Wireless Headphone Care

Wireless Headphone

If there is no sound coming from the wireless headphone, replace the batteries.
Climate Control System Maintenance

Air Conditioning

To ensure proper and safe operation, the Society of Automotive Engineers (SAE J2845) recommends that the refrigerant system only be serviced by trained and certified technicians.

Never repair or replace the air conditioning evaporator (cooling coil) with one removed from a used or salvaged vehicle.

New replacement mobile air conditioning evaporators must be certified (and labeled) as meeting SAE Standard J2842.

Dust and Pollen Filter

The climate control system is equipped with a dust and pollen filter that collects pollen, dust, and other debris in the air. The Maintenance Minder™ messages will let you know when to replace the filter.

We recommend that you replace the dust and pollen filter sooner when using your vehicle in areas with high concentrations of dust.

NOTICE

Vented refrigerant is harmful to the environment. To avoid refrigerant from venting, never replace the evaporator with one removed from a used or salvaged vehicle.

Refrigerant in your vehicle’s air conditioning system is flammable and can be ignited during servicing if proper procedures are not followed.

The air conditioner label is found under the hood:

Safety Labels P. 81
Specifications P. 738

Canadian models

⚠️: Caution
🔥: Flammable Refrigerant
👨‍🔧: Requires Registered Technician to Service
------+:
Air Conditioning System

Dust and Pollen Filter

If the airflow from the climate control system deteriorates noticeably, and the windows fog up easily, the filter may need to be replaced. Please contact a dealer for replacement.
Clean using a damp cloth with a mixture of mild detergent and warm water to remove dirt. Use a clean cloth to remove detergent residue.

Cleaning Seat Belts

Use a soft brush with a mixture of mild soap and warm water to clean the seat belts. Let the belts air dry. Wipe the loops of the seat belt anchors using a clean cloth.

Cleaning the Window

Wipe using a glass cleaner.

Interior Care

Do not spill liquids inside the vehicle. Electrical devices and systems may malfunction if liquids are splashed on them.

Do not use silicone based sprays on electrical devices such as audio devices and switches. Doing so may cause the items to malfunction or cause a fire inside the vehicle.

If a silicone based spray is inadvertently used on electrical devices, consult a dealer.

Depending on their composition, chemicals and liquid aromatics may cause discoloration, wrinkles, and cracking to resin-based parts and textiles.

Do not use alkali solvents or organic solvents such as benzene or gasoline.

After using chemicals, make sure to gently wipe them off using a dry cloth.

Do not place used cloths on top of resin-based parts or textiles for long periods of time without washing.

Models with Front Sensor Camera

Be careful not to spill fluids, such as water or glass cleaner, on or around the cover of both the front sensor camera and the rainfall/light sensor.

* Not available on all models
Floor Mats

The front and second row floor mats hook over floor anchors, which keep them from sliding forward. To remove a mat for cleaning, turn the anchor knobs to the unlock position. When reinstalling the mat after cleaning, turn the knobs to the lock position.

Do not put additional floor mats on top of the anchored mats.

Floor Mats

If you use any floor mats that were not originally provided with your vehicle, make sure they are designed for your specific vehicle, fit correctly, and are securely anchored by the floor anchors. Position the second row seat floor mat properly. If it is not properly positioned, the floor mat can interfere with the front seat functions.
To properly clean leather:
1. Use a vacuum or soft dry cloth first to remove any dirt or dust.
2. Clean the leather with a soft cloth dampened with a solution comprised of 90% water and 10% neutral soap.
3. Wipe away any soap residue with a clean damp cloth.
4. Wipe away residual water and allow leather to air dry in the shade.

**Maintaining Genuine Leather**

It is important to clean or wipe away dirt or dust as soon as possible. Spills can soak into leather resulting in stains. Dirt or dust can cause abrasions in the leather. In addition, please note that some dark colored clothing can rub onto the leather seats resulting in discoloration or stains.

* Not available on all models
Exterior Care

Dust off the vehicle body after you drive. Regularly inspect your vehicle for scratches on painted surfaces. A scratch on a painted surface can result in body rust. If you find a scratch, promptly repair it.

Washing the Vehicle

Wash the vehicle regularly. Wash more frequently when driving in the following conditions:
- If driving on roads with road salt.
- If driving in coastal areas.
- If tar, soot, bird droppings, insects, or tree sap are stuck to painted surfaces.

Using an Automated Car Wash

Make sure to follow the instructions indicated on the automated car wash.
- Fold in the door mirrors.
- Turn off the automatic intermittent wipers*.

Using High Pressure Cleaners

- Keep sufficient distance between the cleaning nozzle and the vehicle body.
- Take particular care around the windows. Standing too close may cause water to enter the vehicle interior.
- Do not spray high pressure water directly into the engine compartment. Instead, use low pressure water and a mild detergent.

* Not available on all models

Continued
Cleaning
Exterior Care

■ Applying Wax
A good coat of automotive body wax helps protect your vehicle's paint from the elements. Wax will wear off over time and expose your vehicle’s paint to the elements, so reapply as necessary.

■ Maintaining the Bumpers and Other Resin Coated Parts
If you get gasoline, oil, engine coolant, or battery fluid on resin coated parts, they may be stained or the coating may peel. Promptly wipe it away using a soft cloth and clean water.

■ Cleaning the Window
Wipe using a glass cleaner.

■ Maintaining Aluminum Wheels
Aluminum is susceptible to deterioration caused by salt and other road contaminants. When necessary, as early as possible use a sponge and mild detergent to wipe away these contaminants. Do not use a stiff brush or harsh chemicals (including some commercial wheel cleaners). These can damage the protective finish on aluminum alloy wheels, resulting in corrosion. Depending on the type of finish, the wheels also may lose their luster or appear burnished. To avoid water stains, wipe the wheels dry with a cloth while they are still wet.

NOTICE
Chemical solvents and strong cleaners can damage the paint, metal, and plastic on your vehicle. Wipe away spills immediately.

Ask a dealer about the correct coating material when you want to repair the painted surface of the parts made of resin.
Fogged Exterior Light Lenses

The inside lenses of exterior lights (headlights, brake lights, etc.) may fog temporarily if you have driven in the rain, or after the vehicle has been run through a car wash. Dew condensation also may build up inside the lenses when there is a significant enough difference between the ambient and inside lens temperatures (similar to vehicle windows fogging up in rainy conditions). These conditions are natural processes, not structural design problems in the exterior lights. Lens design characteristics may result in moisture developing on the light lens frame surfaces. This also is not a malfunction. However, if you see large amounts of water accumulation, or large water drops building up inside the lenses, have your vehicle inspected by a dealer.
Accessories and Modifications

Accessories

When installing accessories, check the following:
• Do not install accessories on the windshield. They can obstruct your view and delay your reaction to driving conditions.
• Do not install accessories over areas marked **SRS AIRBAG**, on the sides or backs of the front seats, on front or side pillars, or near the side windows. Accessories installed in these areas may interfere with proper operation of the vehicle’s airbags or may be propelled into you or another occupant if the airbags deploy.
• Be sure electronic accessories do not overload electrical circuits or interfere with proper operation of your vehicle.
  Fuses P. 722
• Before installing any electronic accessory, have the installer contact a dealer for assistance. If possible, have a dealer inspect the final installation.

**WARNING**

Improper accessories or modifications can affect your vehicle’s handling, stability, and performance, and cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.

Follow all instructions in this owner’s manual regarding accessories and modifications.

Honda Genuine accessories are recommended to ensure proper operation on your vehicle.
**Modifications**

Do not modify your vehicle in a manner that may affect its handling, stability, or reliability, or install non-genuine Honda parts or accessories that may have a similar effect. Even minor modifications to vehicle systems can affect overall vehicle performance. Always make sure all equipment is properly installed and maintained, and do not make any modification to your vehicle or its systems that might cause your vehicle to no longer meet federal, state, province, territory, and local regulations.

The on-board diagnostic port (OBD-II/J2534 connector) installed on this vehicle is intended to be used only with automobile system diagnostic devices. Use of any other type of device may adversely affect the vehicle’s electronic systems or allow them to be compromised, and could result in a system malfunction, drained battery, or other unexpected problems.

Do not modify or attempt to repair any of the electrical components.
Handling the Unexpected

This chapter explains how to handle unexpected troubles.

Tools
Types of Tools.................................. 698
If a Tire Goes Flat
Changing a Flat Tire......................... 699
Engine Does Not Start
Checking the Engine......................... 708
If the Remote Battery is Weak............. 709
Emergency Engine Stop..................... 710
Jump Starting................................. 711
Overheating
How to Handle Overheating............... 713
Indicator, Coming On/Blinking
If the Low Oil Pressure Symbol Appears... 716
If the Charging System Indicator Comes On........................................... 716
If the Malfunction Indicator Lamp Comes On or Blinks........................... 717
If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On or Blinks.......................... 718
If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On or Blinks at the Same Time When the Brake System Indicator (Amber) Comes On...... 719
If the Electric Power Steering (EPS) System Indicator Comes On.................. 720
If the Low Tire Pressure/TPMS Indicator Comes On or Blinks...................... 720
If the Transmission System Indicator Blinks along with the Warning Message... 721
Fuses
Fuse Locations............................... 722
Inspecting and Changing Fuses........... 728
Emergency Towing......................... 729
When You Cannot Unlock the Fuel Fill Door........................................... 730
When You Cannot Open the Tailgate........ 731
When You Cannot Close the Power Sliding Doors*................................. 733
Refueling
Refueling From a Portable Fuel Container.... 734

* Not available on all models
Tools

Types of Tools

The tools are stored in front of the second row seat and in the right side panel of the cargo area.
If a Tire Goes Flat

Changing a Flat Tire

If a tire goes flat while driving, grasp the steering wheel firmly, and brake gradually to reduce speed. Then, stop in a safe place. Replace the flat tire with a compact spare tire. Go to a dealer as soon as possible to have the full-size tire repaired or replaced.

1. Park the vehicle on a firm, level, non-slippery surface and apply the parking brake.
2. Press the P button.
3. Turn on the hazard warning lights and set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF.

Follow compact spare precautions:
Periodically check the tire pressure of the compact spare. It should be set to the specified pressure.
Specified Pressure: 60 psi (420 kPa, 4.2 kgf/cm²)

When driving with the compact spare tire, keep the vehicle speed under 50 mph (80 km/h). Replace with a full-size tire as soon as possible.

The compact spare tire and wheel in your vehicle are specifically for this model. Do not use them with another vehicle. Do not use another type of compact spare tire or wheel with your vehicle.

Do not mount tire chains on a compact spare tire. If a chain-mounted front tire goes flat, remove one of the full-size rear tires and replace it with the compact spare tire. Remove the flat front tire and replace it with the full-size tire that was removed from the rear. Mount the tire chains on the front tire.

Do not use a puncture-repairing agent on a flat tire, as it can damage the tire pressure sensor.

Do not use the jack if it doesn’t work properly. Call your dealer or a professional towing service.

Continued
If a Tire Goes Flat

### Changing a Flat Tire

#### Getting Ready to Replace the Flat Tire

1. Remove the second row floor mat.  
   - Floor Mats P. 689
2. Pull up the floor carpet.
3. Lift up the floor lid using the handle and remove it.
4. Take the tool case out of the spare tire well. Take the jack and wheel nut wrench out of the tool case.
5. Unscrew the wing bolt, then remove the spare tire.
6. Place a wheel block or rock in front and rear of the wheel diagonal to the flat tire.
7. Place the compact spare tire (wheel side up) under the vehicle body, near the tire that needs to be replaced.

8. Loosen each wheel nut about one turn using the wheel nut wrench.
If a Tire Goes Flat

Changing a Flat Tire

1. Place the jack under the jacking point closest to the tire to be changed.
2. Turn the end bracket clockwise as shown in the image until the top of the jack contacts the jacking point.
   ▶ Make sure that the jacking point tab is resting in the jack notch.
3. Raise the vehicle, using the jack handle bar and the jack handle, until the tire is off the ground.

How to Set Up the Jack

1. Place the jack under the jacking point closest to the tire to be changed.
2. Turn the end bracket clockwise as shown in the image until the top of the jack contacts the jacking point.
   ▶ Make sure that the jacking point tab is resting in the jack notch.
3. Raise the vehicle, using the jack handle bar and the jack handle, until the tire is off the ground.

WARNING

The vehicle can easily roll off the jack, seriously injuring anyone underneath.

Follow the directions for changing a tire exactly, and no person should place any portion of their body under a vehicle that is supported by a jack.

Do not use the jack with people or luggage in the vehicle.

Use the jack provided in your vehicle. Other jacks may not support the weight (“load”) or their shape may not match.

The following instructions must be followed to use the jack safely:
- Do not use while the engine is running.
- Use only where the ground is firm and level.
- Use only at the jacking points.
- Do not get in the vehicle while using the jack.
- Do not put anything on top of or underneath the jack.

Models with power sliding doors

Turn off the sliding door main switch before replacing a rear tire. If the main switch is on, the power sliding door may accidentally operate, causing an accident.
Recovering a flat tire is a straightforward process, ensuring you can quickly return to your journey without延误.

1. Remove the wheel nuts and flat tire.

2. Wipe the mounting surfaces of the wheel with a clean cloth.

3. Mount the compact spare tire.

4. Screw the wheel nuts until they touch the lips around the mounting holes, then stop rotating.

Replacing the Flat Tire

Do not over tighten the wheel nuts by applying extra torque using your foot or a pipe.

Continued
If a Tire Goes Flat

5. Lower the vehicle and remove the jack. Tighten the wheel nuts in the order indicated in the image. Go around, tightening the nuts, two to three times in this order.

Wheel nut torque:
94 lbf-ft (127 N·m, 13 kgf·m)

Storing the Flat Tire

1. Put the flat tire in the storage bag provided with your vehicle.

WARNING
Loose items can fly around the interior in a crash and can seriously injure the occupants. Store the wheel, jack, and tools securely before driving.
2. Pull down the U-shaped carpet piece.
3. Remove the plastic screw with a coin.

4. Install the bracket and the mounting wing bolt (A) on the attachment point, and tighten the bolt.

5. Install the flat tire on the bracket with the inside of the wheel facing toward you.
6. Install the mounting wing bolt (B) to the bracket through one of the five wheel nut holes, and tighten the bolt.
   - Poke a hole in the storage bag as needed.
If a Tire Goes Flat

Changing a Flat Tire

■ Storing a flat tire on the folded third row seat

1. Turn over the flap on the left side of the cargo area floor.
2. Pull down the U-shaped carpet piece and remove the plastic screw with a coin.
3. Place the flat tire face down on the attachment point.
4. Put the tire mounting wing bolt (B) in the attachment point through one of the five wheel nut holes, and tighten the bolt.
   ▶ Poke a hole in the storage bag as needed.
If a Tire Goes Flat

Changing a Flat Tire

Handling the Unexpected

If you replace a flat tire with the spare tire, the low tire pressure/TPMS indicator comes on while you are driving. After driving for a few miles (kilometers), the indicator will start blinking for a short time and then stay on. Tire Pressure Monitor Problem appears on the driver information interface, but this is normal.

If you replace the tire with a specified regular tire, the warning message on the driver information interface and the low tire pressure/TPMS indicator will go off after a few miles (kilometers).

TPMS with Tire Fill Assist and the Compact Spare Tire

The system cannot monitor the pressure of the spare tire. Manually check the spare tire pressure to be sure that it is correct.

Use the TPMS specific wheels. Each is equipped with a tire pressure sensor mounted inside the tire behind the valve stem.
## Engine Does Not Start

### Checking the Engine

If the engine does not start, check the starter.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Starter condition</th>
<th>Checklist</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| **Starter doesn't turn or turns over slowly.**  
The battery may be dead. Check each of the items on the right and respond accordingly. | **Check for a message on the driver information interface.**  
• If the To Start, Hold Remote Near Start Button message appears  
  - If the Remote Battery is Weak P. 709  
  ▶ Make sure the remote is in its operating range.  
  - ENGINE START/STOP Button Operating Range P. 186 |
| **The starter turns over normally but the engine doesn't start.**  
There may be a problem with the fuse. Check each of the items on the right and respond accordingly. | **Review the engine start procedure.**  
Follow its instructions, and try to start the engine again. Starting the Engine P. 536 |
| **Check the immobilizer system indicator.**  
When the immobilizer system indicator is blinking, the engine cannot be started. | **Check the fuel level.**  
There should be enough fuel in the tank. Fuel Gauge P. 119 |
| **Check the fuses.**  
Check all fuses, or have the vehicle checked by a dealer. | **If the problem continues:**  
Emergency Towing P. 729 |
**If the Remote Battery is Weak**

If the beeper sounds, the **To Start, Hold Remote Near Start Button** message appears on the driver information interface, the **ENGINE START/STOP** button flashes, and the engine won’t start. Start the engine as follows:

1. Touch the center of the **ENGINE START/STOP** button with the H logo on the remote while the **ENGINE START/STOP** button is flashing. The buttons on the remote should be facing you.
   - The **ENGINE START/STOP** button flashes for about 30 seconds.

2. Depress the brake pedal and press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button within 10 seconds after the beeper sounds and the **ENGINE START/STOP** button changes from flashing to on.
   - If you don’t depress the pedal, the mode will change to ACCESSORY.
Emergency Engine Stop

The ENGINE START/STOP button may be used to stop the engine due to an emergency situation even while driving. If you must stop the engine, do either of the following operations:

• Press and hold the ENGINE START/STOP button for about two seconds.
• Firmly press the ENGINE START/STOP button three times.

The steering wheel will not lock. However, because turning off the engine disables the power assist the engine provides to the steering and braking systems, it will require significantly more physical effort and time to steer and slow the vehicle. Use both feet on the brake pedal to slow down the vehicle and stop immediately in a safe place.

The gear position automatically changes to P after the vehicle comes to a complete stop.

**U.S. models**
Then, the power mode changes to VEHICLE OFF.

**Canadian models**
Then press the ENGINE START/STOP button twice without depressing the brake pedal to change the mode to VEHICLE OFF.
Jump Starting

Jump Starting Procedure

Turn off the power to electric devices, such as audio and lights. Turn off the engine, then open the hood.

1. Connect the first jumper cable to your vehicle’s battery + terminal.
2. Connect the other end of the first jumper cable to the booster battery + terminal.
   - Use a 12-volt booster battery only.
   - When using an automotive battery charger to boost your 12-volt battery, select a lower charging voltage than 15-volt. Check the charger manual for the proper setting.
3. Connect the second jumper cable to the booster battery – terminal.
4. Connect the other end of the second jumper cable to the engine mounting bolt as shown. Do not connect this jumper cable to any other part.
5. If your vehicle is connected to another vehicle, start the assisting vehicle’s engine and increase its rpm slightly.
6. Attempt to start your vehicle’s engine. If it turns over slowly, check that the jumper cables have good metal-to-metal contact.

WARNING

A battery can explode if you do not follow the correct procedure, seriously injuring anyone nearby.

Keep all sparks, open flames, and smoking materials away from the battery.

Securely attach the jumper cables clips so that they do not come off when the engine vibrates. Also be careful not to tangle the jumper cables or allow the cable ends to touch each other while attaching or detaching the jumper cables.

Battery performance degrades in cold conditions and may prevent the engine from starting.

Continued
What to Do After the Engine Starts

Once your vehicle's engine has started, remove the jumper cables in the following order:

1. Disconnect the jumper cable from your vehicle's engine mounting bolt.
2. Disconnect the other end of the jumper cable from the booster battery terminal.
3. Disconnect the jumper cable from your vehicle's battery terminal.
4. Disconnect the other end of the jumper cable from the booster battery terminal.

Have your vehicle inspected by a nearby service station or a dealer.
Overheating

How to Handle Overheating

Overheating symptoms are as follows:
• The temperature gauge pointer is at the ℃ mark or the engine suddenly loses power.
• The Stop Driving When Safe, Engine Temperature Too Hot message appears on the driver information interface.
• Steam or spray comes out of the engine compartment.

First thing to do
1. Immediately park the vehicle in a safe place.
2. Turn off all accessories and turn on the hazard warning lights.
   ▶ No steam or spray present: Keep the engine running and open the hood.
   ▶ Steam or spray is present: Turn off the engine and wait until it subsides. Then open the hood.

⚠️ How to Handle Overheating

⚠️ WARNING
Steam and spray from an overheated engine can seriously scald you.
Do not open the hood if steam is coming out.

NOTICE
Continuing to drive with the temperature gauge pointer at the ℃ mark may damage the engine.
How to Handle Overheating

Next thing to do

1. Check that the cooling fan is operating and stop the engine once the temperature gauge pointer comes down.
   ▶ If the cooling fan is not operating, immediately stop the engine.
2. Once the engine has cooled down, inspect the coolant level and check the cooling system components for leaks.
   ▶ If the coolant level in the reserve tank is low, add coolant until it reaches the MAX mark.
   ▶ If there is no coolant in the reserve tank, check that the radiator is cool. Cover the radiator cap with a heavy cloth and open the cap. If necessary, add coolant up to the base of the filler neck and put the cap back on.

![Radiator](P. 654)

Last thing to do

Once the engine has cooled sufficiently, restart it and check the temperature gauge. If the temperature gauge pointer has gone down, resume driving. If it has not gone down, contact a dealer for repairs.

WARNING

Removing the radiator cap while the engine is hot can cause the coolant to spray out, seriously scalding you.

Always let the engine and radiator cool down before removing the radiator cap.

If the coolant is leaking, contact a dealer for repairs.

Use water as an emergency/temporary measure only. Have a dealer flush the system with proper antifreeze as soon as possible.
The Stop Driving When Safe. Engine Temperature Too Hot Message Appears On The Driver Information Interface.
The Stop Driving When Safe. Engine Temperature Too Hot message appears on the driver information interface when the engine temperature is high.

1. Immediately park the vehicle in a safe place.
   - Press the \( P \) button, and set the parking brake. Turn off all accessories and turn on the hazard warning lights.
2. Keep the engine running, and wait until the message disappears.
   - If the message does not disappear, have the vehicle inspected at a dealer.

How to Handle Overheating
Continuing to drive with the Stop Driving When Safe. Engine Temperature Too Hot message on the driver information interface may damage the engine.
Indicator, Coming On/Blinking

If the Low Oil Pressure Symbol Appears

■ Reasons for the symbol to appear
Appears when the engine oil pressure is low.

■ What to do as soon as the symbol appears
1. Immediately park the vehicle on level ground in a safe place.
2. If necessary, turn the hazard warning lights on.

■ What to do after parking the vehicle
1. Stop the engine and let it sit for about three minutes.
2. Open the hood and check the oil level.
   ▶ Add oil as necessary.
   ❱ Oil Check P. 649
3. Start the engine and check the low oil pressure symbol.
   ▶ The symbol disappears: Start driving again.
   ▶ The symbol does not disappear within 10 seconds: Stop the engine and contact a dealer for repairs immediately.

If the Charging System Indicator Comes On

■ Reasons for the indicator to come on
Comes on when the battery is not being charged.

■ What to do when the indicator comes on
Turn off the climate control system, rear defogger, and other electrical systems, and immediately contact a dealer for repairs.

NOTICE
Running the engine with low oil pressure can cause serious mechanical damage almost immediately.

If you need to stop temporarily, do not turn off the engine. Restarting the engine may rapidly discharge the battery.
If the Malfunction Indicator Lamp Comes On or Blinks

- **Reasons for the indicator lamp to come on or blink**
  - Comes on when there is a problem with the engine emissions control system.
  - Blinks when engine misfiring is detected.

- **What to do when the indicator lamp comes on**
  Avoid high speeds and immediately get your vehicle inspected at a dealer.

- **What to do when the indicator lamp blinks**
  Park the vehicle in a safe place with no flammable items and wait at least 10 minutes or more with the engine stopped until it cools.

**NOTICE**
If you drive with the malfunction indicator lamp on, the emissions control system and the engine could be damaged.

If the malfunction indicator lamp blinks again when restarting the engine, drive to the nearest dealer at 31 mph (50 km/h) or less. Have your vehicle inspected.
If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On or Blinks

- **Reasons for the indicator to come on**
  - The brake fluid is low.
  - There is a malfunction in the brake system.
- **What to do when the indicator comes on while driving**
  Depress the brake pedal lightly to check pedal pressure.
  - If normal, check the brake fluid level the next time you stop.
  - If abnormal, take immediate action. If necessary, downshift the transmission to slow the vehicle using engine braking.
- **Reason for the indicator to blink**
  - There is a problem with the electric parking brake system.
- **What to do when the indicator blinks**
  - Avoid using the parking brake and have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

If the brake system indicator and **ABS** indicator come on simultaneously, the electronic brake distribution system is not working. This can result in vehicle instability under sudden braking. Have your vehicle inspected by a dealer immediately.

If the brake system indicator (red) blinks at the same time when the brake system indicator (amber) comes on, the parking brake may not work. Avoid using the parking brake and have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

If you repeatedly operate the electric parking brake in a short period of time, the brake stops operating to prevent heating of the system. It returns to its original state in approximately one minute.
If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On or Blinks at the Same Time When the Brake System Indicator (Amber) Comes On

If the brake system indicator (red) comes on or blinks at the same time when the brake system indicator (amber) comes on, release the parking brake manually or automatically.

Parking Brake P. 600

• If the brake system indicator (red) continuously comes on or blinks at the same time when the brake system indicator (amber) comes on, stop the vehicle in a safe place and have it inspected by a dealer immediately.

Handling the Unexpected

If you apply the parking brake, you may not be able to release it.

If the brake system indicator (red) and the brake system indicator (amber) come on at the same time, the parking brake is working.

If the brake system indicator (red) blinks at the same time when the brake system indicator (amber) comes on, the parking brake may not work because it is checking the system.

If the brake system indicator (red) comes on alone, avoid using the parking brake and have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

Handling the Unexpected

If the brake system indicator (red) comes on or blinks at the same time when the brake system indicator (amber) comes on

If you apply the parking brake, you may not be able to release it.

If the brake system indicator (red) and the brake system indicator (amber) come on at the same time, the parking brake is working.

If the brake system indicator (red) blinks at the same time when the brake system indicator (amber) comes on, the parking brake may not work because it is checking the system.

If the brake system indicator (red) comes on alone, avoid using the parking brake and have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.
If the Electric Power Steering (EPS) System Indicator Comes On

- **Reasons for the indicator to come on**
  - Comes on when there is a problem with the EPS system.
  - If you depress the accelerator pedal repeatedly to increase the engine speed while the engine is idling, the indicator comes on, and sometimes the steering wheel becomes harder to operate.

- **What to do when the indicator comes on**
  Stop the vehicle in a safe place and restart the engine.
  If the indicator comes on and stays on, immediately have your vehicle inspected by a dealer.

If the Low Tire Pressure/TPMS Indicator Comes On or Blinks

- **Reasons for the indicator to come on or blink**
  A tire pressure is significantly low. If there is a problem with the TPMS with Tire Fill Assist or the compact spare tire is installed, the indicator blinks for about one minute, and then stays on.

- **What to do when the indicator comes on**
  Drive carefully and avoid abrupt cornering and hard braking.
  Stop your vehicle in a safe place. Check the tire pressure and adjust the pressure to the specified level. The specified tire pressure is on a label on the driver side doorjamb.

- **What to do when the indicator blinks, then remains on**
  Have the tire inspected by a dealer as soon as possible. If the compact spare tire causes the indicator to blink, change the tire to a full-size tire. The indicator goes off after driving for a few miles (kilometers).

**NOTICE**
Driving on an extremely underinflated tire can cause it to overheat. An overheated tire can fail. Always inflate your tires to the prescribed level.

TPMS with Tire Fill Assist provides visual and audible assistance during tire pressure adjustment. With the power mode in ON, while you adjust tire pressure up or down, the system alerts you as follows:

- **Below recommended pressure**: The beeper sounds and exterior lights flash once every five seconds.
- **At recommended pressure**: The beeper sounds and exterior lights flash rapidly for three seconds with five seconds intervals.
- **Above recommended pressure**: The beeper sounds and lights flash twice every two seconds.
If the Transmission System Indicator Blinks along with the Warning Message

- **Reasons for the indicator to blink**
  The transmission is malfunctioning.

- **What to do when the indicator blinks**
  - Immediately have your vehicle inspected by a dealer.
  - Change the gear position to [N] after starting the engine.
  - Check if the [N] position in the instrument panel and the indicator on the [N] button light/blink.

  - Starting the Engine P. 536

If the Transmission System Indicator Blinks along with the Warning Message

You may not be able to turn on the engine.

Make sure to set the parking brake when parking your vehicle.

Call a professional towing service if you need to tow your vehicle.

  - Emergency Towing P. 729
Fuses

Fuse Locations

If any electrical devices are not working, set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF and check to see if any applicable fuse is blown.

■ Engine Compartment Fuse Box

■ Fuse box A
Locate at the rear end of the engine compartment on the right side. Push the tabs to open the box.

Fuse locations are shown on the fuse box cover. Locate the fuse in question by the fuse number and box cover number.

■ Circuit protected and fuse rating

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Circuit Protected</th>
<th>Amps</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 IG1 VB SOL</td>
<td>10 A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 VSA/ABS</td>
<td>5 A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6 Wiper</td>
<td>30 A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7 IG1 DBW</td>
<td>15 A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8 TCU</td>
<td>15 A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9 IGP1</td>
<td>15 A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10 Sub Fan Motor</td>
<td>30 A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11 Rear Driver’s Side Power Window</td>
<td>30 A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12 Ignition Coil/Injector</td>
<td>30 A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13 TCU 2</td>
<td>10 A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14 TCU 3</td>
<td>10 A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15 PDM LT2</td>
<td>30 A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16 ST CUT</td>
<td>30 A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17 Shutter Grill</td>
<td>10 A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18 Back Up</td>
<td>10 A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19 Stop</td>
<td>10 A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20 PDM LT1</td>
<td>30 A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21 Rear Passenger’s Side Power Window</td>
<td>30 A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22 ACM</td>
<td>20 A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23 Hazard</td>
<td>15 A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24 Washer</td>
<td>15 A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25 Main Fan Motor</td>
<td>30 A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26 STRLD</td>
<td>5 A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27 IGPS</td>
<td>5 A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28 Stop</td>
<td>10 A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29 Right Headlight Low Beam</td>
<td>10 A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30 Left Headlight Low Beam</td>
<td>10 A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31 Injector</td>
<td>20 A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32 Ignition Coil</td>
<td>15 A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33 FET Module</td>
<td>5 A</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
1. Remove the engine compartment cover and the air intake duct.
   - Engine Compartment Cover P. 647
   - High Beam Headlights P. 658

2. Remove the cover on the + terminal (as shown).
   Replacement of engine compartment fuses should be done by a dealer.

### Circuit protected and fuse rating

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Circuit Protected</th>
<th>Amps</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a Battery Main</td>
<td>150 A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b FET</td>
<td>70 A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>c R/B Main 1</td>
<td>70 A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>d R/B Main 2</td>
<td>70 A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>e EPS</td>
<td>70 A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>f VAC</td>
<td>60 A</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Fuses

### Fuse Locations

- **Located under the dashboard.**

### Fuse Box A

Fuse locations are shown on the label on the side panel. Locate the fuse in question by the fuse number and label number.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Circuit Protected</th>
<th>Amps</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 Meter</td>
<td>10 A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Starter Motor*</td>
<td>10 A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 Option</td>
<td>10 A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 Option</td>
<td>10 A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 Moonroof*</td>
<td>20 A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6 Rear Fuse Box</td>
<td>10 A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7 IG1 Front</td>
<td>15 A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8 Rear Passenger’s Door Lock</td>
<td>10 A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9 Driver’s Door Lock</td>
<td>10 A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10 Front Passenger’s Door Lock</td>
<td>10 A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11 Front Passenger’s Door Unlock</td>
<td>10 A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12 Front Passenger’s Door Unlock</td>
<td>10 A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13 Driver’s Door Unlock</td>
<td>10 A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14 Driver’s Door Unlock</td>
<td>10 A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15 Rear Wiper</td>
<td>10 A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16 SMART</td>
<td>10 A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17 Driver’s Power Seat Reclining</td>
<td>20 A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18 Heated Steering Wheel*</td>
<td>10 A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19 Front Passenger’s Power Seat Reclining</td>
<td>20 A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20 SRS</td>
<td>10 A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21 Fuel Pump</td>
<td>20 A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22 Front Accessory Power Socket</td>
<td>20 A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23 Left Headlight High Beam</td>
<td>10 A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24 Right Headlight High Beam</td>
<td>10 A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25 Driver’s Power Window</td>
<td>20 A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26 Rear Passenger’s Door Unlock</td>
<td>10 A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27 ACC</td>
<td>10 A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28 SRS2</td>
<td>10 A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29 Driver’s Power Seat Lumbar Support*</td>
<td>(10 A)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30 Front Passenger’s Power Seat Sliding</td>
<td>20 A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31 Driver’s Power Seat Sliding</td>
<td>20 A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32 Tailgate Lock*</td>
<td>10 A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33 -</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34 ACG</td>
<td>15 A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35 DRL</td>
<td>10 A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36 A/C</td>
<td>10 A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>37 Radio</td>
<td>20 A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>38 Door Lock Main</td>
<td>20 A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>39 Front Passenger’s Power Window</td>
<td>20 A</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Not available on all models

*1: Models with color audio system

*2: Models without color audio system
### Fuse Locations

#### Fuse Box B

![Fuse Box B Image]

#### Circuit protected and fuse rating

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Circuit Protected</th>
<th>Amps</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DC/DC2</td>
<td>30 A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DC/DC1</td>
<td>30 A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fuse Box Main1</td>
<td>50 A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fuse Box Main2</td>
<td>50 A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rear Fuse Box Main1</td>
<td>50 A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rear Fuse Box Main2</td>
<td>50 A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vacuum*</td>
<td>60 A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IG Main1</td>
<td>30 A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AC Outlet</td>
<td>30 A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IG Main2</td>
<td>30 A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rear Blower</td>
<td>30 A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Audio Amp2*</td>
<td>20 A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Audio Amp1*</td>
<td>20 A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rear Defogger</td>
<td>40 A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Heated Windshield*</td>
<td>15 A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BMS</td>
<td>5 A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Audio Amp3*</td>
<td>30 A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VSA Motor</td>
<td>40 A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Front Blower</td>
<td>40 A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Horn</td>
<td>10 A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shift By Wire</td>
<td>10 A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VBUM</td>
<td>10 A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VSA</td>
<td>40 A</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Not available on all models*

### Handling the Unexpected

- **Fuse Locations**
- **Fuse Box B**
- **Circuit protected and fuse rating**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Circuit Protected</th>
<th>Amps</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Horn</td>
<td>10 A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3rd Row Accessory Power Socket*</td>
<td>20 A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shift By Wire</td>
<td>10 A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VBUM</td>
<td>10 A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VSA</td>
<td>40 A</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**Fuse Box C**

**Fuse Locations**

■ Fuse Box C

Handling the Unexpected

* Not available on all models

---

### Circuit protected and fuse rating

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Circuit Protected</th>
<th>Amps</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a Meter</td>
<td>(10 A)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b VSA</td>
<td>(10 A)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>c ACG</td>
<td>(10 A)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>d Body Control Module</td>
<td>(10 A)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>e</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>f Back Up</td>
<td>(10 A)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>g ACC</td>
<td>(10 A)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**Rear Side Interior Fuse Box**

Located on the left side of cargo area. Take off the cover to open.

Fuse locations are shown on the fuse box cover.

Locate the fuse in question by the fuse number and box cover number.

---

**Circuit protected and fuse rating**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Circuit Protected</th>
<th>Amps</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1  Rear Driver’s Side Door Lock</td>
<td>10 A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2  Passenger’s Side Power Sliding Door Closer*</td>
<td>(20 A)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3  Power Tailgate Closer Motor*</td>
<td>(20 A)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4  Cargo Area’s Accessory Power Socket</td>
<td>20 A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5  Fuel Fill Door</td>
<td>10 A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6  −</td>
<td>−</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7  Driver’s Side Power Sliding Door Closer*</td>
<td>(20 A)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8  −</td>
<td>−</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9  −</td>
<td>−</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10 −</td>
<td>−</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11 −</td>
<td>−</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12 −</td>
<td>−</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13 −</td>
<td>−</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14 Passenger’s Side Power Sliding Door Motor*</td>
<td>(30 A)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15 −</td>
<td>−</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16 Power Tailgate Motor*</td>
<td>(40 A)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17 −</td>
<td>−</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18 −</td>
<td>−</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19 Driver’s Side Power Sliding Door Motor*</td>
<td>(30 A)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Not available on all models
Inspecting and Changing Fuses

1. Set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF. Turn headlights and all accessories off.
2. Check the fuses on the battery in the engine compartment.
   ▶ If the fuse is blown, have it replaced by a dealer.
3. Remove the fuse box cover.
4. Inspect the small fuses in the engine compartment and the vehicle interior.
   ▶ If there is a blown fuse, remove it with the fuse puller and replace it with a new one.
5. Check the large fuse in the vehicle interior.
   ▶ If the fuse is blown, use a Phillips-head screwdriver to remove the screw and replace it with a new one.

**Notice**
Replacing a fuse with one that has a higher rating greatly increases the chances of damaging the electrical system.

Replace fuses with a spare fuse of the same specified amperage.
Use the charts to locate the fuse in question and confirm the specified amperage on the fuse label.

**Fuse Locations** P. 722
There is a fuse puller on the back of the engine compartment fuse box cover.
Emergency Towing

Call a professional towing service if you need to tow your vehicle.

- **Flat bed equipment**
  The operator loads your vehicle on the back of a truck.
  **This is the only way you can safely transport your vehicle.**
  Any other towing method will damage the vehicle’s drive system.

**NOTICE**
Trying to lift or tow your vehicle by the bumpers will cause serious damage. The bumpers are not designed to support the vehicle’s weight.

**NOTICE**
Improper towing such as towing behind a motorhome or other motor vehicle can damage the transmission.

Never tow your vehicle with just a rope or chain. It is very dangerous, since ropes or chains may shift from side to side or break.
When You Cannot Unlock the Fuel Fill Door

What to Do When Unable to Unlock the Fuel Fill Door

If you cannot unlock the fuel fill door, use the following procedure:

1. Open the tailgate and remove the cover on the left side of cargo area.
2. Pull the yellow release cord (as shown).
   - The release cord opens the fuel fill door when it is pulled.

After taking these steps, contact a dealer to have your vehicle checked.
When You Cannot Open the Tailgate

What to Do When Unable to Open the Tailgate

If you cannot open the tailgate or power tailgate, use the following procedure:

1. Use a flat-tip screwdriver and remove the cover on the back of the tailgate.
   - Wrap the flat-tip screwdriver with a cloth to prevent scratches.

2. To open the tailgate, push the tailgate while pushing the lever to the right.

Models with power tailgate

Following up:
After taking these steps, contact a dealer to have the vehicle checked.

When you open the tailgate from inside, make sure there is enough space around the tailgate, and it does not hit anyone or any object.
When You Cannot Open the Tailgate

2. To open the tailgate, push the tailgate while pushing the lever to the right with the flat-tip screwdriver.

Models without power tailgate

Lever
When You Cannot Close the Power Sliding Doors*

What to Do When Unable to Close the Power Sliding Doors

If either power sliding door does not latch when closed, use the following procedure.

1. Set the sliding door main switch in the OFF position.
   - Switching between manual and automatic operations P. 173
2. Push front edge of the cover on hand pocket of the power sliding door to pop it out, and remove it as shown in the image.
3. Pull the rear latch reset cable (yellow) towards the front of the vehicle until it bottoms out (about 15 mm).
4. Manually close the door and confirm latches engage.

* Not available on all models
Refueling From a Portable Fuel Container

If you have run out of fuel and need to refuel your vehicle from a portable fuel container, use the funnel provided with your vehicle.

1. Turn off the engine.
2. Press on the edge of the fuel fill door to make it pop up slightly. The fuel fill door opens.
3. Remove the cover on the right side panel of the cargo area.
4. Pick up the funnel from the cover (as shown). For Types of Tools P. 698
5. Place the end of the funnel on the lower part of filler opening, then insert it slowly and fully. Make sure that the end of the funnel goes down along with the filler pipe.

**WARNING**
Fuel is highly flammable and explosive. You can be burned or seriously injured when handling fuel.

- Stop the engine, and keep heat, sparks, and flame away.
- Handle fuel only outdoors.
- Wipe up spills immediately.
6. Fill the tank with fuel from the portable fuel container.
   ▶ Pour fuel carefully so you do not spill any.
7. Remove the funnel from the filler neck.
   ▶ Wipe up any fuel from the funnel before storing it.
8. Shut the fuel fill door by hand.

**NOTICE**

Do not insert the nozzle of a portable fuel container or any funnel other than the one provided with your vehicle. Doing so can damage the fuel system.

Do not try to pry open or push open the sealed fuel tank with foreign objects. This can damage the fuel system and its seal.

Make sure the fuel in the portable fuel container is gasoline before you refuel.
Information

This chapter includes your vehicle’s specifications, locations of identification numbers, and other information required by regulation.

Specifications ......................... 738
Identification Numbers
Vehicle Identification Number (VIN),
Engine Number, and Transmission
Number ..................................... 740
Devices that Emit Radio Waves ...... 741
Reporting Safety Defects .......... 743
Emissions Testing
Testing of Readiness Codes ........ 744
Warranty Coverages ................. 746
Authorized Manuals ................. 748
Customer Service Information ... 749
Specifications

■ Vehicle Specifications

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Model</th>
<th>Honda Odyssey</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>No. of Passengers:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Front</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rear</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2nd Row</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3rd Row</td>
<td>3 (2*)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total</td>
<td>8 (7*)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Weights:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gross Vehicle Weight Rating</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>U.S.:</td>
<td>6,019 lbs (2,730 kg)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Canada:</td>
<td>2,730 kg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gross Axle Weight Rating (Front)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>U.S.:</td>
<td>2,888 lbs (1,310 kg)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Canada:</td>
<td>1,310 kg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gross Axle Weight Rating (Rear)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>U.S.:</td>
<td>3,230 lbs (1,465 kg)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Canada:</td>
<td>1,465 kg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gross Combined Weight Rating</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>U.S.:</td>
<td>8,565 lbs (3,885 kg)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Canada:</td>
<td>3,885 kg</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*1: LX grade model

■ Air Conditioning

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Refrigerant Type</th>
<th>HFO-1234yf (R-1234yf)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Charge Quantity</td>
<td>20.3 - 22.0 oz (575 - 625 g)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lubricant Type</td>
<td>ND-OIL14 (POE)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quantity</td>
<td>7.3 - 8.2 cu-in (120 - 135 cm³)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

■ Engine Specifications

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Displacement</th>
<th>212 cu-in (3,471 cm³)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Spark Plugs</td>
<td>NGK DILZKR7B11G</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

■ Fuel

| Type:          | Unleaded gasoline, Pump octane number of 87 or higher |
| Fuel Tank Capacity | 19.5 US gal (73.8 L) |

■ Washer Fluid

| Tank Capacity   | U.S.: 2.6 US qt (2.5 L) |
|                 | Canada: 4.8 US qt (4.5 L) |

■ Light Bulbs

| Headlights (Low Beam) | 55W (H11)*1, *2 |
| Headlights (High Beam) | 60W (HB3)*1, *2 |
| Fog Lights            | 35W (HB3)*2 |
| Front Turn Signal/Parking Lights | 28/8W (Amber)*1 |
| Front Turn Signal Lights | 28/8W (Amber)*2, *3 |
| Front Side Marker Lights | 3CP |
| Parking/Daytime Running Lights | LED*2, *3 |
| Daytime Running Lights | 60W (HB3)*1 |
| Side Turn Signal Lights (on Door Mirrors) | LED*2, *3 |
| Brake Lights           | 21W |
| Rear Side Marker/Taillights | LED |
| Rear Turn Signal Lights | 21W |
| Back-Up Lights         | 21W |
| Taillights             | LED |
| High-Mount Brake Light | LED |
| Rear License Plate Light | LED |
| Map Lights (Front)     | 5W |
| Map Lights (Rear)      | 5W |
| Cargo Area Light       | 8W |
| Vanity Mirror Lights   | 1.4W |
| Door Courtesy Lights   | 3.8W (2CP) |
| Glove Box Light        | 1.4W |
| Foot Lights            | LED*5 |
| Console Compartment Light | 1.4W*4 |
| Door Inner Handle Lights | LED*5 |
| Instrument Panel Ambient Lights | LED*5 |
| Pass Through Light     | LED*5 |

*1: LX and LX-HS grade models
*2: EX, EXL, EXL-NR, EX-R, EXLNAV, and EXLRES grade models
*3: ELITE and TOURING grade models
*4: EX-R, EXL-NR, EXLNAV, EXLRES, ELITE, and TOURING grade models
*5: ELITE and Canadian TOURING grade models
■ Brake Fluid
- Honda Heavy Duty Brake Fluid DOT 3

■ Automatic Transmission Fluid
- ELITE and TOURING grade models
  - Honda Automatic Transmission Fluid ATF-Type 2
- Except ELITE and TOURING grade models
  - Honda Automatic Transmission Fluid ATF-Type 3.1 or higher

■ Engine Oil
- Recommended: Genuine Honda Motor Oil 0W-20
  - API Premium-grade 0W-20 detergent oil
- Capacity: Change 5.4 US qt (5.1 L)
  - Change including filter 5.7 US qt (5.4 L)

■ Engine Coolant
- Honda Long-Life Antifreeze/Coolant Type 2
  - Ratio: 50/50 with distilled water
    - 1.69 US gal (6.40 L)
    - 1.70 US gal (6.42 L)
  - Capacity: Change including the remaining 0.18 US gal (0.68 L) in the reserve tank

■ Tire

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Size</th>
<th>Regular</th>
<th>Compact Spare</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Size</td>
<td>235/60R18 103H*1</td>
<td>T135/80D17 103M</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pressure psi</td>
<td>35 (240 [2.4])</td>
<td>60 (420 [4.2])</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pressure kPa</td>
<td>36 (250 [2.5])</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pressure kgf/cm²</td>
<td>26 (2.6)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- Regular: ELITE and TOURING grade models
- Compact: Except U.S. ELITE and Canadian TOURING grade models
- *1: Except U.S. ELITE and Canadian TOURING grade models
- *2: U.S. ELITE and Canadian TOURING grade models

■ Engine Oil
- Recommended: Genuine Honda Motor Oil 0W-20
  - API Premium-grade 0W-20 detergent oil
- Capacity: Change 5.4 US qt (5.1 L)
  - Change including filter 5.7 US qt (5.4 L)

■ Engine Coolant
- Honda Long-Life Antifreeze/Coolant Type 2
  - Ratio: 50/50 with distilled water
    - 1.69 US gal (6.40 L)
    - 1.70 US gal (6.42 L)
  - Capacity: Change including the remaining 0.18 US gal (0.68 L) in the reserve tank

■ Tire

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Size</th>
<th>Regular</th>
<th>Compact Spare</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Size</td>
<td>235/55R19 101H*2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pressure psi</td>
<td>36 (250 [2.5])</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pressure kPa</td>
<td>37 (260 [2.6])</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pressure kgf/cm²</td>
<td>27 (2.7)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- Regular: ELITE and TOURING grade models
- Compact: Except U.S. ELITE and Canadian TOURING grade models
- *1: Except U.S. ELITE and Canadian TOURING grade models
- *2: U.S. ELITE and Canadian TOURING grade models
Identification Numbers

Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), Engine Number, and Transmission Number

Your vehicle has a 17-digit vehicle identification number (VIN) used to register your vehicle for warranty purposes, and for licensing and insuring your vehicle. The locations of your vehicle’s VIN, engine number, and transmission number are shown as follows:

*1: Except ELITE and TOURING grade models
*2: ELITE and TOURING grade models

The interior vehicle identification number (VIN) is located under the cover.
The following products and systems on your vehicle emit radio waves when in operation.

- Audio System
- Bluetooth® Audio
- Bluetooth® HandsFreeLink®
- HomeLink® Universal Transceiver*
- Immobilizer System
- Smart Entry System*
- Parking Sensor System*
- Remote Transmitter
- Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)
- Collision Mitigation Braking System™*
- Blind spot information System*
- Remote Engine Start with Vehicle Feedback*
- HondaLink*
- Wireless charger*
- Models with Blu-ray/DVD rear entertainment system
  - Blu-ray/DVD Rear Entertainment System Remote Control

Each of the above complies with the appropriate requirements or the required standards of FCC (Federal Communications Commission) and Industry Canada Standard, described below:

* Not available on all models

Continued
As required by the FCC:
This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user’s authority to operate the equipment.

This device complies with Industry Canada licence-exempt RSS standard(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

High-power radars are allocated as primary users (i.e. priority users) of the bands 5250-5350 MHz and 5650-5850 MHz. These radars could cause interference and/or damage to LE-LAN devices.
Reporting Safety Defects

In the U.S.
If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) in addition to notifying American Honda Motor Co., Inc.

If NHTSA receives similar complaints, it may open an investigation, and if it finds that a safety defect exists in a group of vehicles, it may order a recall and remedy campaign. However, NHTSA cannot become involved in individual problems between you, your dealer, or American Honda Motor Co., Inc.

To contact NHTSA, you may call the Vehicle Safety Hotline toll-free at 1-888-327-4236 (TTY: 1-800-424-9153); go to http://www.safercar.gov; or write to: Administrator, NHTSA, 1200 New Jersey Avenue, SE., Washington, DC 20590. You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from http://www.safercar.gov.

In Canada
If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform Honda Canada Inc. and you may also inform Transport Canada.

If Transport Canada receives similar complaints, it may open an investigation, and if it finds that a safety defect exists in a group of vehicles, it may lead to a recall and remedy campaign. However, Transport Canada cannot become involved in individual problems between you, your dealer, or Honda Canada Inc.

To contact Transport Canada’s Defect Investigations and Recalls Division, you may call 1-800-333-0510. For more information on reporting safety defects or about motor vehicle safety, go to http://www.tc.gc.ca/roadsafety.
Emissions Testing

Testing of Readiness Codes

Your vehicle has readiness codes as part of the onboard self diagnostic system. Some states use these codes for testing to verify whether your vehicle’s emissions components are working properly. The codes may not be read properly if testing is performed just after the battery has gone dead or been disconnected.

To check if they are set, set the power mode to ON, without starting the engine. The malfunction indicator lamp will come on for several seconds. If it then goes off, the readiness codes are set. If it blinks five times, the readiness codes are not set.

If you are required to have your vehicle tested before the readiness codes are ready, prepare the vehicle for retesting by doing the following:

1. Fill the gas tank to approximately 3/4 full.
2. Park the vehicle and leave the engine off for 6 hours or more.
3. Make sure the ambient temperature is between 40°F and 95°F (4°C and 35°C).
4. Start the engine without touching the accelerator pedal, and let it idle for 20 seconds.
5. Keep the vehicle in P. Increase the engine speed to 2,000 rpm, and hold it there for about 3 minutes.
6. Let the engine idle with your foot off the accelerator for 20 seconds.

The readiness codes are erased when the battery is disconnected, and set again only after several days of driving under a variety of conditions.

If a testing facility determines that the readiness codes are not set, you may be requested to return at a later date to complete the test.

If the testing facility determines the readiness codes are still not set, see a dealer.
7. Select a nearby, lightly traveled major highway where you can maintain a speed of 50 to 60 mph (80 to 97 km/h) for at least 20 minutes. Drive on the highway in [D]. Do not use cruise control. When traffic allows, drive for 90 seconds without moving the accelerator pedal. (Vehicle speed may vary slightly; this is okay.) If you cannot do this for a continuous 90 seconds because of traffic conditions, drive for at least 30 seconds, then repeat it two more times (for a total of 90 seconds).

8. Drive in city or suburban traffic for at least 10 minutes. When traffic conditions allow, let the vehicle coast for several seconds without using the accelerator pedal or the brake pedal.

9. Park the vehicle and leave the engine off for 30 minutes.
Warranty Coverages

**U.S. Owners**

Your new vehicle is covered by these warranties:

*New Vehicle Limited Warranty* – covers your new vehicle, except for the emissions control systems and accessories, against defects in materials and workmanship.

*Emissions Control Systems Defects Warranty and Emissions Performance Warranty* – these two warranties cover your vehicle’s emissions control systems. Time, mileage, and coverage are conditional. Please read your warranty booklet for exact information.

*Seat Belt Limited Warranty* – a seat belt that fails to function properly is covered by a limited warranty. Please read your warranty booklet for details.

*Rust Perforation Limited Warranty* – all exterior body panels are covered against rusting from the inside out for the specified time period, regardless of mileage.

*Accessory Limited Warranty* – Honda accessories are covered under this warranty. Time and mileage limits depend on the type of accessory and other factors. Please read your warranty booklet for details.

*Replacement Parts Limited Warranty* – covers all Honda replacement parts against defects in materials and workmanship.
**Replacement Battery Limited Warranty** – provides prorated coverage for a replacement battery purchased from a dealer.

**Replacement Muffler Lifetime Limited Warranty** – provides coverage for as long as the purchaser of the muffler owns the vehicle.

Restrictions and exclusions apply to all these warranties. Please read the Honda warranty information booklet that came with your vehicle for precise information on warranty coverages. Your vehicle’s original tires are covered by their manufacturer. Tire warranty information is in a separate booklet.

■ **Canadian Owners**
Please refer to the warranty manual that came with your vehicle.

■ **EPA Contact Information**
An owner may obtain further information concerning emission warranties or report violations of the terms of the emission warranties by contacting:

U.S. Environmental Protection Agency  
Office of Transportation and Air Quality  
Compliance Division, Light-Duty Vehicle Group  
Attn: Warranty Complaints  
2000 Traverwood Drive  
Ann Arbor, MI 48105  
Email: complianceinfo@epa.gov
Authorized Manuals

■ Service Express
For electronic copies of service publications, you can purchase a subscription to Service Express. Visit www.techinfo.honda.com for pricing and options.

■ For U.S. Owners
Manuals can be purchased from Helm Incorporated. You can order a manual by phone at 1 (800) 782-4356 (credit card orders only), or online at www.helminc.com.

■ For Canadian Owners
Please contact a dealer to order any manuals that you may require.
Customer Service Information

Honda dealership personnel are trained professionals who should be able to deal with any problems you may encounter with your vehicle. If, however, you are faced with a problem that they cannot resolve to your satisfaction, contact Honda Customer Services.

**U.S. Owners**
American Honda Motor Co., Inc.
Honda Automobile Customer Services
Mail Stop 100-5E-8A
1919 Torrance Blvd.
Torrance, CA 90501-2746
Tel: 1 (800) 999-1009

**Canadian Owners**
Honda Canada Inc.
Customer Relations
180 Honda Boulevard
Markham, ON
L6C 0H9
Tel: 1-888-9-HONDA-9
Fax: 1-877-939-0909
E-mail: Honda_cr@ch.honda.com

**In Puerto Rico and the U.S. Virgin Islands**
Bella International
P.O. Box 190816
San Juan, PR 00919-0816
Tel: 1 (787) 620-7546

When you call or write, please give us the following information:
- Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), Engine Number, and Transmission Number
- Date of purchase
- Odometer reading of your vehicle
- Your name, address, and telephone number
- A detailed description of the problem
- Name of the dealer who sold the vehicle to you
## Index

**A**
- ABS (Anti-lock Brake System) .................... 606
- AC Power Outlet .................................. 235
- Accessories and Modifications ................. 694
- Accessory Power Sockets ......................... 233
- Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) Indicator (Amber) ...... 98
- Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) Indicator (Green) .......... 98, 99
- Additives
  - Coolant ........................................... 653
  - Engine Oil ........................................ 648
  - Washer ............................................ 657
- Additives, Engine Oil ................................ 648
- Adjusting
  - Armrest .......................................... 224
  - Front and Second Row Outer and Third Row Outer Head Restraints Positions ........ 212
  - Front Seats ..................................... 209
  - Mirrors .......................................... 206
  - Second Row Seats ................................ 216
  - Steering Wheel ................................... 205
  - Third Row Seats .................................. 221
- Agile Handling Assist .................................. 591
- Air Conditioning System (Climate Control System) .... 248, 252
- Changing the Mode .................................. 248, 252
- Defrosting the Windshield and Windows ............... 249, 253
- Dust and Pollen Filter ............................... 687
- Recirculation/Fresh Air Mode ....................... 248
- Sensors ............................................. 257
- Using Automatic Climate Control .... 248, 252
- Air Pressure ........................................ 674, 739
- Airbags ............................................. 47
- Advanced Airbags ................................... 53
- Airbag Care ......................................... 61
- Event Data Recorder .................................. 0
- Front Airbags (SRS) .................................. 50
- Front Knee Airbags .................................... 54
- Indicator ............................................. 59, 90
- Passenger Front Airbag Off Indicator ............... 60
- Sensors .............................................. 47
- Side Airbags .......................................... 56
- Side Curtain Airbags ................................... 58
- AM/FM Radio ........................................ 274, 318
- Android Auto ........................................ 363
- Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) ....................... 606
- Indicator ............................................. 90
- Apple CarPlay ......................................... 360
- Armrest ............................................. 224
- Audio Remote Controls ................................ 264
- Audio System ........................................ 260
  - Adjusting the Sound ............................... 272, 312
  - Audio/Information Screen ....................... 268, 286
  - Auxiliary Input Jack ................................ 262
  - Display Setup ..................................... 273, 313
  - Error Messages ..................................... 367
  - File Manager ....................................... 306
  - General Information ............................... 372
- Home Screen ......................................... 292
- How to Delete a File .................................. 309
- How to Transfer a File ................................ 306
- How to Update Wirelessly ......................... 300
- How to Update with a USB Device ................. 304
- Limitations for Manual Operation ................. 314
- MP3/WMA/AAC ........................................ 279, 332, 338, 341
- My Honda Music ...................................... 341
- Near Field Communication (NFC) .................. 356
- Playing a CD ......................................... 332
- Playing Social Playlist ............................. 347
- Reactivating ......................................... 263
- Recommended CDs ................................... 373
- Remote Controls ...................................... 264
- Security Code ......................................... 263
- Selecting an Audio Source ......................... 314
- Status Area .......................................... 297
- System Updates ....................................... 300
- Theft Protection ....................................... 263
- USB Flash Drives ..................................... 375
- USB Ports ............................................. 261
- Wallpaper Setup ..................................... 270, 290
- Audio/Information Screen ......................... 268, 286
- Authorized Manuals .................................... 748
- Auto Door Locking/Unlocking ...................... 158
- Customize ............................................ 137, 462
- Auto High-Beam ....................................... 194
- Indicator ............................................. 90
- Auto Idle Stop Indicator (Amber) ................. 95
- Auto Idle Stop Indicator (Green) ................. 95
Automatic Brake Hold
Indicator ...................................................  86

Automatic Brake Hold System
Indicator ...................................................  86

Automatic Operation (automatic lighting control) ...................................................  190

Automatic Transmission .................................................  543
Creeping.................................................  543
Fluid .......................................................  655
Kickdown ...............................................  543
Shift Operation .......................................  546
Shifting...................................................  544

Auxiliary Input Jack ..................................................  262

Average Fuel Economy .............................................  125

Blu-ray/DVD Rear Entertainment System .....................................................  396
Audio Sources for Front and Rear Seats ...  415
Auxiliary Console Panels ......................  398
DVD or Blu-ray™ Player Error Messages ...  440
Front Control Panel Operation ..................  407
HDMI™ Port ............................................  399
How Much Farther?™ ..................................  414
Media Servers ...........................................  414
Operating the System ..................................  400
Overhead Screen .....................................  399
Playable Disc Region Codes ......................  438
Playable Disc Types ...................................  438
Playable Discs ..........................................  416
Playing a Disc in the Rear .........................  412
Playing a DVD/Blu-ray™..................................  401
Playing a Video Using the HDMI™ ............  413
Playing an iPod and a USB Flash Drive in the Rear..................................  412
Playing Apps.............................................  410
Rear DVD or Blu-ray™ Menu ......................  402
Rear System Setup ....................................  408
Recommended Discs ....................................  439
Selecting the Audio Source using Front Control Panel ........................................  407
Setting the DVD or Blu-ray™ Menu.............  409
System Controls .........................................  401, 411
System Settings ...........................................  405
Wireless Headphones ...................................  397

Booster Seats (For Children) ......................  79

Brake System .............................................  600
Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) .....................  606
Brake Assist System .................................  607
Fluid .......................................................  656
Foot Brake...............................................  603
Indicator .................................................  84, 85, 718
Indicator (Red) ..........................................  718, 719
Parking Brake ...........................................  600

Brightness Control (Instrument Panel) .......  200
BSI (Blind spot information) System ..............  596

Bulb Replacement ...........................................  658
Back-Up Light/Taillights ............................  667
Brake, Rear Turn Signal Light, and Rear Side Marker/Taillights ..................  665
Daytime Running Lights .............................  662
Fog Lights .................................................  661
Front Side Marker Light Bulbs ....................  664
Front Turn Signal/Parking Lights ................  663
Headlights .................................................  658
High-Mount Brake Light .........................  668
Parking/Daytime Running Lights ................  662
Rear License Plate Light .........................  668
Side Turn Signal/Emergency Indicator Lights ........................................  664

Bulb Specifications ...........................................  738
CabinTalk™ .................................................. 522
CabinWatch™ .............................................. 521
Car Wash Mode ............................................ 548
Carbon Monoxide Gas .................................... 80
Cargo Hooks .................................................. 239
Carrying Cargo ............................................. 525, 527
CD Player ....................................................... 332
Center Pocket ................................................ 230
Certification Label ........................................ 740
Changing Bulbs ............................................. 658
Charging System Indicator ............................. 87, 716
Child Safety .................................................. 62
Childproof Door Locks .................................... 157
Child Seat ..................................................... 62
Booster Seats ............................................... 79
Child Seat for Infants .................................... 64
Child Seat for Small Children .......................... 65
Installing a Child Seat with a Lap/Shoulder Seat Belt .................................................. 72
Larger Children ............................................. 78
Rear-facing Child Seat ..................................... 64
Selecting a Child Seat ..................................... 66
Using a Tether ................................................ 74
Childproof Door Locks .................................... 157
Cleaning the Exterior ..................................... 691
Cleaning the Interior ...................................... 688
Climate Control System .................................. 248, 252
Changing the Mode ........................................ 248, 252
Defrosting the Windshield and Windows .......... 249, 253
Dust and Pollen Filter ...................................... 687
Recirculation/Fresh Air Mode ............................ 248
Sensors ..................................................... 257
Using Automatic Climate Control .................... 248, 252
Clock .......................................................... 142
Coat Hooks .................................................. 238
Collision Mitigation Braking System™
(CMBS™) Indicator ........................................ 99, 100
Compact Spare Tire ....................................... 699, 739
Console Box .................................................. 228
Console Compartment with Lid ....................... 229
Coolant (Engine) ............................................ 653
Adding to the Radiator .................................... 654
Adding to the Reserve Tank ............................ 653
Overheating ................................................... 713
Temperature Gauge ........................................ 119
Creeeping (Automatic Transmission) .................. 543
Cruise Control .............................................. 559
Indicator ..................................................... 95
Cup Holders .................................................. 231
Customer Service Information ......................... 749
Customized Features ..................................... 133, 442
Dust and Pollen Filter ...................................... 687
Recirculation/Fresh Air Mode ............................ 248
Sensors ..................................................... 257
Using Automatic Climate Control .................... 248, 252
Clock .......................................................... 142
Coat Hooks .................................................. 238
Collision Mitigation Braking System™
(CMBS™) Indicator ........................................ 99, 100
Compact Spare Tire ....................................... 699, 739
Console Box .................................................. 228
Console Compartment with Lid ....................... 229
Coolant (Engine) ............................................ 653
Adding to the Radiator .................................... 654
Adding to the Reserve Tank ............................ 653
Overheating ................................................... 713
Temperature Gauge ........................................ 119
Creeeping (Automatic Transmission) .................. 543
Cruise Control .............................................. 559
Indicator ..................................................... 95
Cup Holders .................................................. 231
Customer Service Information ......................... 749
Customized Features ..................................... 133, 442
Detachable Anchor ......................................... 43
Devices that Emit Radio Waves ......................... 741
Dimming ................................................................
Headlights .................................................. 189
Rearview Mirror ............................................ 206
Dipstick (Engine Oil) ........................................ 649
Directional Signals (Turn Signal) ....................... 189
Door Mirrors .................................................. 207
Doors .......................................................... 144
Auto Door Locking ......................................... 158
Auto Door Unlocking ....................................... 158
Door and Tailgate Open Message ....................... 37
Keys .............................................................. 144
Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Inside ..... 154
Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Outside ... 147
Lockout Prevention System .............................. 153
DOT Tire Quality Grading ................................. 676
Driver Information Interface .............................. 120
Accessing Content .......................................... 122
Warning and Information Messages .................. 102
Driving .......................................................... 523
Automatic Transmission ................................... 543
Braking ....................................................... 600
Cruise Control .............................................. 559
Shifting Gear ............................................... 544
Starting the Engine ........................................ 536
Driving Position Memory System ....................... 203
Dust and Pollen Filter ...................................... 687
E

Eco Assist® System .................................. 11

Econ Mode
  Indicator ............................................ 94

Electric Power Steering (EPS) System
  Indicator ........................................... 91, 720

Electronic Stability Control (ESC) ......... 589

Emergency ........................................... 729

Emergency Engine Stop ..................... 710

Emissions Testing (Readiness Codes) ...... 744

Engine .................................................. 740
  Coolant ............................................ 653
  Jump Starting .................................. 711
  Oil .................................................. 648
  Starting .......................................... 536

Engine Coolant .................................. 653
  Adding to the Radiator ..................... 654
  Adding to the Reserve Tank ................. 653
  Overheating .................................... 713
  Temperature Gauge .............................. 119

Engine Oil .......................................... 648
  Adding ............................................. 650
  Checking .......................................... 649
  Displaying Maintenance Minder
    Information ..................................... 640
  Low Oil Pressure Symbol .................... 716
  Recommended Engine Oil .................... 648

ENGINE START/STOP Button .............. 186

Exhaust Gas Hazard (Carbon Monoxide) ... 80

Exterior Care (Cleaning) ..................... 691

Exterior Mirrors ................................ 207

F

Features ............................................. 259

File Manager ...................................... 306

Filters
  Dust and Pollen ................................ 687
  Oil .................................................. 651

Flat Tire ........................................... 699

Floor Mats ......................................... 689

Fluids
  Automatic Transmission ..................... 655
  Brake .............................................. 656
  Engine Coolant ................................ 653
  Windshield Washer ............................. 657

FM/AM Radio .................................... 274, 318

Fog Light Indicator .............................. 93

Folding Down the Rear Seats ................ 222

Foot Brake .......................................... 603

Front Airbags (SRS) .............................. 50

Front Knee Airbags ............................... 54

Front Seat Heaters ............................... 242

Front Seat Heaters and Seat Ventilation ........................................... 243

Front Seats ......................................... 209
  Adjusting .......................................... 209

Fuel .................................................. 26, 630
  Economy .......................................... 633

Gasoline (Fuel)
  Economy .......................................... 633
  Gauge .............................................. 119
  Information ....................................... 630
  Instant Fuel Economy ......................... 125
  Low Fuel Indicator .............................. 89
  Range .............................................. 125
  Refueling .......................................... 630
  Recommendation ................................. 630

Gauges ................................................. 119

Gear Position Indicator ....................... 87

Glass (care) .......................................... 688, 692

Glove Box ........................................... 227

Grocery Bag Hook ................................. 239
### H

**Halogen Bulbs**.......................... 658, 661  
**Handling the Unexpected**.......... 697  
**HandsFreeLink® (HFL)**.............. 470, 495  
  Automatic Import of Cellular Phonebook and Call History ................................ 484, 504  
  Automatic Transferring .................. 503  
  Caller's ID Information .................. 482  
  Displaying Messages .................... 514  
  Favorite Contacts .......................... 505  
  HFL Buttons ............................... 470, 495  
  HFL Menus .................................. 472, 498  
  HFL Status Display ...................... 471, 497  
  In Case of Emergency .................... 518  
  Limitations for Manual Operation ...... 471, 497  
  Making a Call .............................. 489, 507  
  Options During a Call ................... 494, 510  
  Phone Setup ................................ 476, 500  
  Receiving a Call ........................... 493, 510  
  Receiving a Text Message .............. 512  
  Ring Tone ................................... 482, 503  
  Selecting a Phone .......................... 513  
  Speed Dial .................................. 485  
  To Clear the System ...................... 483  
  To Set Up a Text Message Options ...... 511  
**Hazard Warning Button** ............... 4  
**HD Radio™**............................... 321  
**HDMI™ Port** .............................. 399  
**Head Restraints** ....................... 212

### I

**Headlights**.............................. 189  
  Aiming ...................................... 658  
  Auto High-Beam ............................ 194  
  Automatic Operation ..................... 190  
  Dimming .................................... 189, 193  
  Operating ................................... 189  
**Heated Steering Wheel** ................. 241  
**Heated Windshield Button** ............ 202  
**Heaters (Seat)** ........................... 242, 243  
**HFL (HandsFreeLink®)** ................. 470, 495  
**High Beam Indicator** ................. 92  
**HomeLink® Universal Transceiver** .... 467  
**Honda App License Agreement** ........ 376  
**HondaLink®** .............................. 349  
**HondaVAC™** .............................. 245  

**Identification Numbers**  
  Engine and Transmission ................ 740  
  Vehicle Identification .................. 740

**Illumination Control**  
  Knob ........................................ 200  
**Immobilizer System** ................. 179  
  Indicator ................................... 93  
**Indicators** ............................... 84  
  Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) (Amber) .. 98  
  Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) (Green) .... 98, 99  
**Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)** ....... 90  
**Auto High-Beam** ......................... 90  
**Auto Idle Stop (Amber)** ............... 95  
**Auto Idle Stop (Green)** ............... 95  
**Automatic Brake Hold** ................. 86  
**Automatic Brake Hold System** ........ 86  
**Blind spot information (BSI)** ........ 101  
**Charging System** ....................... 87, 716  
**Collision Mitigation Braking System™ (CMBS™)** ........ 99, 100  
**CRUISE CONTROL** ...................... 95, 560  
**CRUISE MAIN** ............................ 95, 559  
**Econ Mode** ............................... 94  
**Electric Power Steering (EPS) System** .. 91, 720  
**Fog Light** ................................. 93  
**Gear Position** ............................ 87  
**Hazard Warning** ......................... 92  
**High Beam** ................................ 92  
**Immobilizer System** ................... 93  
**Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) (Amber)** ...... 96  
**Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) (Green)** .......... 96  
**Lights On** ................................ 93  
**Low Fuel** ................................. 89  
**Low Oil Pressure Symbol** .............. 716  
**Low Tire Pressure/TPMS** .............. 92, 594, 720  
**Maintenance Minder** .................. 639
Malfunction Indicator Lamp .............. 86, 717
Parking Brake and Brake System
(Amber) .......................................... 85, 719
Parking Brake and Brake System
(Red) ........................................ 84, 718, 719
Road Departure Mitigation (RDM) ....... 97
Seat Belt Reminder ................................ 39, 89
Security System Alarm .................................. 93
Snow Mode ........................................ 94
Supplemental Restraint System .......... 59, 90
System Message .................................... 94
Transmission System ......................... 88, 721
Turn Signal ......................................... 92
Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA®) System .................. 91, 589
VSA® OFF ........................................ 91, 590
Information ........................................ 737
Instant Fuel Economy ......................... 125
Instrument Panel .................................. 83
Brightness Control ................................ 200
Integrated Sunshades ......................... 244
Interior Lights ................................... 225
Interior Rearview Mirror .................... 206
iPad ................................................. 375
iPhone ........................................... 375
iPod ............................................. 276, 335, 375

J
Jack (Wheel Nut Wrench) .................... 702
Jump Starting ..................................... 711

K
Key Number Tag .................................. 145
Keyless Lockout Prevention .................. 153
Keys ................................................ 144
Lockout Prevention ................................ 153
Number Tag ........................................ 145
Rear Door Won’t Open ......................... 157
Remote Transmitter ............................. 151
Types and Functions .......................... 144
Kickdown (Automatic Transmission) ...... 543

L
Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) Indicator
(Amber) ........................................ 96
Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) Indicator
(Green) ........................................... 96
LaneWatch™ ..................................... 598
Language (HFL) ................................ 471, 497
LATCH (Child Seats) ....................... 67, 68
Lights ............................................. 189, 658
Automatic ........................................ 190
Bulb Replacement .............................. 658
Daytime Running Lights .................... 193
Fog Lights ........................................ 192
High Beam Indicator ......................... 92
Interior ........................................... 225
Light Switches ................................... 189
Lights On Indicator ......................... 93, 94
Turn Signals .................................... 189

Load Limits ......................................... 527

Locking/Unlocking ............................ 144
Auto Door Locking/Unlocking ............. 158
Childproof Door Locks ..................... 157
From Inside ...................................... 154
From Outside ................................... 147
Keys .............................................. 144
Using a Key .................................... 152
Lockout Prevention System ................. 153
Low Battery Charge ......................... 716
Low Fuel Indicator ........................... 89
Low Oil Pressure Symbol .................. 716
Low Remote Signal Strength .............. 146
Lower Anchors .................................. 67
Luggage (Maximum Load Limit) ............ 527
| M | Maintenance ........................................ 127, 635 |
|   | Battery ..................................................... 682 |
|   | Brake Fluid............................................... 656 |
|   | Cleaning.................................................. 688 |
|   | Climate Control System ........................... 687 |
|   | Coolant ................................................... 653 |
|   | Maintenance Minder™ ............................ 639 |
|   | Oil ........................................................... 649 |
|   | Precautions.............................................. 636 |
|   | Radiator................................................... 654 |
|   | Remote Control and Wireless Headphone .............. 685 |
|   | Remote Transmitter .................................. 684 |
|   | Replacing Light Bulbs ............................ 658 |
|   | Safety ...................................................... 637 |
|   | Service Items ......................................... 642 |
|   | Tires ........................................................ 673 |
|   | Transmission Fluid .................................. 655 |
|   | Under the Hood ........................................ 645 |
|   | Malfunction Indicator Lamp ..................... 86, 717 |
|   | Map Lights .............................................. 226 |
|   | Maximum Load Limit ................................ 527 |
|   | Meters, Gauges ........................................ 119 |
|   | Mirrors ..................................................... 206 |
|   | Adjusting ................................................ 206 |
|   | Door ......................................................... 207 |
|   | Exterior ................................................... 207 |
|   | Interior Rearview .................................... 206 |
|   | Modifications (and Accessories) .............. 694 |
| N | Navigation ............................................... 126 |
|   | Near Field Communication (NFC) ................. 356 |
|   | Now Playing ............................................. 129 |
|   | Numbers (Identification) ....................... 740 |
| O | Odometer .................................................. 121 |
|   | Oil (Engine) ............................................. 648 |
|   | Adding ..................................................... 650 |
|   | Checking .................................................. 649 |
|   | Displaying Maintenance Minder Information .... 640 |
|   | Low Oil Pressure Symbol .......................... 716 |
|   | Oil Life .................................................... 127 |
|   | Recommended Engine Oil ......................... 648 |
|   | Viscosity .................................................. 648 |
|   | Open Source Licenses ............................ 390 |
|   | Opening/Closing Hood ................................ 646 |
|   | Moonroof .................................................. 185 |
|   | Power Windows ....................................... 182 |
|   | Sliding Doors ......................................... 170 |
|   | Tailgate ..................................................... 159 |
|   | Outside Temperature Display .................. 121 |
|   | Overheating ............................................. 713 |
| P | Panic Mode .............................................. 181 |
|   | Parking ................................................... 617 |
|   | Parking Brake ......................................... 600 |
|   | Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (Amber) ............................................. 85, 719 |
|   | Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (Red) ............................................. 84, 718, 719 |
|   | Parking Sensor System ............................ 619 |
|   | Passenger Front Airbag Off Indicator .......... 60 |
|   | Passing Indicators .................................. 189 |
|   | Phone ........................................................ 128 |
|   | Playing Bluetooth® Audio ....................... 282, 345 |
|   | Power Sliding Doors ............................... 172 |
|   | Unable to Close ...................................... 733 |
|   | Power Tailgate ......................................... 161 |
|   | Unable to Open ....................................... 731 |
|   | Power Windows ......................................... 182 |
|   | Precautions While Driving Rain .................... 542 |
|   | Pregnant Women ...................................... 45 |
|   | Puncture (Tire) ....................................... 699 |
**R**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Page(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Radiator</td>
<td>654</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Radio (FM/AM)</td>
<td>274, 318</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Radio (SiriusXM®)</td>
<td>322</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Radio Data System (RDS)</td>
<td>275, 320</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Range</td>
<td>125</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RDS (Radio Data System)</td>
<td>275, 320</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Readiness Codes (Emissions Testing)</td>
<td>744</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**S**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Page(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Safe Driving</td>
<td>33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Safety Check</td>
<td>37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Safety Labels</td>
<td>81</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Safety Message</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Seat Belts</td>
<td>38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adjusting the Shoulder Anchor</td>
<td>42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Automatic Seat Belt Tensioners</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Checking</td>
<td>46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Detachable Anchor</td>
<td>43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fastening</td>
<td>41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Installing a Child Seat with a Lap/Shoulder Seat Belt</td>
<td>72</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pregnant Women</td>
<td>45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reminder</td>
<td>39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Warning Indicator</td>
<td>39, 89</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Seat Heaters</td>
<td>242, 243</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Seats</td>
<td>209</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adjusting</td>
<td>209</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Front Seats</td>
<td>209</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Seat Heaters</td>
<td>242, 243</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Second Row Seats</td>
<td>216</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Third Row Seats</td>
<td>221</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Second Row Seats</td>
<td>216</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adjusting</td>
<td>216</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Security System</td>
<td>179</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Immobilizer System Indicator</td>
<td>93</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Security System Alarm Indicator</td>
<td>93</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Select Buttons</td>
<td>23, 544</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Operation</td>
<td>546</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Selecting a Child Seat</td>
<td>66</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Selector Knob (Audio)</td>
<td>267</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Settings</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arrange Apps</td>
<td>131</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Show Tachometer</td>
<td>132</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shifting (Transmission)</td>
<td>544</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shoulder Anchor</td>
<td>42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Show Tachometer</td>
<td>132</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Show/Hide Apps</td>
<td>130</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Side Airbags</td>
<td>56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Side Curtain Airbags</td>
<td>58</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Siri Eyes Free</td>
<td>359</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SiriusXM® Radio</td>
<td>322</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sliding Doors</td>
<td>170</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Power Sliding Doors</td>
<td>172</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sliding the Second Row Magic Slide™ Seats</td>
<td>220</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Smart Entry with Push Button Start System</td>
<td>147</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Snow Mode Indicator</td>
<td>94</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Snow Tires</td>
<td>681</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Social Playlist</td>
<td>347</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spare Tire</td>
<td>699, 739</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spark Plugs</td>
<td>738</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Others**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Page(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Road Departure Mitigation (RDM) Indicator</td>
<td>97</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Remote Transmitter</td>
<td>151</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Removing a Second Row Outer Seat</td>
<td>219</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Removing the Second Row Center</td>
<td>218</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rearview Mirror</td>
<td>206</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Refueling</td>
<td>630</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fuel Gauge</td>
<td>119</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gasoline</td>
<td>630, 738</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Low Fuel Indicator</td>
<td>89</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Regulations</td>
<td>594, 676, 741</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Remote Transmitter</td>
<td>151</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Replacement</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Battery</td>
<td>684, 685</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bulbs</td>
<td>658</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Front Wiper Blade Rubber</td>
<td>669</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fuses</td>
<td>722, 724, 727</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tires</td>
<td>679</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reporting Safety Defects</td>
<td>743</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### V

**Index**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Topic</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Vacuum</td>
<td>245</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vanity Mirrors</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vehicle Customization</td>
<td>133</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vehicle Identification Number</td>
<td>740</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA®)</td>
<td>589</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Off Button</td>
<td>590</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Off Indicator</td>
<td>91</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>System Indicator</td>
<td>91</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ventilation</td>
<td>248</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Viscosity (Oil)</td>
<td>648, 739</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voice Control Operation</td>
<td>315</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Audio Commands</td>
<td>317</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phone Commands</td>
<td>317</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voice Portal Screen</td>
<td>316</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voice Recognition</td>
<td>315</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VSA® (Vehicle Stability Assist)</td>
<td>589</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### W

**Index**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Topic</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Wallpaper</td>
<td>270, 290</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Warning and Information Messages</td>
<td>102</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Warning Indicator On/Blinking</td>
<td>716</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Warning Labels</td>
<td>81</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Warnings</td>
<td>126</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Warranties (Warranty Manual provided separately)</td>
<td>746</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Watts</td>
<td>738</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wear Indicators (Tire)</td>
<td>678</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wheel Nut Wrench (Jack Handle)</td>
<td>702</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wi-Fi Connection</td>
<td>354</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- **Window Washers** ............................................. 197
- Adding/Refilling Fluid ........................................ 657
- Switch ................................................................ 197
- **Windows (Opening and Closing)** ......................... 182
- **Windshield** ..................................................... 197
- Cleaning ................................................................ 688, 692
- Defrosting ................................................................ 249, 253
- Washer Fluid ......................................................... 657
- Wiper Blades ......................................................... 669
- Wipers and Washers ............................................... 197
- **Winter Tires**
  - Snow Tires .......................................................... 681
  - Tire Chains .......................................................... 681
- **Wipers and Washers** ........................................... 197
  - Checking and Replacing the Front Wiper Blades .......... 669
  - Checking and Replacing the Rear Wiper Blade ... 671
- **Wireless Charger** ................................................ 236
- Worn Tires ............................................................. 673